

ERINDALE COLLEGE



3 1761 03401 8101

0 4 1992

HANDBOUND  
AT THE  
  
UNIVERSITY OF







Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2010 with funding from  
University of Toronto





FRONTISPIECE,



*The Entrance of a Street defended by a Chain.*



MILITARY  
ANTIQUITIES  
RESPECTING  
A HISTORY

OF

*THE ENGLISH ARMY,*

FROM

THE CONQUEST TO THE PRESENT TIME.

By Francis Grose Esq. F. A. S.

*A new Edition with material additions & improvements.*



VOL. II.

London. Printed for T. Egerton, Whitehall; & G. Kearsley, Fleet Street.

1801.

RYLAND  
COLLEGE  
LIBRARY

# HISTORY

OF

## THE ENGLISH ARMY.

---

### CHAPTER I.

*Of antient Fortifications, and the Attack and Defence of Places.*

THE antients seem to have had but very imperfect ideas of the benefit arising from that kind of mutual defence which constitutes the very essence of our modern fortification. Their chief dependence appears to have been on the height and thickness of their walls; they however found that when the enemy was close under them, they could not molest them by arrows, darts, or stones, unless by such as they could let fall perpendicularly on their heads. Hence the kind of defence, called a machicolation, was probably among the first discoveries on that subject. They, however, soon found that persons who could not be seen from the main ramparts, might be seen and shot or thrown at from towers projecting beyond these walls. Round towers were

then constructed at small distances one from the other, and portions of wall between them were built in a right line, so that the circle which was probably the original figure of most antient towns was changed into a polygon; this, in some measure, mended the evil complained of, but there still remained parts of and near the tower which could not be seen, called dead angles; to remedy these, the towers were built square, and sometimes set with one of their angles in the angle of the wall: near as they were to the true shape, this contrivance did not do, till at length some more lucky thought dictated the method of describing the salient faces of the towers, by right lines drawn from the angles, made by the sides of the adjoining towers, with the curtain or main wall; this completed the matter, and left no spot unseen or undefended by the opposite towers: this will be clearly understood by turning to the plate: obvious as this is, round towers continued in use even so late as the reign of King Henry VIII., many of the forts and block-houses built by that king for the defence of the coast having towers of that form.

To obtain an accurate idea of an antient fortrefs, let us consider it from without. The first work that presented itself was the bayles, a space on the outside of the ditch commonly surrounded by strong pallisades, and sometimes by a low embattled wall: this is clearly pointed out by the lines in the note (a).

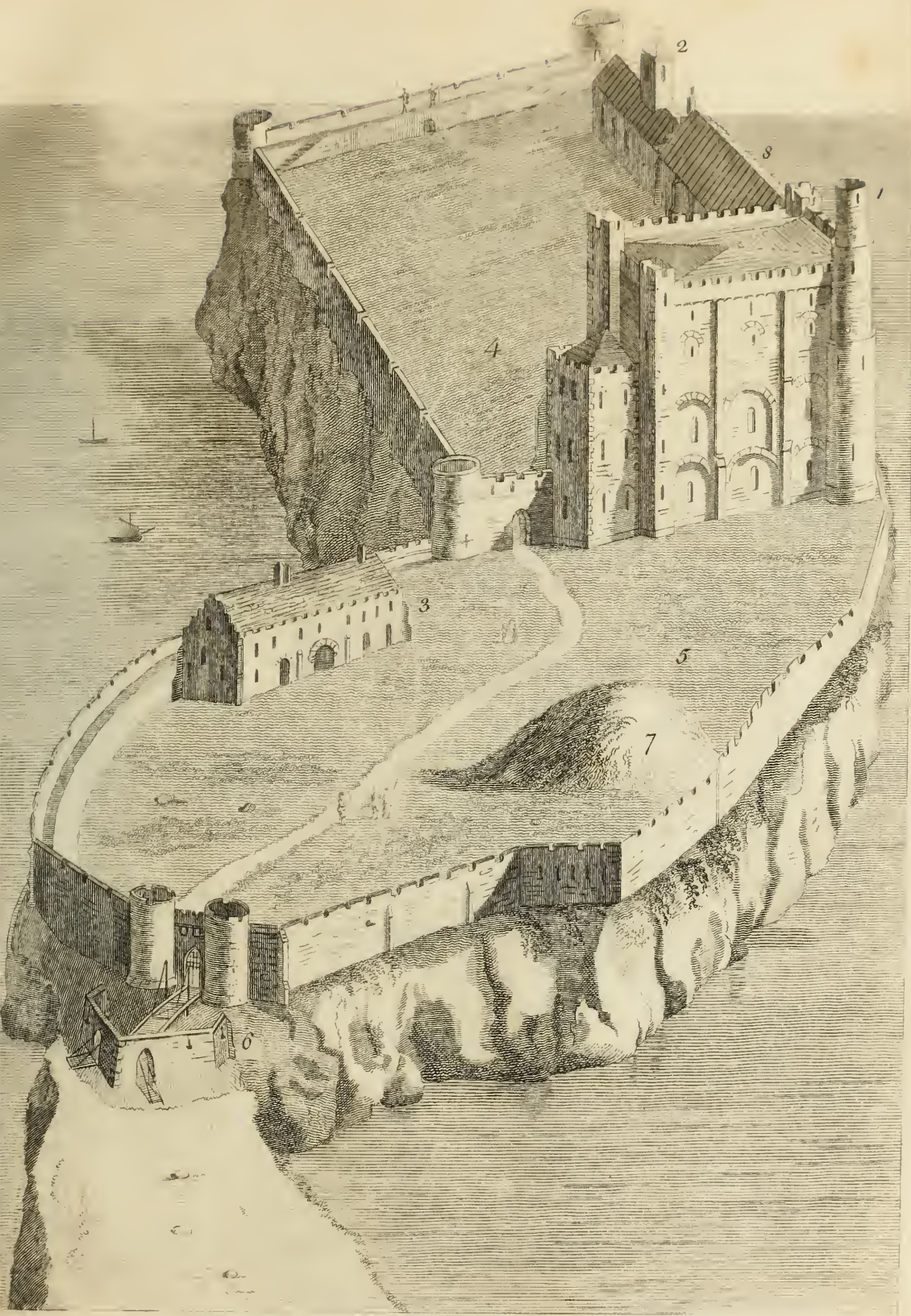
NEXT the bayle was the ditch, foss, graff, or mote; generally, where it could be, a wet one and pretty deep; the passage over it was by a draw bridge frequently covered by an advanced work, called a Barbican; sometimes the Barbican was beyond the ditch covering the head of the draw-bridge (b).

---

(a) HORS des Fosséz a une lice  
De trop fort murs, à Creneaux bas,  
Si que chevaux ne puissent pas

Jusqu'au fossé venir d'alléé  
Qu'il ny eût avant mesléé.

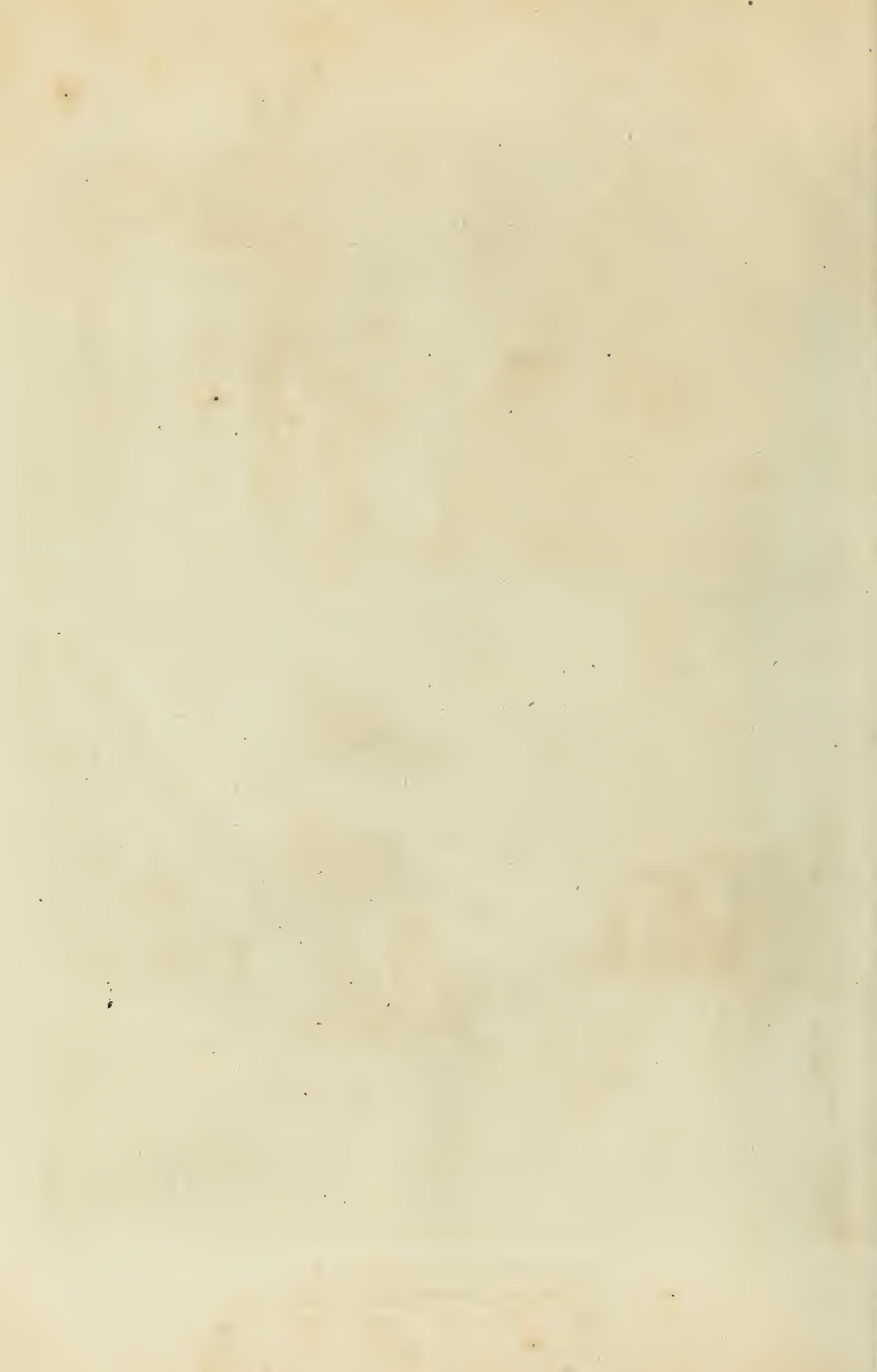
(b) THE term Barbican is still preserved by the ruins of different castles; a small stone work covering the gate of Bodiham castle, in Suffex, is still called the Barbican. In towns and large fortresses the Barbicans were large and strong, frequently having a ditch and draw-bridge of their own.



ANCIENT FORTIFICATION PL. I.

From an Ancient drawing in the Collection of Joseph Gulton Esq<sup>r</sup>.

1. The Dungeon. 2. The Chapel. 3. Stable. 4. Inner Bailey.  
 5. Outer Wall. 6. Barbican. 7. Mount. 8. Upper Lodging.



THE outermost walls enclosing towns or fortresses were commonly perpendicular, or had a very small external talus; they were flanked by semi-circular polygonal or square towers, commonly about forty or fifty yards distant from each other; within were steps to mount the terre pleine of the walls or ramparts, which were always defended by an embattled or crenellated parapet.

THE grand entrance was mostly through a gate flanked by two large and strong towers, with a projection over the passage, called a machicolation, being a contrivance for letting fall great weights, scalding water, or melted lead, on the heads of any assailants who might have got undiscovered close to the gate; further to secure the entrance there were commonly one or more iron portcullis's fashioned like harrows, which were drawn up and let down by means of grooves cut in the stone. Besides these, there were strong wooden gates of an enormous thickness, with a wicket, both secured by large bars and bolts of iron, and strengthened with iron plates and large-headed nails driven at a small distance from each other.

ON entering the outer gate the next part that presented itself was the outer ballium, or bailey, separated from the inner ballium by a strong embattled wall and towered gate; here frequently in old castles we see large mounts of earth, probably erected as a fort of cavaliers in some former siege, to equal a moving tower, or command some distant work of the besiegers.

To the outer ballium joined the inner ballium, where were commonly the houses and barracks for the garrison, the chapel, stables and hospital; within this, or at one corner of it, surrounded by a ditch, stood the keep or dungeon (c), generally a large square tower, flanked at its angles by small turrets, having within them one or more wells. This keep was to our old fortresses, what the citadel is to modern ones, the last retreat or réduit of the garrison.

---

(c) DONJON, en fortification est un réduit dans un place ou dans une citadelle, où l'on se retire quelquefois pour capituler. *Dictionnaire portatif de L'Engineur. Par Belidor.*

THE walls of these castles were generally of an immoderate thickness. The governor's residence was usually in the second or third story from the ground. The tops of these keeps are surrounded by an embattled parapet, from whence there is a view over the adjacent country. The annexed plate, taken from an ancient drawing, will shew nearly such a fortress as is here described.

IN fortified towns the outworks and external walls were as has here been mentioned, only that instead of one, they had several great gates, besides sally ports and posterns; and a castle which in former times, citadel like, was intended to keep the inhabitants in awe, as well as for defence against external enemies.

IN times of war, or civil dissention, the streets of towns were often defended by iron chains drawn across them; of these, which were always ready, the contrivance is shewn by the plate. The avenues of towns and villages were likewise frequently barricaded by the machine here delineated.

IN the attack of towns and fortresses, as the range of the machines then in use did not exceed the distance of five stadia, the besiegers did not carry on their approaches by means of trenches; but began their operations above ground, with the attacks of the bayles or lifts, where many feats of chivalry were performed by the knights and men at arms, who considered the assault of that work as particularly belonging to them, the weight of their armour preventing them from scaling the walls. As this part was attacked by the knights and men at arms, it was also defended by those of the same rank in the place, whence many single combats were fought here; this was at the first investing of the place.

THE besiegers having carried the bayle and lifts, brought up their machines, and established themselves on the counterscarp, began under cover of their tortoises, sows or cats, to drain the ditch, if a wet one, and also to fill it up with hurdles and fascines, and level it for the passage of their moveable towers; whilst this was doing, the archers, attended by young men carrying large shields called pavoises, attempted with their arrows to drive the besieged from the towers and



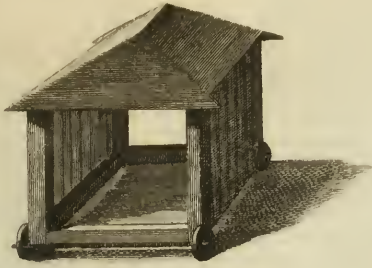


Fig. 1



Fig. 2

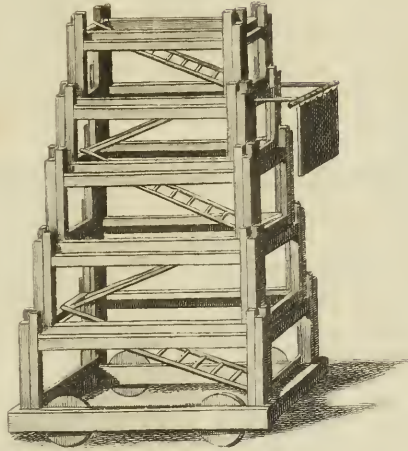


Fig. 3

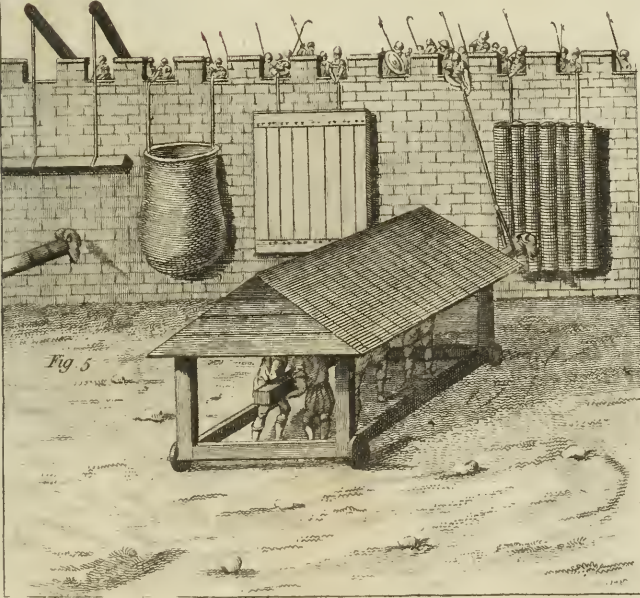


Fig. 5

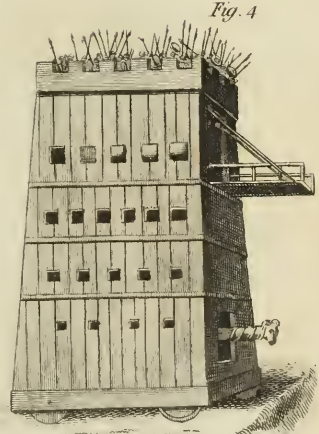
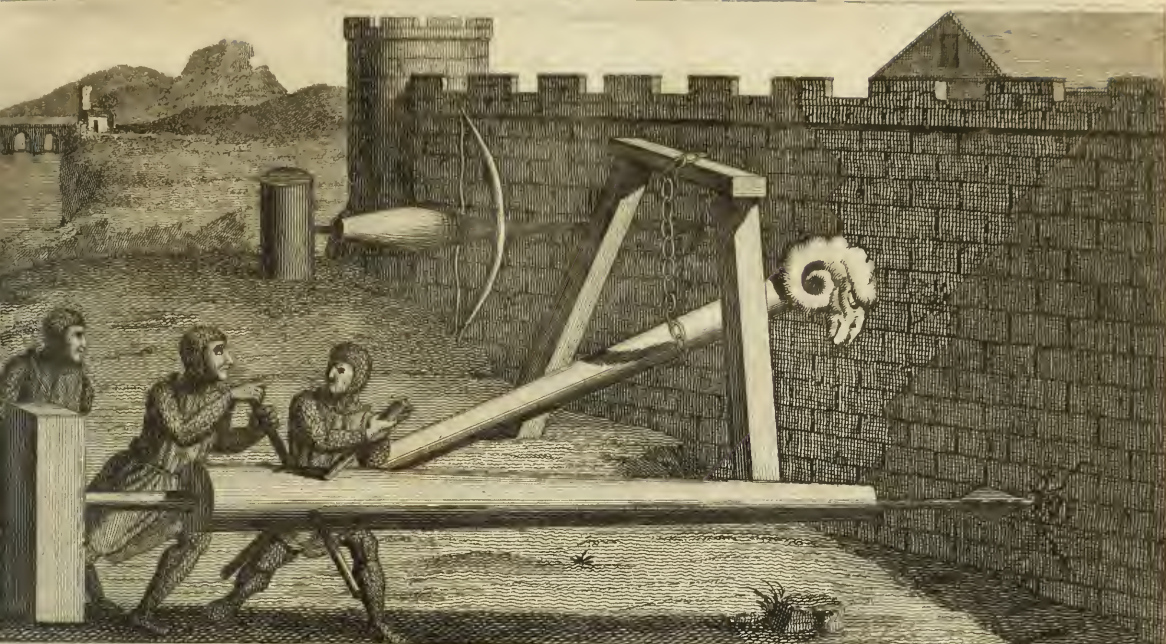


Fig. 4

Goodnight sculp.

MACHINES USED IN ANCIENT SIEGES.





*BATTERING MACHINES.*





AN ANCIENT MACHINE FOR DEFENDING A PASS.

*J. Newton sculp.*





*The Lyons, a Machine for defending a Breach.*





ramparts, being themselves covered by these portable mantlets. The garrison on their part essayed by the discharge of machines, cross and long bows, to keep the enemy at a distance.

THE moveable towers or belfreys which were brought in pieces being now framed and fitted together, were pushed forwards across the ditch; these the besieged used every means in their power to destroy, burn or overthrow.

THE cats, fows, and moveable towers having reached the walls, the besiegers under them either began to mine, or batter them with the ram; they also established batteries of balistas or mangonels on the counterscarp. These were opposed by those of the enemy.

THE archers and cross bow men from the upper stories in the moveable towers essayed to drive away the garrison from the parapets, and on a proper opportunity to let fall a bridge, by that means to enter the town. In the bottom story of the tower was often a large ram, with which a breach was attempted.

AGAINST the moveable tower there were many modes of defence; the chief was to break up the ground over which it was to pass, or by undermining it to overthrow it; attempts were likewise made with different fireworks to set it on fire, to prevent which it was covered with raw hides, or coated over with alom. Sometimes huge mounts or cavaliers were thrown up to a level with it.

To deaden the strokes of the ram, hurdles, woolfacks, or bags of horse-hair were let down before the wall, and to destroy or seize it, a huge beam fastened by chains to two leavers was let fall on it, or a machine like a pair of sheers, or a noose in a strong rope was employed to lay hold on it. To protect the parapet, machines called hourdeys were made use of.

MINES of two kinds were also employed in ancient sieges, one merely as a subterraneous passage into the town, to open in the night in some unfrequented place, the other with an intent to throw down the walls and towers, for which purpose the miners propped up the incumbent part or roof of the mine till it was completed, after which on drawing away or burning the props, the whole with the

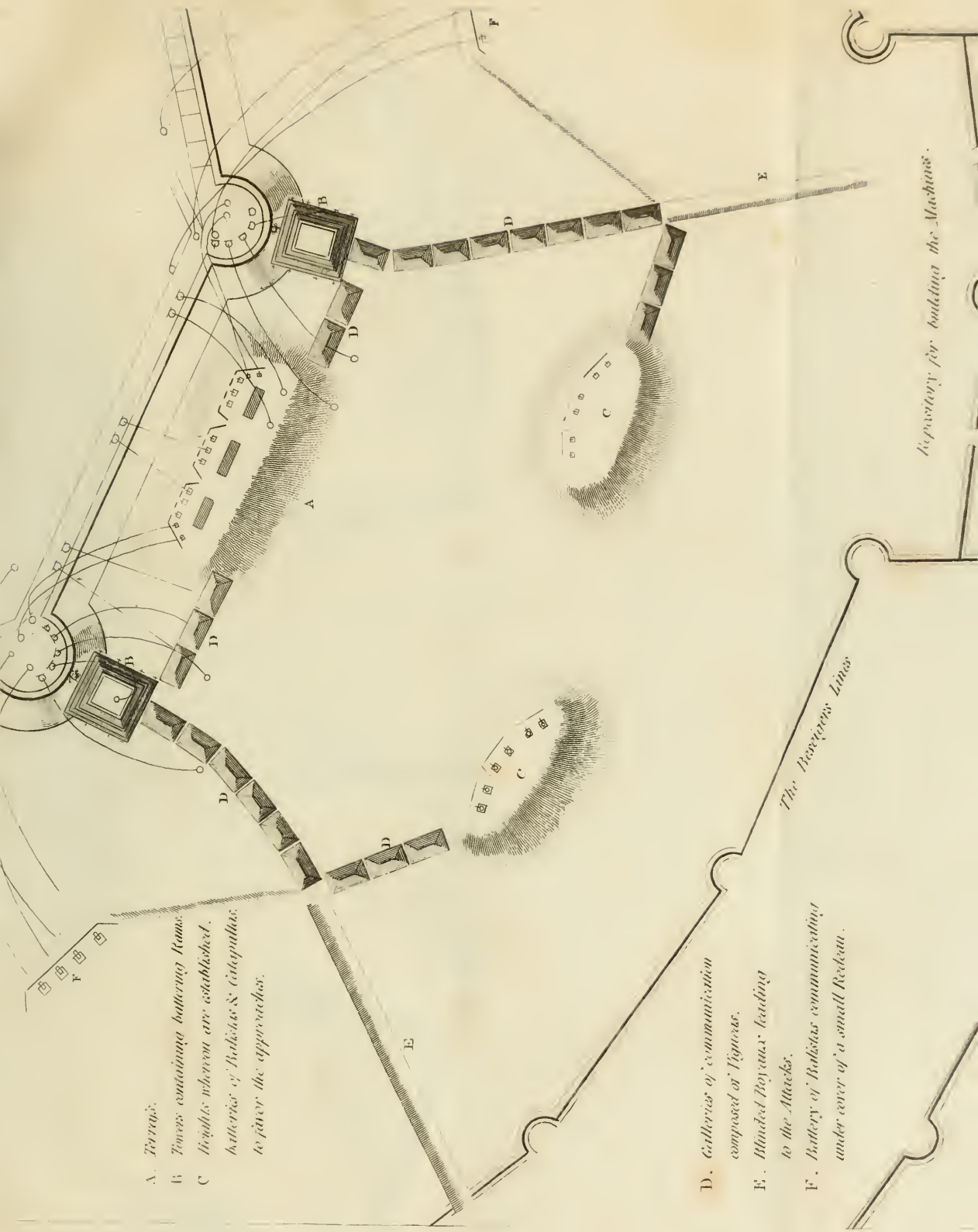
walls and buildings on it tumbled in ; the galleries of these mines were much larger than those of the present times, so that the miners of the opposite parties often met and fought in them (d) ; sometimes under cover of volleys of arrows, quarrels, darts and stones, discharged by the machines, archers and cross bow men, the besiegers attempted to scale the walls, or mount the breach ; for which purpose there were various contrivances and combinations of ladders. The besieged to prevent them threw down beams, pointed stakes, melted lead, and boiling water.

THE walls being thus taken, the garrison retired to the keep or dungeon of the castle, where they made the best capitulation they could obtain.

IN sieges of large places, not only lines of contra and circumvallation were traced, but complete towns were built round them, as was practised by King Edward III. at the siege of Calais.

THE following description of a siege is extracted from the Ro-

(d) AT the siege of Melun by Henry V. King of England and the Duke of Burgundy in the year 1420 ; the mine on the side of the English was pierced almost to the walls ; the besieged, says the Historian (Montrelet), countermined in opposition to it, and the English made a barrier where the king and the duke fought with lances against two Dauphinois, and several knights and esquires came and fought at the said mine." As those combatants were armed from head to foot, it was necessary that the galleries of the mine should be at least seven feet high and the same in breadth, that two men might act with convenience. It often happened that challenges were given to be decided here, and that the manner of fight was agreed upon. At this same siege of Melun which Barksun defended, a great Chevron was placed across a mine, to the height of the breast, and it was forbidden that any one should pass over or under it : many champions of both parties successively presented themselves, and fought with the sword or battle ax. When a knight was made during a siege, and they were at work to undermine the wall of the town, the candidate instead of performing his vigil of arms in a chapel according to custom, kept it in the mine, where he passed the night with an ancient knight. *Joly de Maizeroy, p. 239.* Gunpowder was first unsuccessfully tried in a mine by the Genoese at Serezanella, a town belonging to the Florentines, in 1487 : but Peter of Navarre made another essay, and succeeded at the castle of the Eg at Naples in 1503. Paul Jovius says he had before tried the experiment at the siege of Cephalonia, some years before, when the Venetians assisted by the Spaniards took that island from the Turks.



A. *Terraz.*

B. *Towers containing battering Rams.*  
*Height whereon are established.*  
 C. *Batteries of Beliskias & Citagallars*  
*to cover the approaches.*

D. *Galleries of communication*  
*composed of Towers.*

E. *Blinded Bayoux leading*  
*to the Attacks.*

F. *Battery of Beliskias communicating*  
*under cover of a small Redoubt.*

*The Batteries Lines*

*Repository for building the Machines.*



A. *Battering Ram under Cover of the Tortoise*

B. *Galleries of Communication*

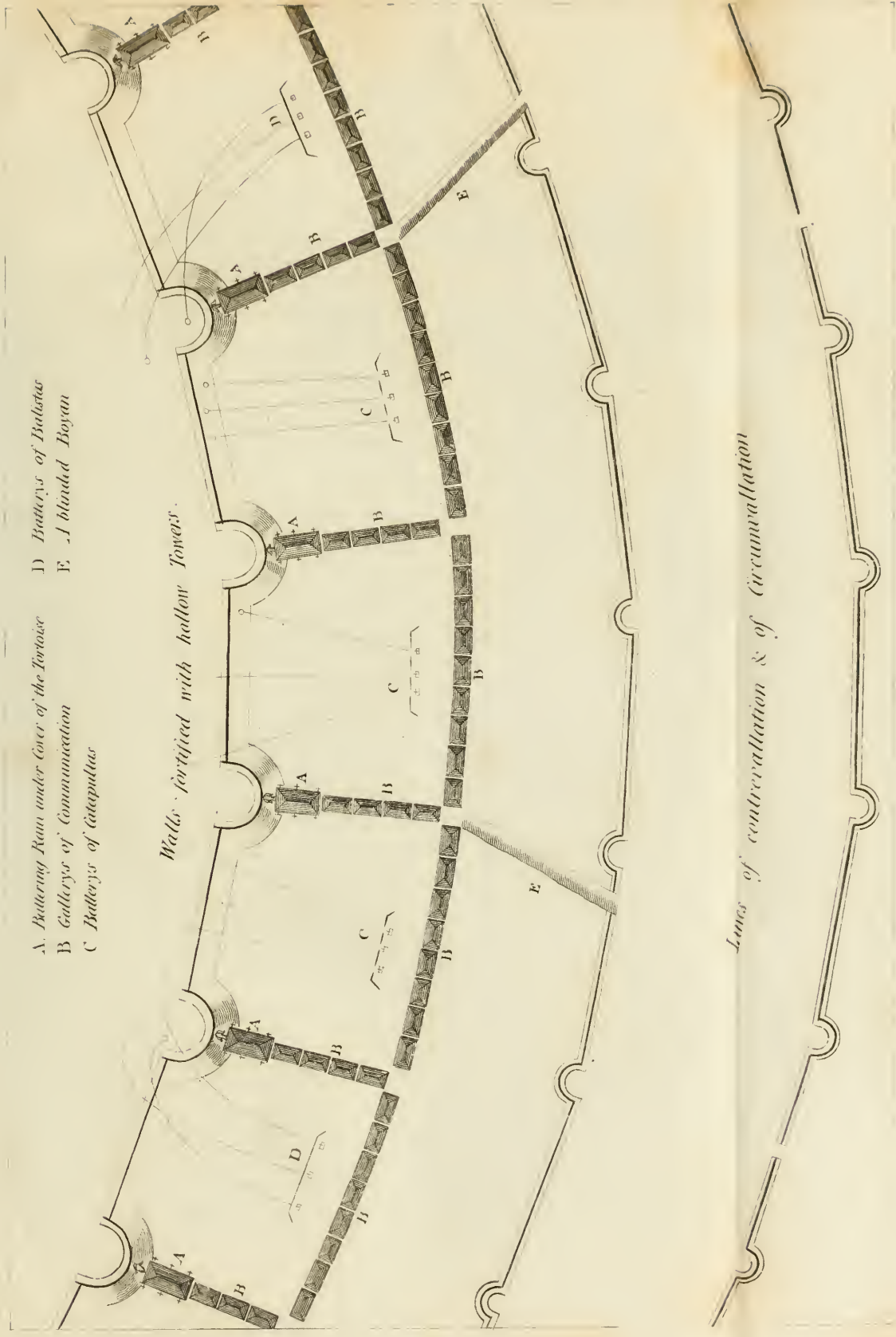
C. *Batterys of Catapults*

D. *Batterys of Balistas*

E. *A blinded Boyan*

*Walls fortified with hollow Towers.*

*Lines of contravallation & of Circumvallation*





mance of Claris, a manuscript in the library of the King of France, No. 7534.

“ THE king gave orders for a party to go into the forest to fell and hew wood to make engines, mangonels, great and strong belfreys, and cats for filling up the ditches.

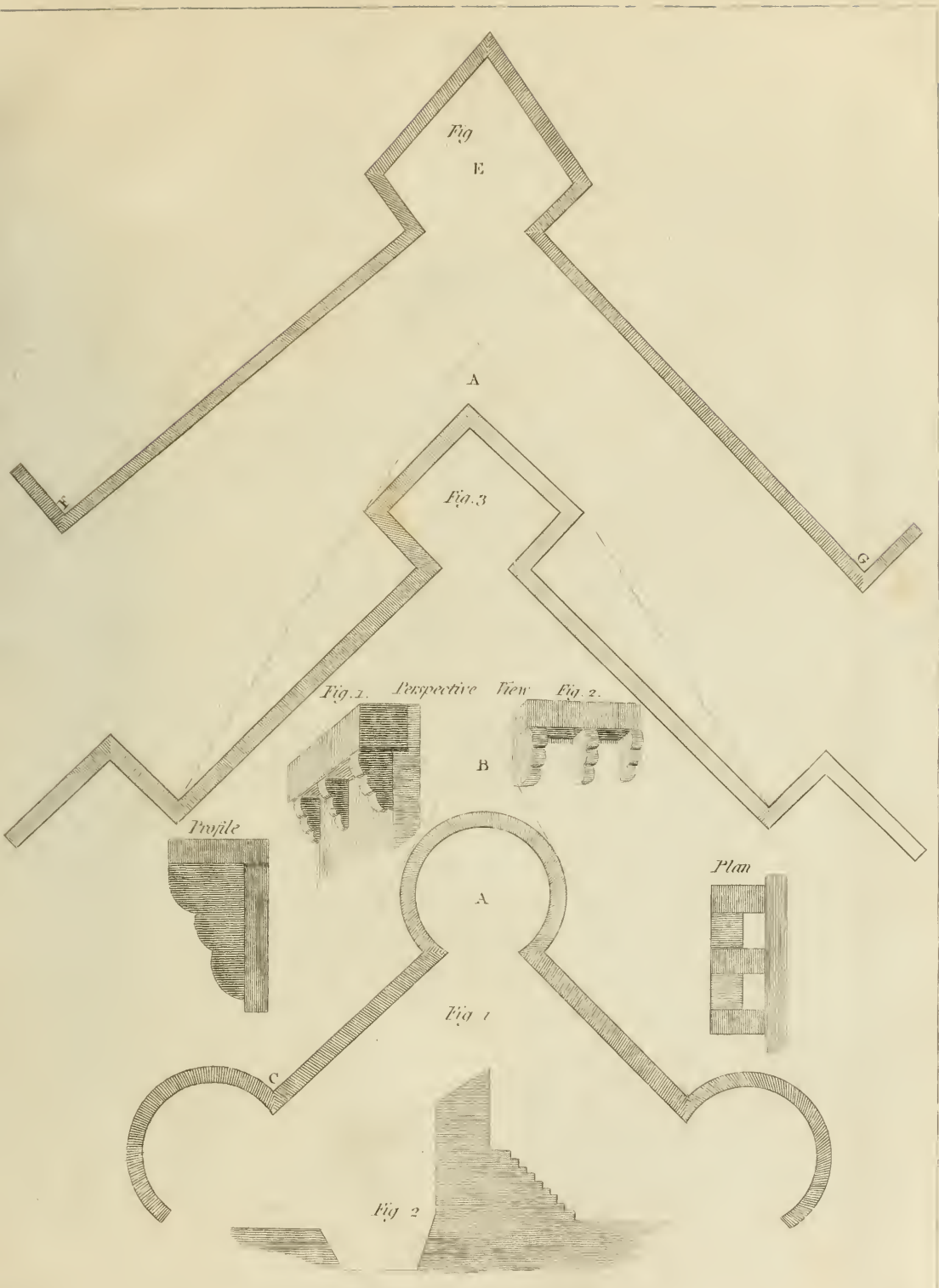
“ THE inhabitants on their side think of defending themselves; they make mangonels for throwing stones outwards, hourdeys for covering the crenelles, darts and pointed stakes to throw at the assailants, and to fortify the gates, barbicans, barrs, portcouliffes, and deep ditches; they then put themselves in a state of repelling the enemy, who thought them defenceless; the king causes his engines to be prepared and brought near the town; he causes the bibles and mangonels to play, the cats to advance to the ditch, and the belfreys to be conducted to the foot of the walls; the inhabitants have every reason to fear when they see the engines rolling; they mount upon the walls to defend themselves against the assailants; Arthur with his troops marches to the attack, then might you see the esquires advance under the engines (gallerys or vineas), to be under cover; they carry earth, under the cat, and boldly fill up the ditch; the townsmen shoot at them with cross bows, and throw darts, quarrels fly on all sides; from the top of the belfry, King Arthur's archers, and his most expert cross bow-men, shoot at the defenders of the walls; the king cries to his men, advance, brave knights! in a moment you might behold the cats roll, and already many arrive at the wall; the soldiers immediately erect their long and strong ladders, but they (the besieged) throw on them sharpened stakes, melted pitch, mixed with glue, cauldrons of boiling water, and then succeed in repelling them; the next day a new attack, the serjeants returned to the engines, the knights to the gates, and the cross bow-men to the belfroy; the inhabitants also remount their walls, they no longer fear any thing, and still believe themselves certain to conquer; the assault recommences, the knights near the gate labour in cutting down the lifts, the townsmen fall out to defend them; on both sides they endeavour to behave

well, to distinguish themselves, and to maintain the fight with advantage; the confusion is lively in this part: the attack begins again at the crenelles and the towers, quarrels, stakes, and great stones fly on all sides, the petrarys and threatenng bibles play without ceasing, the knights in the mean time fight in crowds at the lifts, every one of them endeavouring to overthrow an enemy; at their head are sword in hand, Gauvain, Claris, Master Yvain, Laris, and Sagramore; they rush upon the knights of the town, these lose ground and the lifts, they retire behind the thick bars and there maintain the combat; but ours redouble their efforts, they do not sleep, and are become carpenters, and in fine so well preserve their advantage, they fight so valliantly, that they push back the enemy into the town with great loss; on the other side those who were in the belfreys, gained the walls and jumped on them sword in hand; the attack lasted the whole day till the evening.

“ IN the night the besieged hold a council, and send a deputy to offer to surrender.”

THREE plates copied from Mr. Joley de Maizeroy's History of Sieges, will explain his idea of the ancient mode of attacking a fortified place, and the machines used for covering the workmen.





FORTIFICATION.



## CHAPTER II.

*Of the Cries of War.*

IT was formerly the custom of almost every nation when joining in battle, to begin the attack with loud shouts, called cries of war, or of arms; these shouts were intended to terrify the enemy, to occupy the soldiers, and to prevent them from hearing the shouts of their opponents; Froissart says, "that at the battle of Crecy, fifteen thousand Genoese archers began to yell in a most frightful manner to terrify the English." In these cries every nation and almost every leader had their peculiar word, or sentence, which also served as a kind of parole to distinguish friends from foes; cries of arms were likewise used to rally broken squadrons, especially when their banner was in danger.

THE ancient English cry was St. George; this was in such estimation that a military writer of the beginning of the last century inserts the observance of it among the ordinances or military laws, to the obedience of which he would have all soldiers sworn (e).

ITEM, says he, that all soldiers entering into bataille, assault, skirmish, or other action of arms, shall have for their common cry and word, ST. GEORGE! ST. GEORGE! forward, or upon them, St. George; whereby the soldier is much comforted, and the enemy dismayed, by calling to mind the ancient valour of England, which with that name hath been so often victorious; therefore he that shall maliciously omit it, shall be severely punished for his obstinacy.

ALTHOUGH the cry of St. George has been long disused, war cries are still kept up among our sailors, who constantly accompany their

---

(e) EDWARD DAVIS, 1619.

first broadside with three huzzas, filed by them three cheers ; several of our modern officers, among them General Wolf, recommend on charging the enemy with fixed bayonets, to give a loud warlike shout (f) : Sir James Ware says, the antient Irish war cry was farrah ! farrah ! In after ages, each clan made use of a different war cry, most of them terminating in the word ABOE, derived from an obsolete Irish expression, signifying cause or business. Thus the Earl of Kildare's cry was crom-aboe, supposed to have originated from a strong castle called crom.

THESE war cries have been long disused among us ; and are indeed rather inconsistent with that strict order and attention to command, which should prevail in every well-disciplined army.

(f) THE war-cry of the Spaniards was, á mat ; that of the French, montjoye St. Dennis, concerning which the French etymologists by no means agree, some making it St. Dennis my joy, my hope, my consolation ; some consider montjoye as a diminutive of mount, and that it alluded to the mount of martyrdom on which St. Dennis suffered ; others supposed it a corruption of mons Jovis, and to have some now forgotten reference to a Pagan temple or a mount dedicated to Jupiter : at present the French in assaults of the covered way, or any other attack, cry tue, tue.

## CHAPTER III.

*Of Encampments.*

THE antient mode of encamping was undoubtedly under tents, which were in use from the most remote antiquity. The camp of King Edward II. in his expedition to Scotland, A.D. 1301, is described in the antient French poem, entitled, the Siege of Caerleverok, before mentioned in this work. From it we may form an idea of an antient encampment. "The army," says the poet, "being drawn up, and the mareschal having marked out the ground, and assigned to every one his proportion, then might be seen to arise houfes of various fashions, built without the assistance of carpenters or masons, and composed of white and died linen; there many a cord was stretched, and many a pin driven into the earth, and many a large tree felled to build huts, whose floors within were strewed with leaves, herbs, and flowers, gathered in the woods." From this we learn that the tents were of different forms, as well as colours, but whether from inattention to uniformity, or as a distinction of the ranks of their owners, is not certain; we however find, that each officer had his place and proportion of ground; so that, in all probability, some regular form of encampment was observed; it also appears, that besides the tents, there were many wooden huts erected; these, probably, were for the use of the private soldiers.

FROM several drawings in the British Museum, of tents used by King Henry VIII., it is evident that the encampments of those times were extremely magnificent (g), and this is farther confirmed by a

---

(g) SEE the plate of royal tents.

curious manuscript in the Library of the College of Arms ; wherein is given the dimensions of the royal houses of timber, royal haies, tents and pavillions used by the same king, A.D. 1513, at the sieges of Terwyn and Torney, with those of the chief officers and followers of the court, and the number of carriages allotted for transporting them ; from whence it appears that barracks or huts were then used as well as tents (h).

A MANUSCRIPT in the Cotton library, has the plan of one of King Henry VIII.'s camps, here engraved (i), and under it the following directions referring to it.

“ THE mening of the plat (or plan), ys fyrst, that no man's tent shall be sett within 200 foote of the kynge's tentes, that is to saye, the uttermost part of the cordds shall not come nere the uttermost parte of the cordds of the kynge's tenttes, both for air, and to have space about yt.

ITEM, that the fowre quarters be so appoynted, that the kynge's grounde and tentts may be in the midds, and to be betweene corddes, and corddes of every quarter a hundred fote brode, so that every such space bytwene the quarters, may come right to the grownde of the kynge's tente, according as it is drawn in the platt:—also, yf the kynge's highness will have the markt-place, that then the way through the markt-place, to be made as yt is in the platt, and the same markt-place to be in the midds, two hundred fote square, with fowre quarters, and between every quarter, a lane fifty fote between corddes and corddes ; and the said lanes to come every one to the myddes of the ground of the markt-place.

ITEM, for the good orderynge of the said tenttes, accordyng to the platt, there must be two as marshalls, and they to appoynte the ground wher the said tenttes shall stand, to chose the grounde as nere as they can to be upon drye grounde, and specyallye the place where the

(h) THIS MS. is marked 2d M. 16. fol. 74.

(i) AUGUSTUS 3. MS. Bib. Cotton ; for the plan, see plate entitled, “ A Royal Encampment, temp. Hen. VIII.”

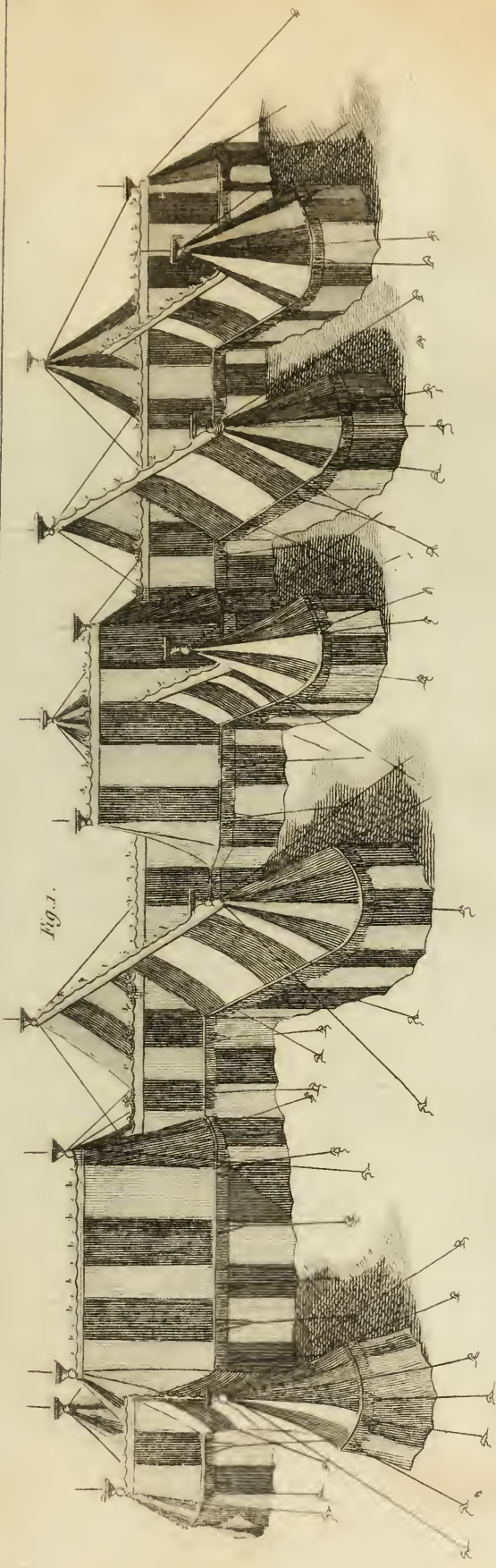


Fig. 1.

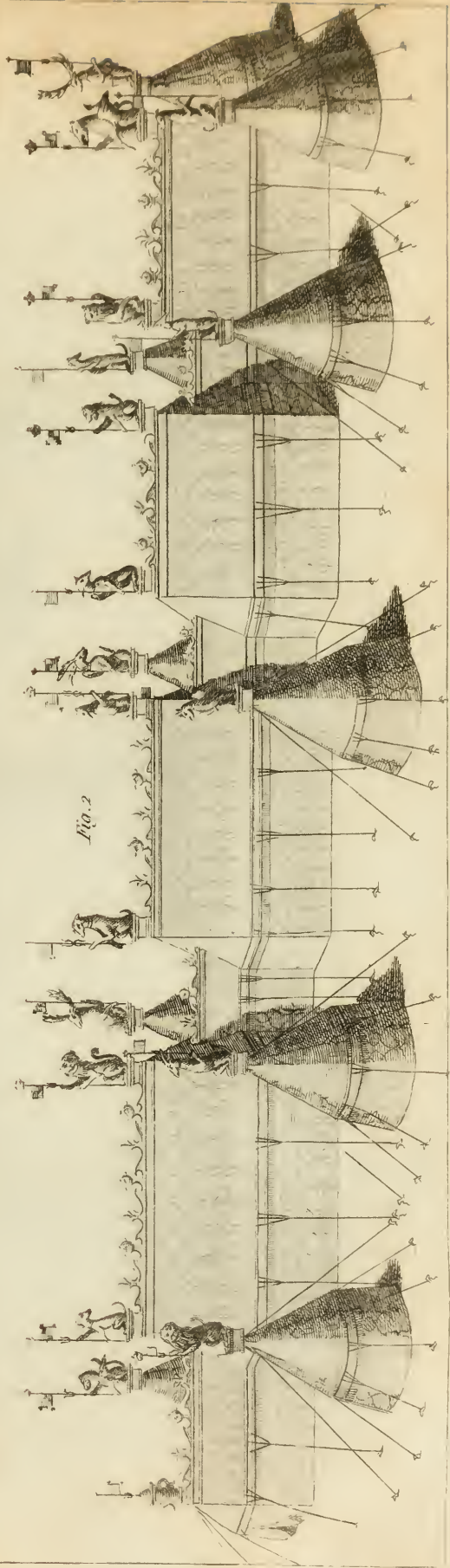
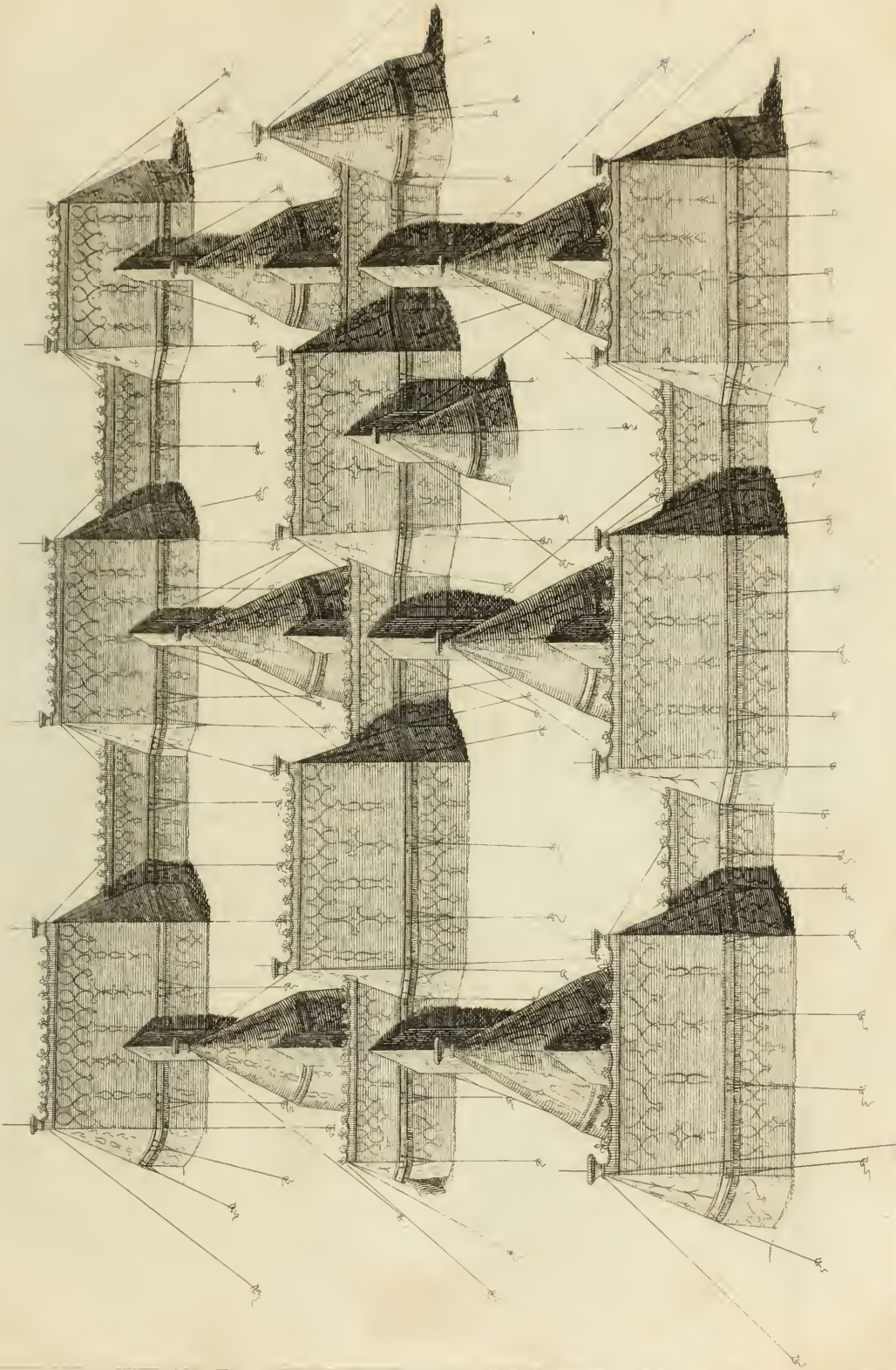


Fig. 2.







ROYAL TENTS. PL. 2



kynges highnes tenttes shall stande ; and also, to see that there may be good water as nigh as can be.

ITEM, these marshalls shall appoynte, first, the grownde for the kynges tenttes, and for the space about them, according to the platt : which grownde, the said marshalls shall delyver unto suche as shall be appoynted to receyve the same ; and they to see the kynges tenttes to be set in order, and appoynte the ground for the same.

ITEM, that the said marshalls shall also appoynte the grownde for the fowre quarters, accordyng to the platt, to such as shall be appoynted to receive the same, and they to appoynte grownde and place in these quarters to every man, as they be appoynted, and after their degrees ; and one marshal to lye there, and to have yrons for punysshment of suche as shall offende.

ITEM, that they that shall lodge and appoynte the quarters, have a bill of the names of them that are appoynted to have tenttes in any of the said quarters, which boke must be made by the kynges highnesse or his counsell, and to be delyvered to them that shall have the charge.

ITEM, yf the kynges highnesse pleasure be to have a market-place according to the platt ; for the good orderyng of the same, first, one marshall must lye in the said markett in his tentte, and the clerk of the market allsoe, to see good rule and order ; and the said marshall must have withynne, bothe yrons and stokys for punysshment of such as do offende : also, there must be made a proclamation, suche as shall be thought mete by the kynges highnes and hys counsell for good order and quyetnes, and punysshment for them that shall offend contrary to the same."

AND in another manuscript written in the reign of Queen Elizabeth, is the following article on this subject (k).

" THE order how a camp ought to be pytched ; videlicet, first of all, after that the high marshall hath appointed the ground, both

---

(k) MS. in Bib. Harl. infig. 847.

mete and convenient for the campe, havinge both woode and water, and forrage sufficient for the armie; then must the provost-marshall divide the grounde into six severall quarters; i. e. three for the footmen, and three for the horsfemen, and betwixt the quarters, he must appoynte a strete, which must be eighty foot broad at the least; then must he also appoint a large place of assemblie, and a market-place, where he must place the rerewarde on the left hand of the place of assemblie, and the battaile in the nether part of the sayde assemblie, reserving the strete into it between the two battailes; and to place the rereward upon the right hand of the same place of assemblie; reserving also another roome for another streete, to goe between the rereward and the battaile, and that all the tent doors open into the said place of assemblie; also the place of the general's tentte is in the quarter of the battaile, directly in the mydde of the said battaile, and the door of his tent must open into the place of assemblie, a little before the other tents; and in the same quarter must he appointe the marshall's tente on the right hand of the treasurers, or the left hand of the said generals tente: also he must appointe the ordonaunce before the place of assemblie, within the ringe of the said campe, and carriages to impale the same as muche as is needful; for in this campe, the horse campe is not environed with carriages; for that it hath both woode and a great river running by it for the guard thereof, that it needeth no impalement:—the horse campe is also divided into three quarters; first, the horsfemen of the war-ward, are appointed in the quarter of the war-ward; the horse and horsfemen of the battaile, directly under the battaile; and like wyse the horsfemen of the rereward, under the rereward; there must also be appointed within the market-place of the campe, a place for the munition of ordonaunce, that must be trenched aboute; and a place for the master of the ordonaunce, with the office of ordonaunce near unto the artillorie, on the right hande, and the victuelles on the left hand; and for the order of setting of watches, both of fotemen and horsfemen, shall be declared; also, commandement must be given, that no man pitche anye tente near the ringe of the campe, by seven score foote, at the least."

A MANUSCRIPT in the Harleian collection, marked No. 7364, contains the following system of castrametation, wherein every particular then in use appears to have been noticed; its date seems much about that of the preceding.

“ To everie footman is allowed eight foote in square, in which they are to lodge and build their cabbins.

THE captaine hath allowed him in front as much ground as the front of his quarter doth take up; that is, in a companie of 100, 24 foote; of 150, 40 foote; and of 200, 56 foote; in depth, his allowance is allwaies 36 foote; betweene the captains lodgings and the foldiers cabbins, an overthwart streete is to be left of 24 foote broad: in the midst whereof, right before the ensigne's lodgings, a garde of eight foote square is to be built; wherein the foldiers arms are to be kept from wet and spoyle; soe, that by this reckoning, there will be eight foote left between the ensignes lodginge and the aforefaide garde, and as much between the same garde and the captaines lodginge, which is to be kept open, and free for passage to and fro.

IN a companie of 100, the souldiers are lodged in two rowes of cabbans, with a street of eight foote running betweene; which row of cabbans containe each of them five and twenty cabbans of eight foote square, which makes, in depth, two hundred foote; in a company of 150, there be three rowes of cabbans and two streetes; in a company of 200, fower rowes of cabbans and three streetes; and soe, if your company be stronger, you may add to every 50 men a streete and rowe of cabbans more; for every rowe contains 25 cabans, and every caban, two men, which makes 50; but the depth of the foldiers cabans must never exceede 200 foote.

IN the heade of the rowe of cabans to the right hand, the lieutenant of the companie is to build; and at the head of the rowe, on the left hand, the ensign; their doores opening from the foldiers cabbans, towards the captains lodginge, into the crosse streete of 24 foote; and as the lieutenant and ensigne lodge in the front, soe must the two serjeants doe in the reere, with one of which one of the drummers may lodge, and the other drummer with the ensigne: from the serjeants

lodgings in the reere, is drawn a paralell of 20 foote, servinge for a crosse streete; which streete is called the victuallers streete, and into this streete doe the doores of the serjeants cabbans look, that they may the better see, and redusse the disorders which usuallly happen in that place.

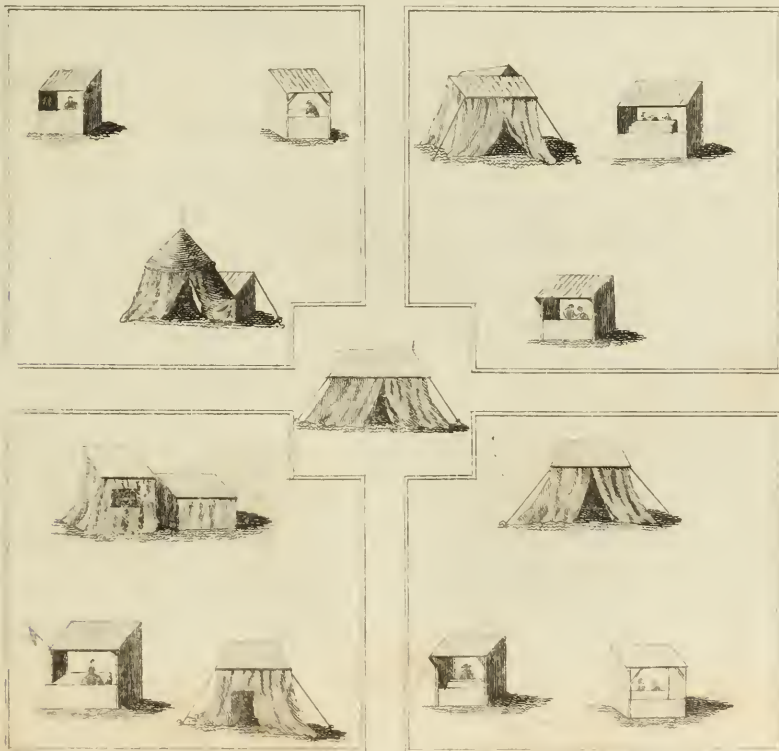
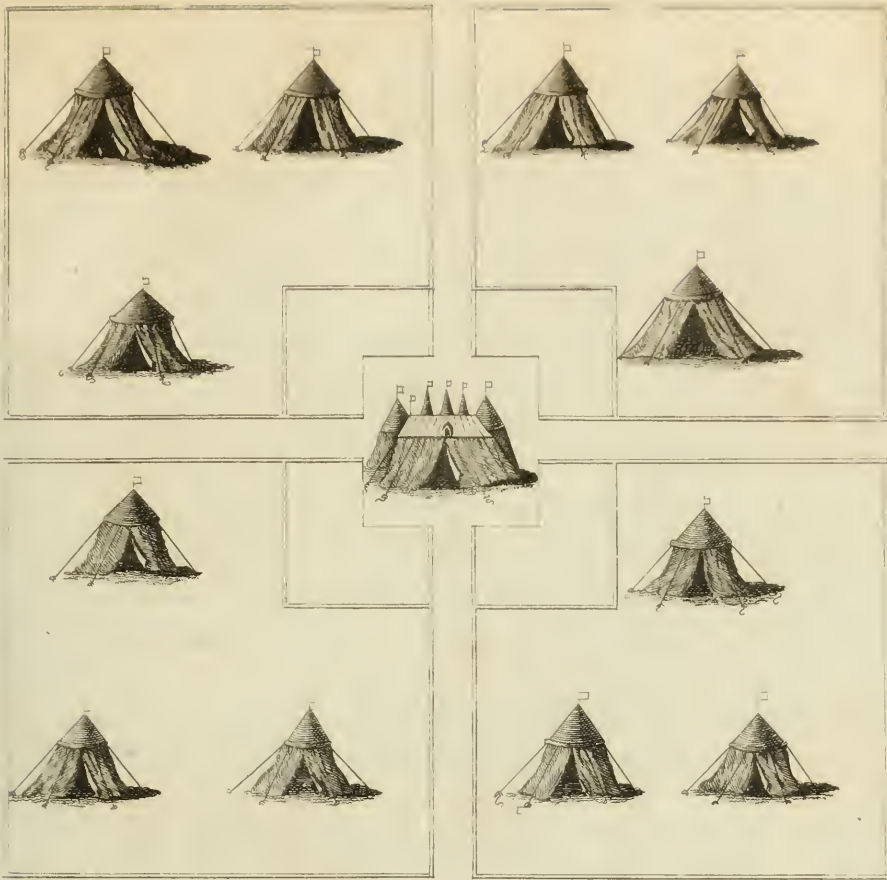
ALONG this streete, at the further side thereof, the futlers doe build their doores, lookeing into the quarter, haveing allowed them ten foote in depth, which they must not exceede, to build on; in front or breadth, they are not so stinted, but they may take, more or lesse, accordinge to convenience, and their numbers, by direction from the quarter-master; but usuallly, there is but one futler allowed for a companie, and noe more; though, through an ill custome, or by connivance of officers, some of the souldiers and their wives doe play the parts of futlers, to the neglect of their duties; and in the end, spoyle of the souldier.

FROM the futlers cabbans ten foote backward is the place appointed for the souldiers and futlers to make their fires for the dressinge of their meate, nearer then which they must not be suffered to approach, which the quarter master must diligently looke to, for the preventing the casualties of fire.

THUS the whole depth of the companies, with the captaine, souldiers and futlers lodginge, together with the crosse streetes, will be three hundred feete, which depth is ever and precisely to be observed in lodging both the foote and the horse alsoe.

THUS you have seen particularlie how a companie of foote is lodged; we will now goe forward to shew how a regiment of foote is to be lodged, with the officers belonging to it; wherein for examples, we will take the regiment at thirteen companies, as they are now to march with in this employment.

THESE thirteene companies to make four divisions, and lodge separated asunder by streetes, two whereof (to witt), the right and left streetes, are four and twenty foote broad, and the middle space in the regiment sixty-four foote, wherein the officers of the regiment, to the depth of one hundred and fifty foote, are to build their lodging;



ANCIENT TENTS, and HUTS.





the other one hundred and fifty foot is left for the waggons to stande in; on each side of this sixty-four foote, a streete of eight foote broad is left betweene it and the companie next adjoining to it.

BETWEENE companie and companie, as they lye in their divisions, shall be left a streete of eight foote, the colonel himself shall lodge right before this section of eighty foote, even in front with the capitaine's lodgings; his allowance beinge sixty-foure foote in breadth, and thirty-six in depth; when the colonel is lodged, leavinge the streete of twenty-four foote open, which streete runnes cross-ways, afront the foldiers cabbans; the officers of the regiment, as the quarter-master and the provost, and also the preacher and the surgeon, are to build in the space of sixty-four foote, which divides the regiment in the midst.

WHEN many regiments are lodged together, there must be a streete of one hundred foote left betweene every regiment.

*The Lodginge of a Companie of Horse, consistinge of 70 Heads.*

THE front of the lodgings of a companie of seventy horse, with the streets and rowes, is seventy foot, the depth as that of the foote companies, (to witt) 300.

THE fouldiers cabbans are distinguished by a space of fiftie foote, into two rowes, each rowe containing eighteene cabbans or lodgings, and every lodgeinge two fouldiers; who for their own persons have allowed unto them ten foote square to build a cabban upon; which cabbans they are to frame in such manner, as that there maye be a convenient space between cabban and cabban for the water to rune off from them; as also the better to avoide the harme that may come by casualty of fire.

THE space of fiftie foote, which I said before was left between the fouldiers cabbans of tenn foote square, the proportion allowed for the persons of two fouldiers, is thus divided; five foote thereof, on each side inward of those cabbans, is allotted for a street, between the cabbans and the stables; and ten foote more inward, on each side from

these streets, of five foote, for the standings and stables of the horses, which are to stand with their heads towards the doors of the souldiers cabbans, which shall open into the forementioned streete of five foote; the other twenty foote remayninge of the fifty foote, is to serve for a streete runninge longwayes downe through the quarter betweene the stables.

THE eightene lodgings of the souldiers forementioned on each side, and their horses, with the two streetes of tenn foote a peece, that runne crosse or athwart the rowes, and divide every six cabbans of the rowes from the other six, take up two hundred foote in depth, which is just as much as the lodgings of the footmen: then, from the reere of the souldiers lodgeings, there is twenty foote allowed backwarde for a streete runninge crosse the quarter, which is called the futlers streete; along the further side whereoff the futlers doe builde, who have tenn foote in depth allowed them to build upon, and noe more; in front they maye exceede tenn foote, accordinge to their numbers or commoditie: then measuring tenn foote more backward from the futlers lodgings, that is the place allotted out, for making of their fires to dresse their meate.

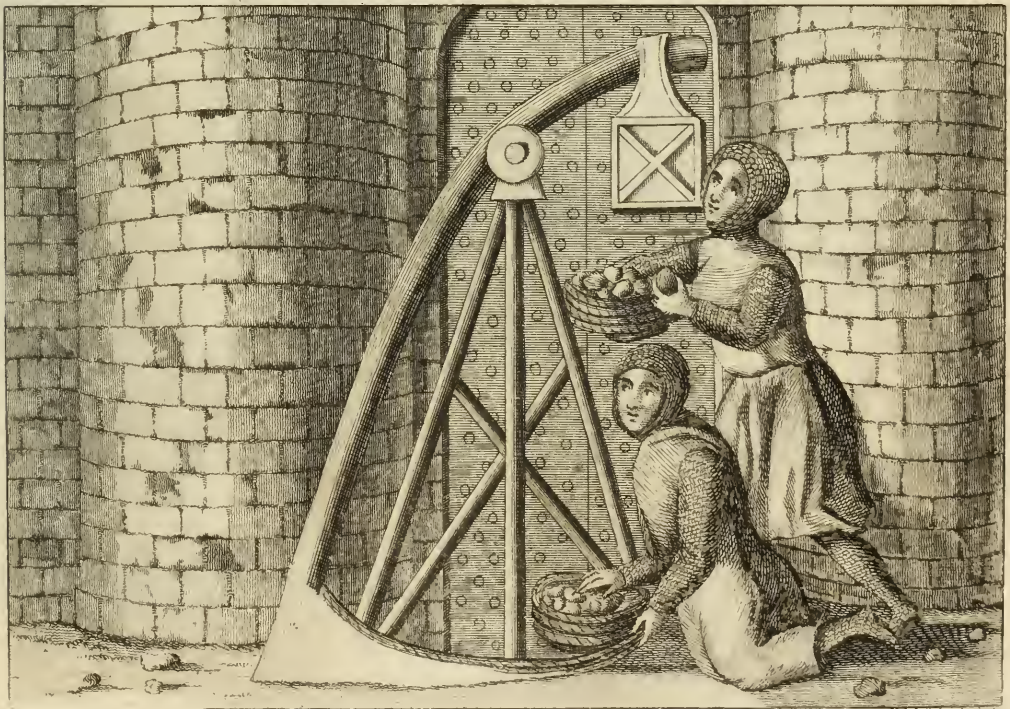
THE captaine of the companie is to quarter before the front of the souldiers cabbans, leaving a crosse streete of twenty foote broad betweene the lower end of his lodgeinge, and the rowes of cabbans; which lodging of the captaines shall containe seaventy foote in breadth, and forty in depth; this proportion allowed him for his own person, his servants, his kitchinge, his stable for his horses, and other necessarie provisions.

THE lieutenants and cornett's lodgings are the first cabbans at the head of each rowe; the lieutenant quartering in the head of the right hand rowe, and the cornett in the head of the left hand rowe.

AND thus in this manner is a companie of seaventy horse lodged in the felde, and if the companie be of more numbers, you are to add a rowe of eightene cabbans more to every thirty-six horsemen proportionably.

FURTHERMORE it is to be noted, that in the lodgeinge of the troope,

*The Ruycers manner of lodging*



*A Trebuchet from an Ancient carving in Ivory.*



the six cabbans on each side, in the first divisions, is lodged the captain's squadron; in the second, the cornett's; and in the third, the lieutenant's squadron.

A COMPANIE of horse beinge to be lodged as you have seene, let us now lodge a regiment; which regiment of horse consisteth, accordinge to the manner used now a-dayes, of three troopes of cuirassiers, and one of harquebusiers, who, in an embattleinge, foe in lodgeinge is alwaies to hold the right hande place of the regiment, as the colonell the left.

IT hath been already shewed how a companie is lodged, foe as there needes nothings more to be said of a regiment, than that betweene troope and troope there must be lefte a space of twenty foote broad, where the horfemen may lay their provisions of hay and straw, every one at the back-side of his own cabban; as alsoe this, that betweene regiment and regiment, there must be a streete left of one hundred foote broad.

HAVINGE declared by writinge, and demonftrated by figures, howe the horse and foote are to be lodged, both particularly in the companies, and together in regiment; I will now proceed to the settinge downe the quarters of the high officers, before I proceede anie further; and, first, of the generall.

FOR this purpose, as you may see by the figure, we take a square as the other quarters of three hundred foot in depth, and the breadth or front of four hundred and eighty foote: the signification of the lesser squares within his great square (by which may be perceived the disposition of the lodgings of the officers), belonging to the artillery, with their streets, are as followes:

- A. FOR the general of the artillerie.
- B. FOR the lieutenant, with the gentlemen of the artillerie.
- C. THE magazine of the artillerie, with the commissarie, controller, and conductours.
- D. THE magazine of the munitions of warre, with their commissarie, controllers, and conductours.

E. THE inginiers, with their conductours, controllers of the fortifications, with their conductours, commissaries, and clerke.

F. THE master gunners with their canoniers, maister of the fireworkes, with his conductours, petardiers, and maister of the batteries.

G. THE maister-carpenter, his lieutenant, with his carpenters, wheelwrighte, smith, maister of the gabions, armourer, cooper, provost of the artillerie, with his servants, and the chirurgion of the artillerie.

H. THE boatmen to drawe and handle the cannon.

I. THE pyoners and miners.

K. A COMMON place where the men and waggons do assemble upon anie occasion. Now between all these lodgings there are streetes of twenty foote broade left, that every man may easily and commodiously goe from his lodginge, or come to it, both on foote and on horseback, and by waggon.

L. A VOIDE place reserved for the unthought of provisions.

THE forme of lodging of those generall officers that are quartered together in the campe.

FOR this quarter, as you may perceive by the figure above, we take a square of three hundred foote in depth, as in the other quarters; and in breadth or front three hundred and eighty foote; which square is disposed to the generall officers in manner followinge.

A. THE generall of the cavallerie.

B. THE generall of the infanterie.

C. THE lieutenant-generall of y<sup>e</sup> cavallerie.

D. THE commissarie and quarter-master of y<sup>e</sup> cavallerie.

E. THE president, fiscall, and greffier of the counsell of warre.

F.

G. THE provost-generall, and serjeant-major-generall.

H. THE quarter-maister, and paymaster-generall.

I. THE commissarie of the musters.

K. THE servants, the physician, and chirurgion of the court.

Now betweene these lodgings or squares, are streetes of twenty foote, as in the others, for passage either on foote, or on horseback, or by waggon.

To be observed, that because these generall officers of the horse, and of the foote, command not over any particular regiment, but over the whole (to wit), the horse officers over the horse, and the foote officers over the foote, it is not necessarie that they should be lodged near any particular regiment; but the horse officers in some quarter near the middle of the horse; as the foote officers neare the middle of the foote, as it were, equidistant from both the extreames; which would be, in my opinion, better than this other way here sett down, though y<sup>e</sup> feate of the camp may be such, as that this figure may serve both the horse and the foot officers, and yet be equidistant from the extreames of both, as is already mentioned; the other generall officers of the artillerie are lodged already by their magazines.

*The Forme of the Quarter of the Waggon.*

For the quarter of the waggons we take likewise a square of three hundred foote in depth, as in the other figures, and soe large, or broad, as the number of the waggons proposed for the campe shall require; which breadth notwithstanding, for example's sake, we will, at this time, take at three hundred and forty eight foot, within which square the waggons shall be placed in their files, their backs opposed one to another, and their files separated afunder by a streete of twelve foote runninge betweene them; in which streete the waggon drivers may lay up their provisions of fourrage; then between every couple of files shall be left a street of twenty-four foote broad, which shall be for passage out and into the quarters: every waggon having three horses is allowed twelve foot in length, which is the length of his waggon, and eighteen foote in breadth, six whereof is allowed for the breadth of the waggon (for the axeltree is five foote and halfe), and the other twelve foote for the three horses; this must also be

noted, that ordinarily the waggoners make no cabbans, but either lye upon, or under their waggons; but those that desire to have one, may builde behinde their waggons in the streete of twelve foote broad; now, according to the forementioned computation, in this manner there may lodge in a square of three hundred and forty-eight foote broad, and three hundred foote deep, ten files of waggons, and every file consisting of fourteen waggons, which makes the whole summe of the waggons one hundred and forty; and though there be many more in service, yet they are not to be mentioned, because they lodge by those to whose service they are appointed; upon the four sides of the quarter lodge the vivandiers, or sutlers, which follow the waggons, who builde twelve foote deepe; where the number of waggons be greater, you must enlarge your ground proportionally.

FOR the market-place, in depth, we take three hundred foote, as we do in the other quarters; and in breadth, or front, four hundred foote; in which square, in forme diverse double rows of cabbans three hundred foote long, and ten foote broad, and leave between every two rows a space of twenty foote, towards which space, inward, the backs of the cabbans are opposed one against another; through this space is no passage, for it serves only for places of firing to dress their meate, and for other uses: in the midst betweene these rows, in the market-place, two hundred foot broad, as the followinge figure will shew you.

FURTHERMORE, it is to be understood, that the people that are lodged about the market-place, and shopkeepers, chandlers, butchers, and taverners, every kinde of which are to lodge or quarter in severall rows apart by themselves; the richest shopps nearest the greate markt, as haberdashers, fellers of small wares, silkmen, and the rest; in giving to the taverners their quarter, respect and care must be had also to seperate the honeste sorte of them from the reste.

THERE are yet remaining to be described two quarters more; the one of noblemen strangers, and the other the magazines of the vivres; the former of which I set not down in this place, because we give unto noblemen strangers a square of three hundred foot in depth, as the



other squares are, and so many foot in front, as necessity shall require, wherein they dispose of their tents, cabans, and provisions accordingly, as they themselves shall think fittest.

SOE likewise doe wee of the general of the vivres, the which, with all the waggons belonging to him, are placed in such order as wee have sett down in that place, where wee speak of the waggons: and soe alsoe, the waggons of the generall of the artillery.

NOTE, that if the regiments both of horse and foote, consisted all of one certaine number of companies, and those companies all of like heads, they might be all lodged in like squares with much more ease and beautie; but this happens not in our age, as it did among the Romans, whose cohortes were all of like numbers.

Now, ere you proceede to the measureing out of the quarters, it is first necessarie you know what provisions, and how manie men are to be lodged in each quarter; to which purpose there shall be a state of the whole armie, and an exact list given of every particular regiment, both of horse and of foote; as also, of all things else belonging to the armie, to their quarter-master generall, that hee may governe himself thereby.

THIS beinge thus performed, yet, consideringe that, in the laying downe of a campe, we are to join divers quarters together, both of horse and foot, with the other quarters alsoe pertaininge unto it, it would be a difficult thinge to marke and remarke them down in haste, and in order, upon paper, if some good rule were not sett downe before hand for the performance of the same; for it happens oftentimes that presently after the viewinge of the place, the camp is to be lodged: the rule invented for this is thus; wee score out every one of the aforesaid quarters in little squares, upon cartes, or thin pasteboard, which afterwards we clip or cutt, in such sorte, that they containe the common depth of the quarters of three hundred foote, and the breadth or front accordinge to the liste, which is given up of them; as for example, imagine, that in the list, one regiment had three hundred foote in depthe, and seven hundred and eight in front; we cutt a carte or pasteboard by a certain and sett schale of that breadth and depth,

upon which we write the colonel's name, and soe we doe with all the regiments of horſe and foote; theſe ſmall cartes demonſtratinge the quarters of the ſeveral regiments; as alſo the quarters of the high officers, and all the other parts of the campe; beinge all thus cutt and pared, we place and diſplace ſoe long together, till we find them fitted to our deſire; and to do it yet with more eaſe and commoditie, wee drawe diverſe parallel lines upon a ſheete of paper; betweene which parallels are comprifed the common depth of three hundred foote, with the ſtreets of fifty foote, upon which we place the aforeſaid quarters in their order.

THIS alſoe is to be noted, that in layinge downe and ordayingne the quarters, we may perceave diverſe times, that if ſome of them were more large, or more ſtraite, than the meaſures marked upon the ſaid cartes doe containe, the order of the camp might be more fitly framed.

IN ſuch a caſe, a man may take ſome quarters of thoſe that may ſuffer alteration, ſomewhat more large or ſtraite; as that of the waggons of the markett, of the artillery, vivres, noblemen ſtrangers, and void place before the generall's quarter, for they are not ſo preciſely calculated but they may be drawn either more large, or more ſtraight; but the regiments of the foote, and of the horſe, as alſo the quarters of the generalls, and of the generall of the artillery, muſt remaine upon their ſett meaſure.

FURTHERMORE, you muſt note, that ſeeinge this manner of ſettinge downe a quarter is eaſie and preſent, it will be good to have diverſe figures in a readines continually with him; as one, with all the cavallerie and the reſt of the armie, as it were within one intrenchment; another without the cavallerie, or any other of their quarter, ſoe that a man may be provided for all occations, according to the reſolution that ſhall be taken; of which figures I might here ſett downe ſome, if it were needful; for by that which is already ſett downe, this may be well and eaſily underſtood.

IT being once knowne by the precedent plott upon paper, what figure the camp ſhall beare, the quarter-maſter-generall muſt firſt

beginne to marke out the squares or regiments of the infanterie; to which purpose he is to have carried along with him, some one hundred and fifty beacons, or as many as he knows will be necessarie; which beacons are painted staves, about nine foote longe, havinge a small square flagg at the top, and serving to flick down upon the angles of the quarters.

IT must be forbidden by founde of drumme, upon paine of corporall punishment, any man to pluck them up; in like sorte, all men must be forbidden to come into the place, whilst the quarters are markinge out, but only those that are appointed for that worke; and to avoide confusion, one certaine and common measure must also be observed throughout the whole campe, to witt, a rodd, divided by feete and inches, which shall be called the campe measure.

ALL the under quarter-masters of regiments must follow the quarter-master-generall, to the end, that assoone as the quarters are marked out, he may shew and deliver unto each one the ground that belongs unto him, who is to looke unto it, and to marke out the lodgings of the companies of his regiment, and the files of the cabbans, together with the strectes of the regiment, for it is not possible for the quarter-master-generall to performe that worke alone soe speedily, and in soe smale time as is requisite.

THESE things beinge thus understood, we are to sticke downe the foure beacons appointed, to note out the quarters of every regiment in the field, which quarters doe containe right angled squares, two hundred foote deepe, in which depth the souldiers are to build their lodgings; and this to be performed by the helpe of the surveyinge-crosse, and after the manner of measuringe of land by the ordinary way of surveyours, which beinge sufficiently known to every ingineer, it would be needlesse here to give anie particular instruction thereof; onlie there may be this short advertisement added, (to witt,) that of the four sides of the squares it is not necessarie to measure out above one or two, and that where the sides of the camp doe beginne, for the other sides are made more commodiously by the beacons, and helpe of the surveyinge-crosse, as they knowe sufficiently enough.

FURTHERMORE, it is to be noted, that every foure beacons belonging to the regiments are marked with figures, graven in the staves, as with the figure of 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, &c. (to witt) the foure beacons of the first regiment, everie one with the figure 1; of the second with the figure 2; and soe of the rest in order, which is observed for the avoydinge of some difficulties, partly because the quarter-maisters themselves, in respect of the great multitude of beacons, fall sometimes in dispute about their particular quarters, and partly because the quarter-master-generall, (who hath a note of the same figures as they are noted upon the beacons), or anie others, beinge asked concerninge anie of the quarters, may presently shewe where they are, without goinge to the place.

THE quarter-master-generall haveinge accomplished his worke of measureinge and markeinge out the campe as before said, then followes, presently, every quarter-master's worke of measureinge and markeinge out the quarters, and particularities thereof of his own regiment, which he is to observe in manner followinge:

HEE is to keepe about him continually a ground platt of his regiment, accordinge to the forme already sett downe, that hee may readily find out all the necessarie measures thereof, though his memory should fail him; he must alsoe have a field measure of eight foote long, which, for his more ready use, shall be a long smale line, marked with some light colour'd tape, stuck into the line at every eight foote end: beinge thus provided in the place of his quarter, which lyes betweene the foure beacons, signifyinge the square of the souldiers lodgings, hee divides, by the helpe of his line, the breadth or front of his quarter, from eight foote to eight foote, according as his ground shewes him, stickinge downe at every tape a bough or sprigg of a tree, or some stick or pinne; the same division he makes alsoe in the reere of the quarter, betweene the hindermost two beacons, alwaies to be remembered; the space in the middle of the regiment without pinnes, and noted by some other remarkable distinction.

HAVINGE proceeded thus farre, rests now the makinge of the partition of the souldiers cabbans by the serjeants, whilst the quarter-

mafter make out the captaine's lodgings before the fouldiers quarters, and the futlers cabbans alfo in the reere of the fouldiers cabbans, which is before fpecified fufficiently in its particular figure.

THE ferjeants ought to know (in which the quarter-maſter is to give them his aſſiſtance,) how many cabbans are requiſite for the company, which, becauſe it is already fett downe in its proper figure, we will not mention in this place ; and this once known by him, hee muſt take care that the ſtreetes and rowes of cabbans be built by the fouldiers precifely upon their meaſures, and that the forme of the lodginge of the companie, as of the regiment, be ever a right angled ſquare ; and that the ſtreetes betweene the rowes bee alike wide, and ruane even.

THE ferjeants underſtandinge thus what they are to obſerve, the markinge out of the cabbans is to be performed after this manner followinge : every ferjeant, that hath two rowes of cabbans, layes downe four lines, from the head of the fouldiers cabbans to the reere, ſtretched out from the boughs or pinns ſtuck downe by the quarter-maſter, betweene which lines the cabbans are to be built, as alſoe a ſtreete left in the middle, as the figure before in the particular companie doth demonſtrate ; and for the ſettinge forth of every cabban hee ſticks downe foure ſmale pinnes, ſignifying the four corners thereof, which being performed the ferjeant hath done his worke, ſoe that briefly to collect what hath beene fett downe concerninge this buſineſs, every ferjeant is to take care and overſee the fouldiers of the companie that they build not out of the limits preſcribed them ; every quarter-maſter is to ſee that the ferjeants do their duty, every captaine that his company be well and regularly lodged, and every collonel that his regiment may be an example to the reſt, for by this meanes the encampinge will be diſpatched orderly in all her parts.

OUT of this order obſerved in the lodginge the regiment of foote, already declared, may be eaſily underſtood the rules to be held in lodginge the cavallerie, the difference being little or nothinge but in the vedature, which is ſufficiently expreſſed in the figure where I handle the lodginge of the horſe.

TOUCHINGE the order to be held in makeinge out the quarters of the higher officers, the waggons and the market-place, the figure formerly declared may suffice; and seeing that for every one of them there is to be marked out but one figure of finale labour, their parts beinge already fett downe, they may be dispatched at the same instant that the fouldiers lodgings are, by some particular men appointed for the purpose, after the quarter-master-generall hath fett out their places by the same rules, and therefore is not necessarie to speak anie further of them.

THE quarters of the lodgings of the armie being thus performed and perfected, every regiment is to enter into the place of quarteringe in the same order they kept in marchinge.

THE markinge out of the alarm place, with the tracinge of the trench, is performed by an ingenier and his conductors, beinge accompanied for that service with fifty or sixty pioners that digg, directed by a match or line laide fraite along upon the ground, smale gutters, makeinge two right parallel lines six foote afunder for the breadth of the ditch, whereof the innermost is two hundred and six foote, removed every way from the captaine's lodgings, so as two hundred rests for the allarm place, and six foote for the thicknes of the parapett or breast.

HERE is to be noted, that though the foldiers of the campe were before commanded to goe each to their place of quarteringe, yet it is no special hinderance to this worke, because it consists of nothinge else but two right parallel lines, far enough off from the foldiers.

THESE lines being thus marked out by small gutters, you must cast up how many foot of entrenchment will fall to every regiment's share, allottinge, by the rule of fellowship, every regiment his proportion, beginning at the first regiment, and ending with the last, which parts or shares must be likewise distinguished by beacons, or some other apparent marke, soe as every one may knowe his parte; soe likewise are the colonells, either by whole regiments or by partes, accordinge to the order given, or as necessity shall require, to distribute

their portion among y<sup>e</sup> companies equally ; and so likewise the captains their companies parts equally among the foldiers.

THUS have I ended the order and rules for incamping: I will now proceede accordinge to my purpose to speake of the guardes, and watches, and roundes to be held, both without and within the campe, and the discipline thereof."

By these regulations it appears that the captain, lieutenant, and ensign, pitched in the front of their company. Sir James Turner says, that Henry of Nassau, Prince of Orange, altered the custome, and ordered them all three to pitch their tents in the rear, or, at least, the captain, for two reasons ; first, that the foldiers might have an easy communication with the parade, or place of arms, unincumbered by the huts of their officers, or the cords of their tents ; and next, that the officers, being lodged in the rear near the futlers, might prevent all brawls and disorders occasioned by drunkenness, which commonly originates there.

RESPECTING huts, Lord Orrery observes, that " in antient times they used tents instead of hutts, for that the way of making war was in the field, and armies were daily in motion ; and in such cases straw, rushes, or flages to cover, and wood to make stakes and roofs, were not always at hand, nor to forme the roofs easie ; but now, that for the most part war is made in the besieging of strong places, or in standing camps, both officers and foldiers use hutts."

IN the Abridgement of the English Military Discipline, published by authority, A.D. 1686, there are the following regulations respecting encamping :

THE major-general for the day, having with him such of the guards of horse as shall be thought fit, and ordered by the general for the security of the camp, is to march before the army that he may have time to view the ground, and to settle the camp, not far from water, if it may be with convenience ; which being done, he is to order the quarter-master-general to set out the ground to the majors of the brigades, who thereupon set it out to the adjutants of each regiment, who divide it for each troop or company ; the major-general in the

mean while is to ride about the camp, to post the main guards as he finds best for the safety of the army, and is to order the quarter-master-general what ground or village he is to take up for the king's quarters ; as also some commodious place for the park of artillery, and another for the bread carts, which is commonly near the centre of the army with the hospital.

WHEN every thing has been done as abovementioned, and the camp all marked out, then the major-general is to send an aid-de-camp to give notice to the general that all is ready, and at the entering into the camp the major-general is to meet the general to give him a full account of every particular, the adjutants general of horse and foot attending always on the general, that they may be ready to execute his orders, and make detachments without delay.

IT is the usual practice to encamp an army in two lines ; the second distinct from the first three hundred paces, that is, from the head of the first line to the head of the second, whereof one hundred and twenty are for the encamping of the first line, so that there remains one hundred and eighty paces for the distance between the last tents of the first line, and the head of the second ; and if the army encamp with a reserve, then the same distance is to be observed by them.

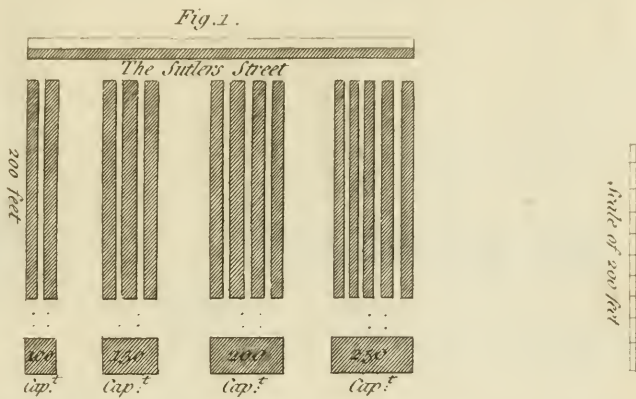
THE horse are to be posted on the wings, and the foot in the middle, in such a manner that the lines of the camp look towards the enemy, and be covered behind by a brook, or marsh, if it may be with convenience.

EVERY squadron consisting of three troops, and fifty men in each troop, must be allowed fifty paces ; and every battalion consisting of sixteen companies, and fifty men in each company, must have one hundred paces allowed for their encamping.

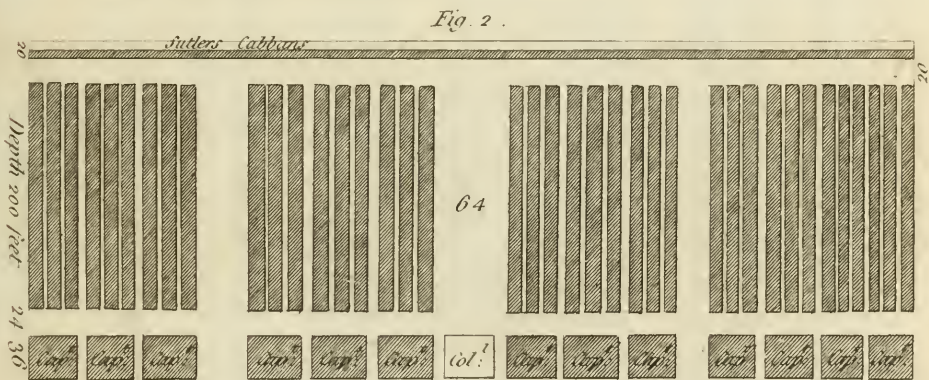
ALL troops, or companies of horse or foot, consisting but of fifty men, are to be encamped on one rowe of baragues, or hutts ; but when troops or companies consist of more men, there must be two files of baragues or hutts.

IT is to be observed, that in each squadron or battalion the colonel's company be always upon the right or left, and there make their row



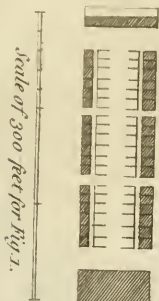


*Encampment of 4 Companies of foot of different numbers viz: 100, 150, 200, & 250. Each row consists of 25 Cabbans. 2 Soldiers are lodged in every Cabban, the 4 dots shew the Guards in the front of each Company*

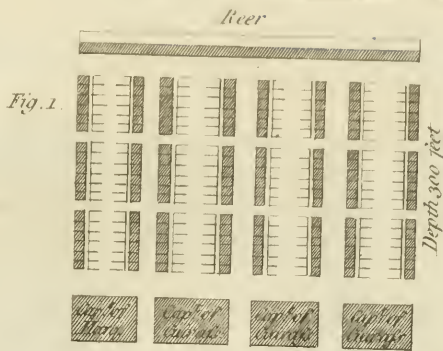


*The Front of a Regiment of Foot of 13 Companies, each of 150 Men.*

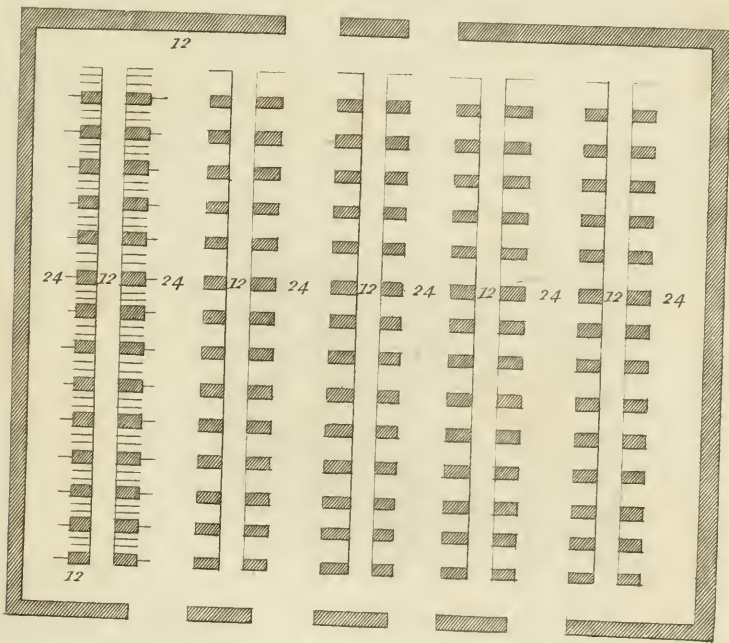




*The Manner how a company of Horse is Lodged.*



*The Manner of Lodging a Regiment in the field consisting of 3 Companies of Mouskiers and one of Harquebusiers.*

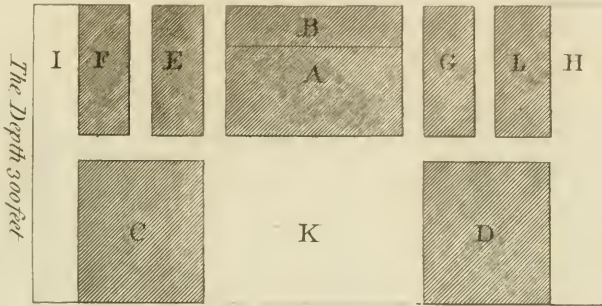


*The forme of the Quarter of the Waggon.*



*Form of the Quarter of the General of the Artillery.*

*Fig. 1.*

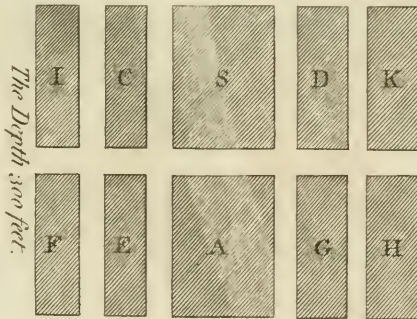


*The whole front or breast 480 feet*



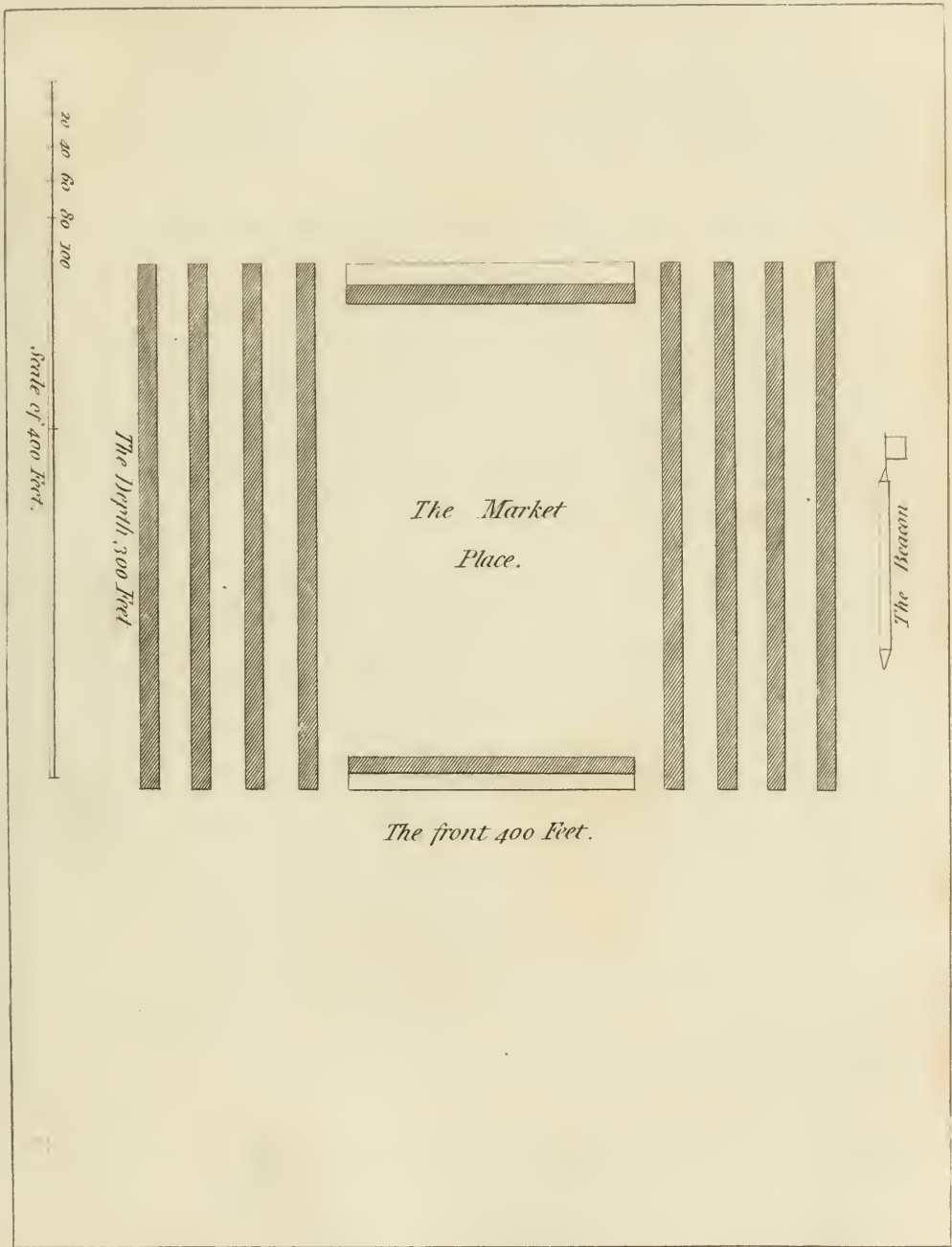
*The Form of Lodging of those General Officers that are Quartered together in the Camp.*

*Fig. 2.*



*The Depth 300 feet.*





CASTRAMETATION Pl: 4.





of hutts ; behind them muſt be left the ſpace for the ſtreet ; then the ſecond company make their row of hutts, near to which the third makes theirs, leaving the ſpace of two foot only between their hutts, which is called the by-ſtreet ; and the ſame thing is to be obſerved by the horſe.

THE hutts of the foot always open toward the ſtreet ; the baragues of the cavalry always toward the horſes heads.

THE hutts of the quarter-maſter and ſerjeants are always to be at the head of the troopers and ſoldiers, and the officers tents behind.

THE camp of the firſt brigade of the army is on the right hand of the firſt line ; that of the ſecond on the left ; the third is poſted on the right of the ſecond line ; the fourth on the left, and the reſt in the centre according to their ſeniority : this is to be obſerved among the horſe as well as foot.

THE dragoons are never to be encamped in the body of the army, but have their camp at the head, or on the wings on that ſide where the greateſt danger is, ſerving always as an out-guard for the army.

EVERY regiment is to have a guard at the head of their camp, and the major-general for the day takes care to place the great guard in a proper place and diſtance from the army towards the enemy, chooſing for that effect a place where all the avenues may be diſcovered ; there it is to continue during the day, and at night is to draw off near the army at the head of the foot.

THE colonel or officer of the horſe who mounts the guard, is to ſend off an out-guard, or advance-guard, conſiſting of twenty-four troopers, commanded by a lieutenant, whom he poſts where he ſees moſt convenient, in a place from whence the country about may be eaſily diſcovered.

THE duty of him who commands the guard, is to let no perſon whatſoever paſs without an order, to look every where about, and to ſend notice to the general whenever he diſcovers any troop or forces.

It is to be obſerved, that the meaſure of the ground before-mentioned is meant only for the encampment of an army, for if it were to be ranged in battel in caſe of ſervice, the diſtances between the battalions and ſquadrons are to be greater than in a camp ; it

must be endeavoured, as much as may be, that the second line be equal to the first, keeping the same distance upon the right and left.

THE following are the general rules and proportions for encamping of an army, with the particulars for the encamping of a regiment of horse, and a battalion of foot, as laid down in Bland's Military Discipline, and which are much the same as now in use, allowing for the difference of the establishment of regiments, excepting that the quarter and rear guards instead of facing to the regiment, now front outwards.

## ARTICLE I.

*Proportions to be observed in Encamping a Regiment of Dragoons of Six Troops, forming Three Squadrons, with a light Troop.*

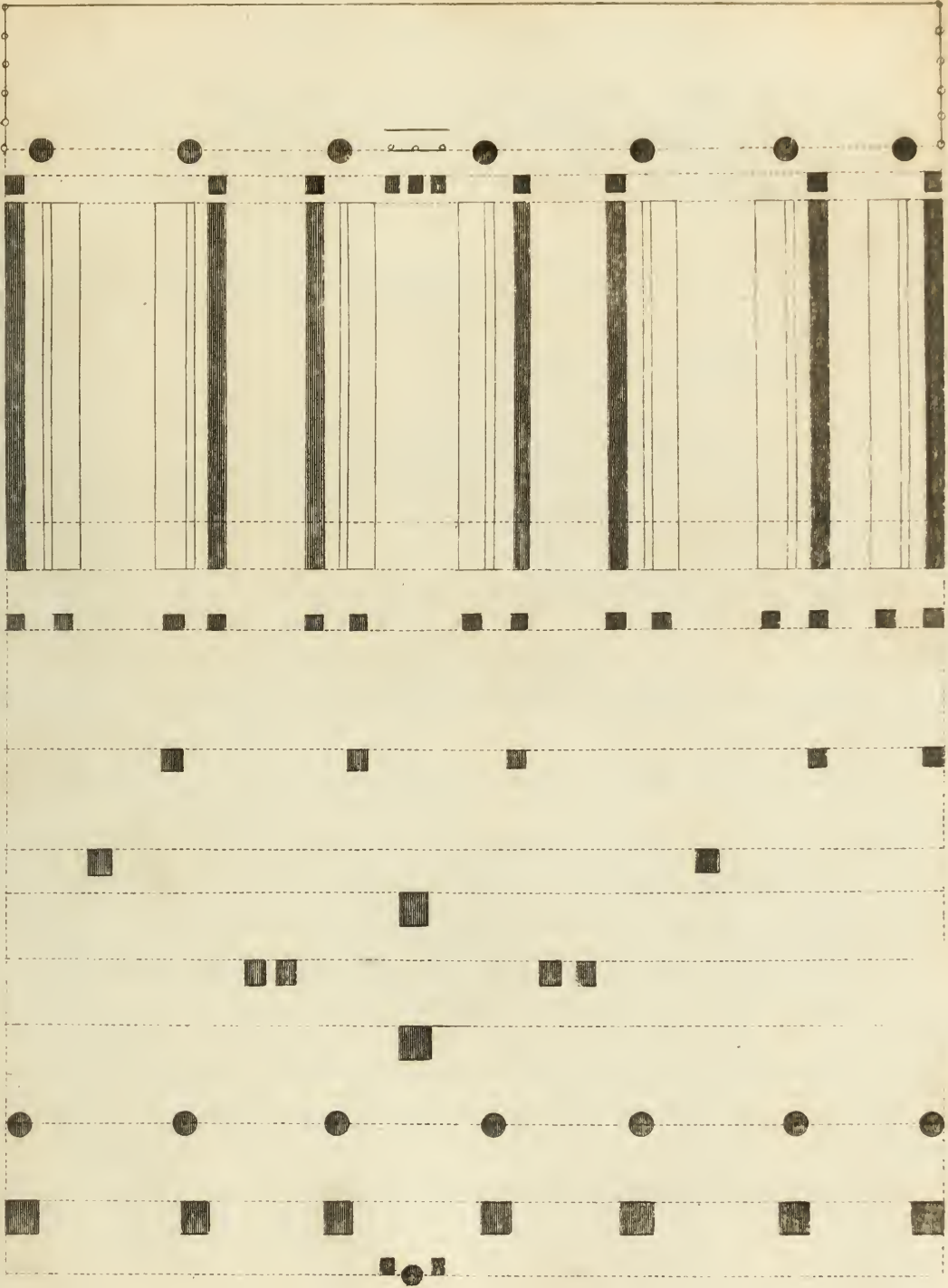
Front two hundred yards divided as follows :

	YARDS.
FOR pitching six rows of tents, with the intervals between the tents and the pickets, length for the standing of the horses, and space for laying up the dung at fourteen yards each -	84
For the breadth of three streets, between the horses of each squadron, at seventeen yards each - - - -	51
For the breadth of two back streets, at twenty yards each -	40
For the breadth of one street between the first squadron and the light troop - - - - -	9
For pitching the tents, &c. of the light troop as above -	16
Total front	200

The fourteen yards allowed for the front of each troop,  
is divided as follows :

For pitching a horseman's tent - -	3 YARDS.
From front pole of the tents to the pickets -	3
From the pickets to the edge of the dung -	6
Breadth of the dung - - -	2
	14

Front 200 Yards



Yards

PLAN of the Encampment of a Regiment of Dragoons consisting of 6 Troops, forming 3 Squadrons with the light Troop on the right.



N. B. The sixteen yards allowed for the front of the light troop, are divided in the same manner, the two additional yards being allowed for pitching their tents, which are larger than those of the other troops.

	YARDS.
The interval between two regiments of dragoons, is - -	60
Total front and interval	260

Depth 258 yards divided as follows :

From the first line of parade to the bells of arms - -	30
From the bells of arms to the front poles of the quarter-masters tents - - - - -	5
From the front poles of the quarter-masters tents to the first picket - - - - -	5
Allowed for the standing of sixty-six horses - -	66
For the standing of the subalterns horses, which are in a line with the troop - - - - -	10
From the rear of the subalterns horses to the front of the subalterns tents - - - - -	12
From the front of the subalterns tent to the front of the captains	24
From the front of the captains to the front of the field-officers	20
From the front of the field-officers to the front of the colonels	8
From the front of the colonels to the front of the staff-officers	14
From the front of the staff-officers to the front of the grand futler - - - - -	14
From the front of the grand futler to the centre of the kitchens	20
From the centre of the kitchens to the front of the petty futlers - - - - -	15
From the front of the petty futlers to the centre of the bell of arms of the rear guard - - - - -	15
Total depth	258

The parade of the standing-guard is four yards advanced before the centre of the bell of arms.

The bells of arms are in a line with the pickets.

The standard-guard tents are pitched in the centre of the third squadron, in a line with the fronts of the quarter-masters tents, and are three yards distant from centre to centre.

Eleven tents are pitched for the men of each troop; the centre of the first and last are three yards distant from the ends of the pickets; the others are six yards distant from centre to centre.

Seven tents are pitched for the light troop; the centre of the first and last are fourteen feet, one inch and a half, from the ends of the pickets; the others are twenty-eight feet three inches from centre to centre.

The dung of each troop is laid up behind the horses.

The sixty-six yards are divided into four spaces of fifteen yards each, with three intervals of two yards.

The dung of the subalterns horses is laid up in the space of eight yards, leaving an interval of two yards between it and that of the troop.

The subalterns servants from their horses.

The lieutenants-colonels tents front the centre of the first squadron.

The major's tent fronts the centre of the second.

The colonel's tent fronts the standards.

The staff-officers front the two back streets on the right and left of the centre, or third squadron.

All the officers, the subalterns excepted, have their horses in the rear of their tents.

The grand futler is placed in the rear of the colonel.

The centres of the kitchens are in the lines of the pickets produced; the inner diameter is sixteen feet; the breadth of the trench surrounding them is three feet, the seat is one foot and a half, and the breadth of the outside wall two feet, which makes the outer diameter twenty-nine feet.

The front poles of the petty futlers tents or huts are in a line with

the centres of the kitchens, allowing to each petty futler six yards in front and eight in depth, to be enclosed by a trench one foot in breadth, and the earth thrown inward.

The front poles of the rear guard tents, are in a line with the centre of their bell of arms, and distant from each other six yards.

The rear guard fronts outwards.

The parade of the rear guard is four yards distant from their bell of arms.

As it is usual for the subalterns of horse to have a tent each, I have therefore placed two in the rear of each troop; and though by the former method of encamping they were generally pitched in a line with the troopers tents, and faced towards the streets as they did, yet, in this plan, I have placed them according to the manner of the foot, by facing them towards the captains tents, with a street of twenty-four paces between them.

The dimensions of the captains and subalterns tents are as follows :

	FEET.	INCH.
Length of the ridge pole - - - -	7	8
Height of the standard-poles - - -	8	
Length from foot to rear between the half walls of the marquise - - - - -	14	
Breadth of marquise between the half walls - - -	10	6
Height of the half walls of a marquise - - -	4	

The lieutenant-colonels and majors tents about a foot larger.

The ornaments of all officers tents to be uniform, and answerable to the facings of the regiment they belong to.

The size of the troop tents is sufficient for those of the quarter-masters, only that they are allowed to have them a little higher, with a small marquise to throw off the rain.

The dimensions here given for the officers tents may be thought, by some, too small; and if they were to encamp in Hyde-Park, I should be of the same opinion; but let those gentlemen who think so

only make one real campaign, and I am convinced that they will wish them rather of a less than a greater.

The circles which are drawn in the plan between the grand and petty futlers, are marked for the kitchens, or places where the private men are to dress their victuals; they are made in the following manner:

First, you draw a circle or a square on the ground of the dimension above limited; after that you dig a trench or ditch round it, of three feet broad and two deep, by which it will resemble the bottom of a cockpit; when this is done, you are then to cut holes or niches in the side of the circle or square of earth which is left standing within the ditch: the holes may be about a foot square, the upper part of which should be within three or four inches of the surface, from whence they are to cut small holes of four inches diameter down to the great ones, in which the fire is to be made, and the heat conveyed through those small holes to the bottom of the kettles, which are placed on the top of them; these fire-places may be made within three or four feet of one another, quite round the said circle or square; and if you erect one of these kitchens (by which I mean an entire circle or square), for each troop or company, they need not be larger than what will contain as many fire-places as what you have tents pitched for your troop or company; for as all the men who lie in a tent are of one mess, every mess must therefore have a fire-place, that they may have no excuse for not boiling the pot every day.

THERE are several advantages by making of the kitchen as here directed.

FIRST, a very little fuel will serve to dress their victuals, for as the fire-places are open at the sides like the mouth of an oven, the air which enters there forces all the heat up the small hole to the bottom of the kettle, and consequently boils it very soon; and as the kettle covers the said hole, the rain cannot come to extinguish it, or create men any trouble in keeping of it in.

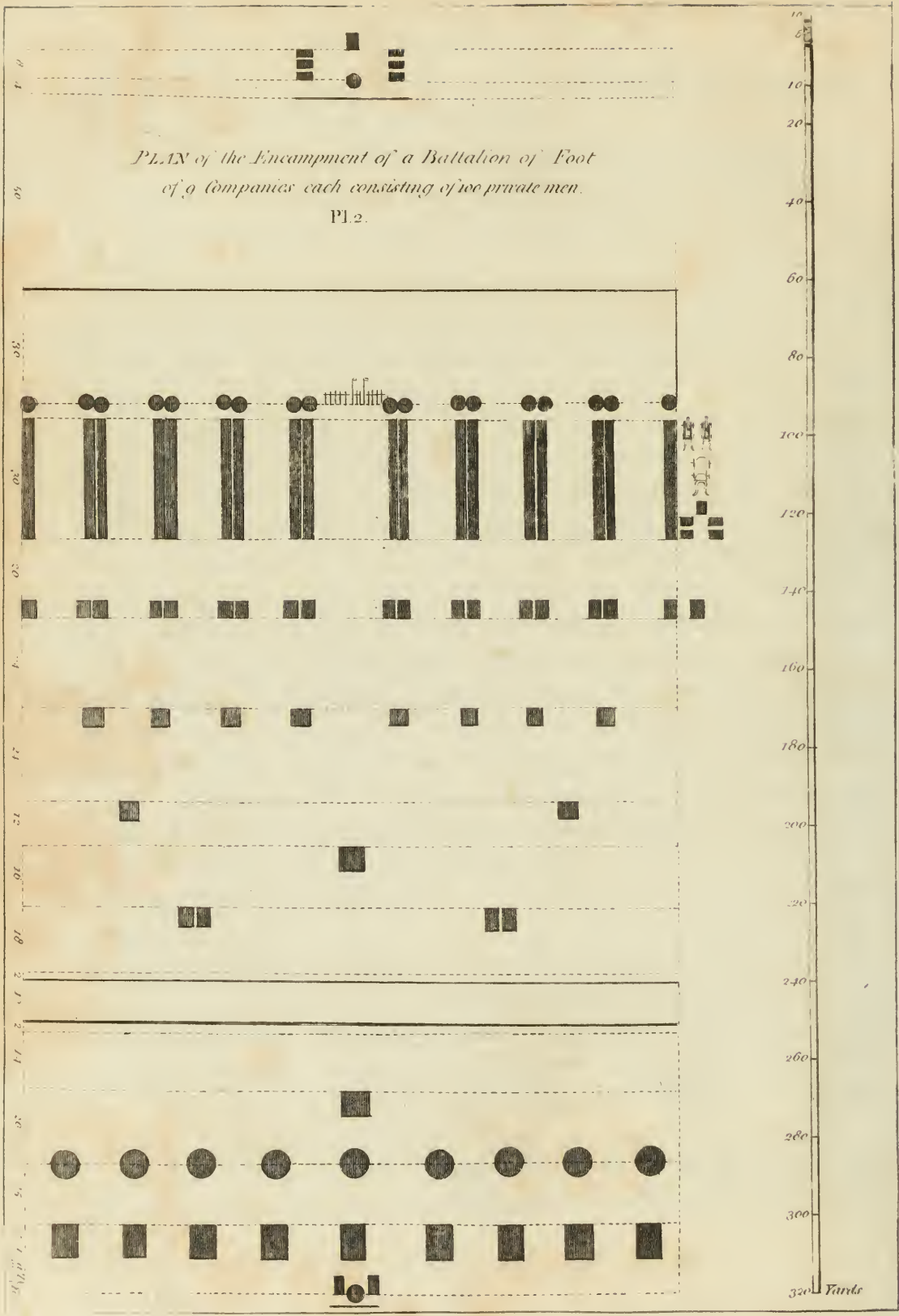
SECONDLY, they are not in great danger of accidents by the fires being blown amongst the tents or forage; for if the men only lay a





*PLAN of the Encampment of a Battalion of Foot  
of 9 Companies each consisting of 100 private men.*

Pl. 2.







MODERN TENTS. PL I.

NC Goodnight sculp



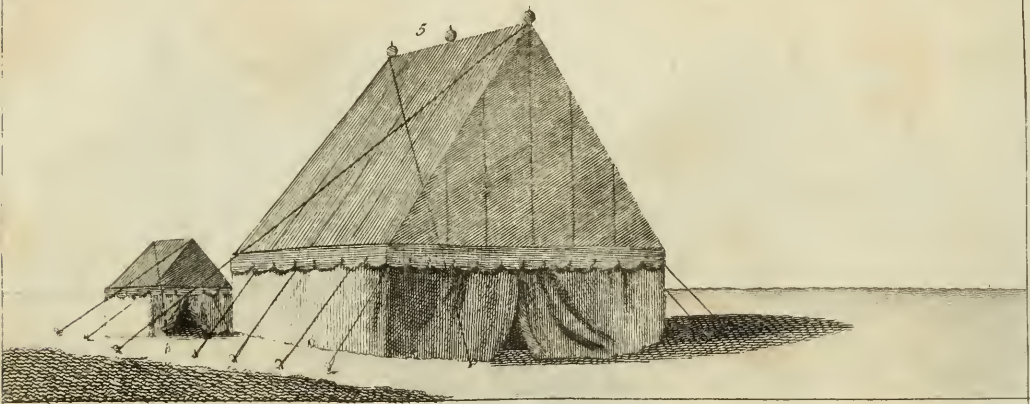
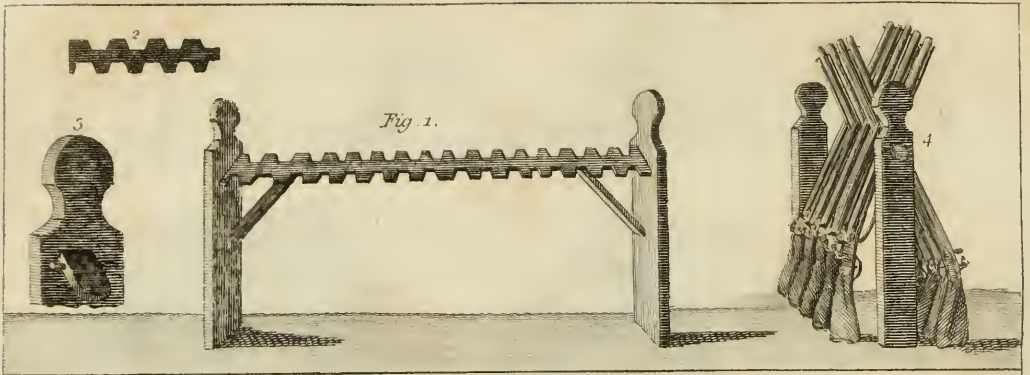
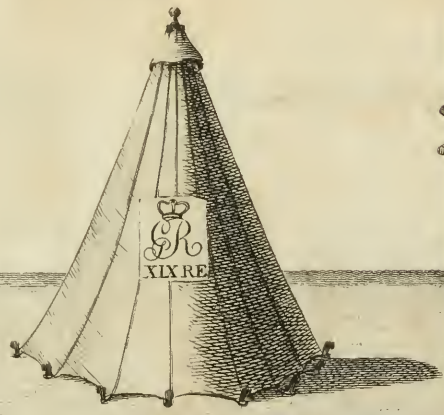




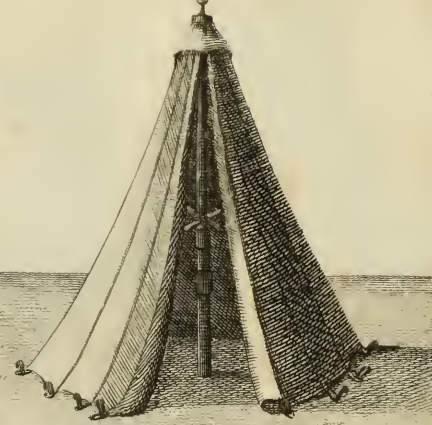
Fig. 1



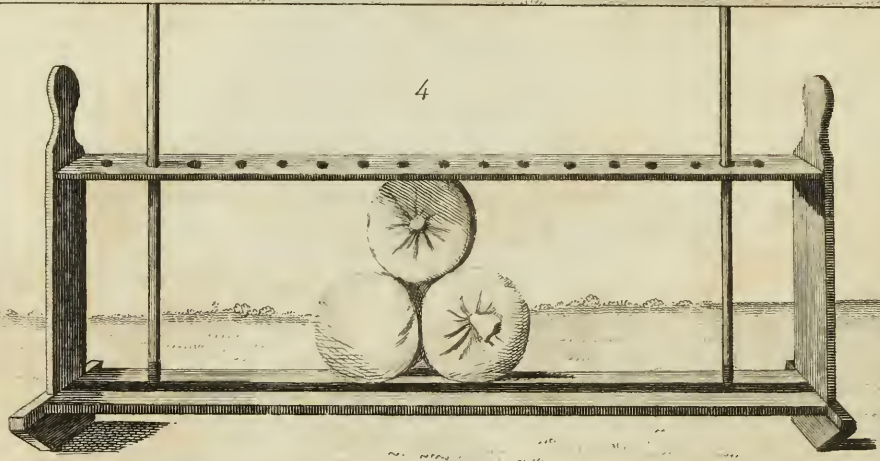
3



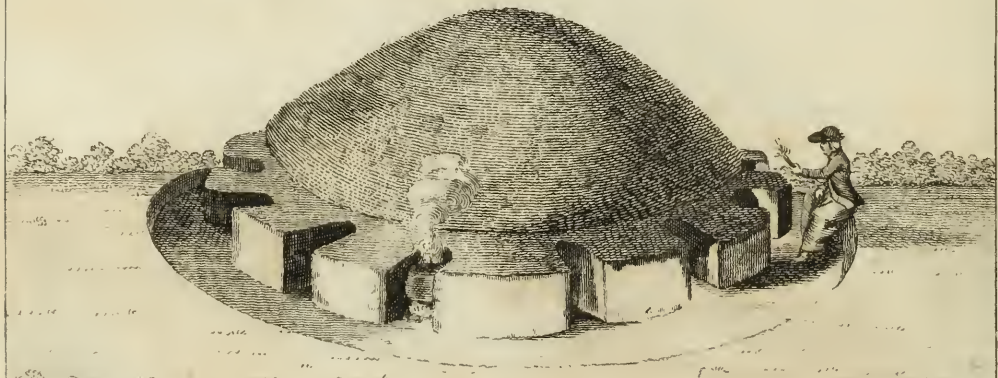
2



4



5



BELL TENTS, COLOURS STAND, & CAMP KITCHEN.



fod or turf on the top of the hole when they take off the kettle, it cannot be dispersed by the wind; which, without this consideration they ought to do, in order to keep the fire-places dry.

THIRDLY, the cutting of a ditch round the kitchens does not only enable them to make the fire-places, but likewise prevents the fire from catching hold of the stubble or grafs, which in very dry or hot weather it is apt to do, and endanger the burning of your camp, which I have often seen for the want of this precaution. Besides, the opposite bank of the ditch serves as a seat for the men who are employed in dressing the victuals.

FOURTHLY and lastly, by having of kitchens made in this manner, the officers can with a great deal of ease look into the conduct and œconomy of their men, and oblige the severall messes to boil the pot every day for the reasons already mentioned.

I SHALL, in the following article, proceed to the particulars for the encamping of a battalion of foot of nine companies of seventy-three men each rank and file, with a plan of the same.

ARTICLE II.

	YARDS.
For pitching three double rows of tents, at six yards each	- 18
For pitching three single rows, at three yards each	- 9
For the breadth of the grand street	- 25
For the breadth of four lesser streets, at seventeen yards each	68
	120
Total front	120
From the side of the serjeant's tent, to the centre of the first gun	4 YARDS.
From the centre of the first gun, to the centre of the second	6
From the centre of the second gun, to the left of the next regiment	20
Total interval	30
	150
Total front interval	150

Depth 320 yards divided as follows:

	YARDS.
From the front pole of officers tent of quarter-guard to the centre of the bell of arms of ditto - - -	8
From the centre of the bell of arms to the parade of the quarter-guard - - - - -	4
From the parade of the quarter-guard to the first line of the parade of the battalion - - - - -	50
From the first line of the parade to the centre of the bells of arms - - - - -	30
From the centre of the bells of arms to the front of serjeants tents	4
For pitching fifteen tents with their intervals, at three yards each - - - - -	45
From the rear of the battalion tents to the front of the subalterns - - - - -	32
From the front of the subalterns to the front of the captain's	21
From the front of the captain's to the front of the lieutenant-colonel's and major's - - - - -	16
From the front of the lieutenant-colonel's and major's to the front of the colonel's - - - - -	5
From the front of the colonel's to the front of the staff-officers	11
From the front of the staff-officers to the front of the first row of batmen's tents - - - - -	14
From the first row of batmen's tents to the first row of pickets	2
From the first row of pickets to the second - - - - -	12
From the second row of pickets to the second row of batmen's tents - - - - -	2
From the second row of batmen's tents to the front of the grand futler - - - - -	14
From the front of the grand futler to the centre of the kitchens	20
From the centre of the kitchens to the front of ordinary futlers	15
From the front of ordinary futlers to the centre of the bell of arms of the rear-guard - - - - -	15
Total depth	320

The muzzles of the battalion-guns are in a line with the front of the ferjeants tents.

The rearmost of the gunners tents are in a line with the rear of the battalion tents.

The subaltern of the artillery is in a line with the subalterns of the battalion.

The front poles of the quarter-guard tents are in a line with the front poles of the centre companies, and in a line with the centre of their bell of arms.

The bells of arms front the poles of the ferjeants tents.

The colours and drums are to be placed at the head of the grand or centre street of the battalion, and in a line with the bells of arms.

The two companies on the right, and the company on the left, form the three single rows; the other companies form the double rows.

The lieutenant-colonel's and major's tents front the centre of the streets on the right and left of the battalion.

The colonel's tent is in the line of the grand street facing the colours.

The staff-officers front the centres of the streets on the right and left of the grand street.

The batmen's tents front towards their horses.

The grand futler is in the rear of the colonel.

The inner diameter of the kitchen is sixteen feet, surrounded with a trench three feet broad, and the earth thrown inwards; the two kitchens on the flanks touch the outside line of the encampment; the centre kitchen is in the centre of the encampment, and distant sixteen yards and a half from those on the right and left of it; the other kitchens are thirteen yards from centre to centre.

The front poles of the ordinary futlers tents or huts are in a line with the centres of the kitchens, allowing to each ordinary futler six yards in front, and eight in depth, enclosed with a trench one foot broad, and the earth thrown inwards.

The rear guard fronts outwards.

The front poles are in a line with the centre of their bell of arms, and distant from each other six yards.

The parade of the rear guard is four yards from the bell of arms.

The houses of office for the front line must be advanced beyond the quarter guard at least fifty yards, and those for the rear line about the same distance in the rear of the petty futlers and butchers.

THIS plan being only calculated for the encampment of a battalion, whose companies are composed of no more than seventy-three rank and file, according to their former strength in time of peace, I shall add another, to shew the method of encampment made use of during the present war, while they remain augmented to a hundred each; and as the difference between them consists only in the quantity and division of the ground, it will be seen very plainly in the said plans, without any repetition of the preceding explanation, which in all other respects will answer for both \*.

\* THE following orders relative to encampments were issued, in 1799, from the adjutant-general's office, by command of His Royal Highness the Duke of York, commander in chief of the army.

ON the arrival of a brigade, or a battalion, on the ground destined for its camp, the quarter and rear guards of the respective regiments will immediately mount, and when circumstances require them, the advanced pickets will be posted. The grand guards of cavalry will be formed, and the horses picketed. The mens' tents will then be pitched; and till this duty is completed, the officers are on no account to quit their troops or companies, or to employ any soldier for their own accommodation.

WHENEVER a regiment remains more than one night in a camp, regular kitchens are to be constructed.

No tents or huts are to be allowed in front of, or between the intervals of the battalions. A spot of ground for this purpose shall be marked by the quarter-master, with the approbation of the commanding officer.

ON arriving in a camp, which is intersected by hedges, ditches, unequal or boggy ground, regiments will immediately make openings of communication, of sixty feet in width.

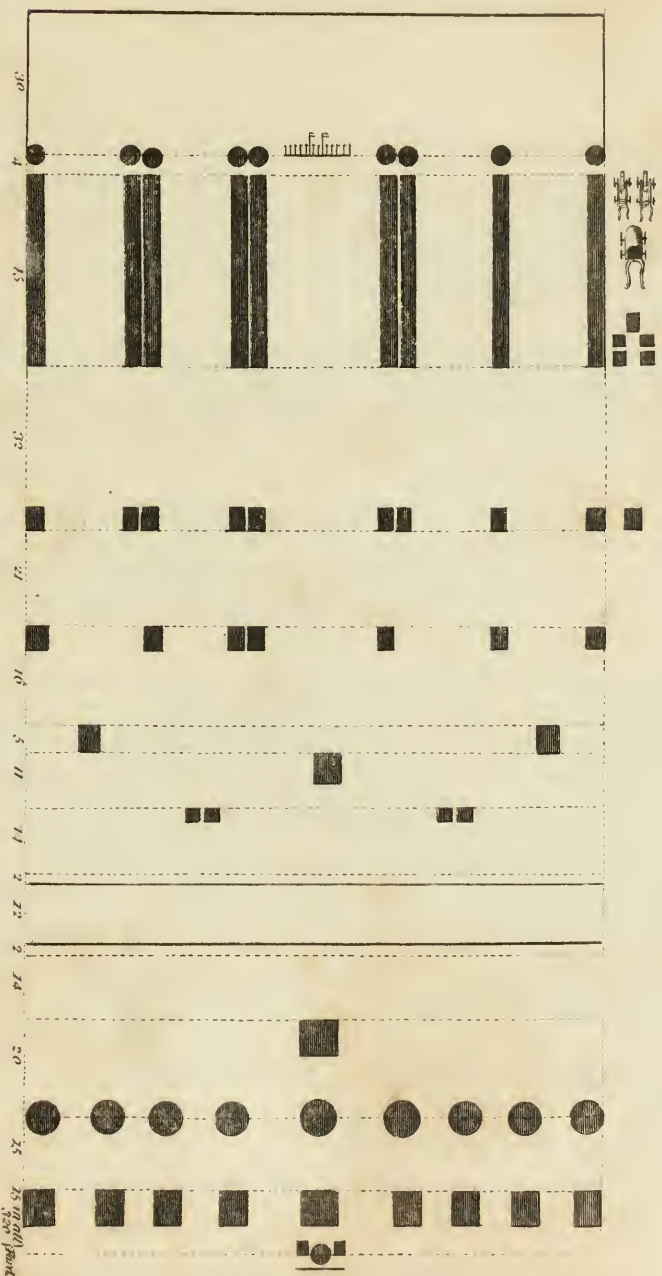
THE ground in front of the encampment is to be cleared, and every obstacle to the movement of the artillery and troops is to be removed.

COMMANDING officers of regiments must take care that their communication with the nearest grand route is open, and free from any impediments.

10  
5  
10  
20  
30  
40  
50  
60  
70  
80  
90  
100  
110  
120  
130  
140  
150  
160  
170  
180  
190  
200  
210  
220  
230  
240  
250  
260  
270  
280  
290  
300  
310  
320  
Fards

*PLAN of the Encampment of a Battalion of Foot  
of 9 Companies each consisting of 70 private Men.*

PL. I.





## CHAPTER IV.

*Of Military Musick.*

**M**ILITARY musick, before the introduction of fire arms, served to animate the soldiers in battles and assaults of places, as well as for the purpose of signals for the different manoeuvres and duties in camp and garrison; wherefore it cannot be doubted but it was used in our antient armies.

IN an old manuscript chronicle (1) is a ballad made on the victory of King Edward III. over the Scots at Hallidowne Hille, in which there are these lines:

This was do with merry fowne,  
With pipes trumpes and tabers thereto,  
And loud clariones thei blew also.

AND in the prose account of the same battle in the same MS., “then the Englishe mynstrelles beaten their tabers and blew their trompes, and pipers piped loude and made a great schowte upon the Skottes.” Notwithstanding this, neither drummers, trumpeters, nor any other minstrells occur in the wardrobe accounts of either Edward I. II. or III. Possibly they were part of the royal household, paid under some other department.

THE common military instruments of musick were the trumpet, drum, fife, and horns of different kinds.

THE trumpet is of the most remote antiquity, and frequently occurs

(1) IN Bib. Harl. No. 4690.

in the scriptures, as being used by the Israelites. The Romans had both the straight and crooked trumpet; and trumpets of both kinds have been found in different parts of England, generally supposed to have been Danish.

THE drum was probably introduced into Europe from the East by the Crusaders (m); a kind of kettle drum, called the *nacaire*, is mentioned by Joinville in the Life of St. Louis, as being used by the Saracens.

THE fife is said to have been introduced by the Switzers; Albert Durer, in one of his engravings of the soldiers of that nation, has represented a fifer.

THE side drum, so called from being borne on the side of the person who beats it, is too well known to require a description. It was antiently called the *tabour*, of which there is an instance in Froissart, cap. 147, where it is said, that King Edward III. was attended by a great number of trumpets and drums when he made his entry into Calais, after having taken it by a long siege (n). From an antient manuscript it appears, that during the reign of King Edward IV. a royal order was issued for impressing trumpeters. Among the household expences of King Henry VII., in the 19th year of his reign (o), there is the following entry: "Item, to on that played upon the *droome*, 6s. 8d."

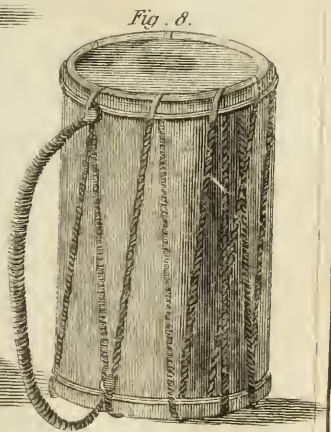
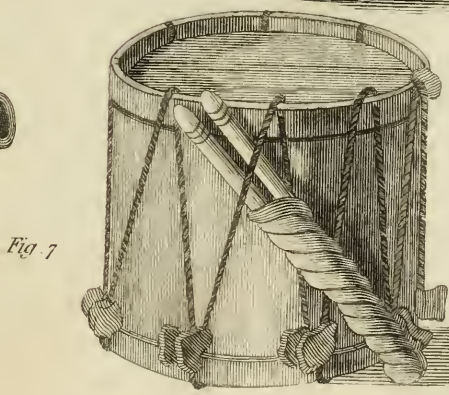
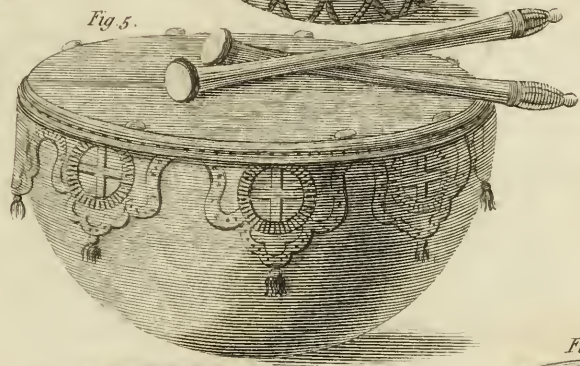
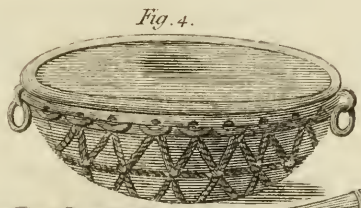
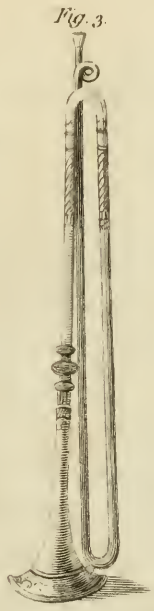
IN a diary of the siege of Boulogne, A.D. 1544, by King Henry

(m) THE *timbrel*, so frequently mentioned in the scriptures, is supposed to have been a kind of drum: drums were also used by the Indians, as is testified by Curtius, Lib. 8. "Indi tympana suo more pulsantes." And Suidas says: "Tubis non utuntur, sed pro iis sunt flagella quæ excutunt in aerem, et tympana item horribilem quandam bombum emitentia." Isidorus describes another sort of drum under the name of *Symphonia*: "Symphonia vulgo appellatur lignum cavum, ex utraque parte pelle extensa, quam virgulis hinc et inde musici feriunt."

(n) QUAND ce fut fait le roi monta a cheval et fit monter la royne, les barons et chevaliers, si chevancherent devers Calais, et entrerent dedans la ville a foison de trompettes, tabours, *nacaires* et *buccines*.

(o) PRESERVED in the Remembrancer's Office, Exchequer.





INSTRUMENTS OF MILITARY MUSICK.



VIII. printed in Rymer, there is mention made of the drummers and viffleurs marching at the head of the king's army ; and in the household account of the 34th of that king by Brian Tuke, drumslades and fifers are charged.

IN the list of the army employed at St. Quintin's, trumpets and drums were appointed to the different corps, in the proportion of one trumpet to each troop of an hundred men, both heavy armed and light horse ; and a drum and a fife to each company of foot consisting of an hundred men. Besides these trumpets, a drum and a fife made part of the suit or retinue of the great officers.

THE captain general had two trumpets, one drum, and one fife ; the lieutenant general one trumpet ; the high mareschal one trumpet, one drum, and one fife ; the captain general of the infantry six wyfflers, one drum, and one fife ; and the master of the ordnance one drum, and one fife : from the appointment of wyfflers as distinct from the fife, it seems as if there was some difference between those instruments, which are generally conceived to be one and the same.

IN the succeeding reign drums and fifes seem to have been part of the military establishment. The ear-piercing fife, and spirit-stirring drum, are mentioned by Shakspeare among the circumstances of war. And in Ralph Smith's Military Collection the qualifications and duties of drummers and fifers are thus laid down : " All captains must have dromes and piphes and men to use the same, who should be faithfull, secrete, yngenious, of able personage to use their instruments and office, of fundrie language, for often tymes they are sent to parlie with their enemies, to summon their forts and towns, to redeme and conducte prifoners, and diverse other messages, which of necessitie require languages ; if such dromes or piphers should fortune to fall into the hands of their enemies, no gifte or force should cause them to disclose any secrete that they know ; they must often practise their instruments, teache the company their found of the march, allarme, approche, assalte, battell, retreat, skirmish, or any other calling that of necessity should be known."

THE fife was for a long time laid aside, and was not restored till

about the year 1745, when the Duke of Cumberland introduced it into the guards; it was not, however, adopted in the marching regiments till the year 1747: the first regiment that had it was the 19th, then called Green Howards, in which I had the honor to serve, and well remember a Hanoverian youth, an excellent fifer, being given by his colonel to Lieutenant Colonel Williams, then commanding that regiment at Bois le Duc in Dutch Flanders. Fifes afterwards, particularly since the practice of marching in cadence, have been much multiplied, for though only two fifers were allowed on the muster-rolls of each regiment, and those to the grenadier company, yet in most corps the drummers of the battalion companies were taught to blow the fife as well as to beat the drum.

SIR John Hawkins in his History of Musick has preserved some curious anecdotes respecting the old English march, which I have here transcribed: it seems (says he) that the old English march of the foot was formerly in high estimation, as well abroad as with us; its characteristic is dignity and gravity, in which respect it differs greatly from the French, which, as it is given by Merfennus, is brisk and alert. Sir Roger Williams, a gallant low country foldier of Queen Elizabeth's time, and who has therefore a place among the worthies of Lloyd and Winstanley, had once a conversation on this subject with Marshal Biron, a French general; the marshal observed that the English march, being beaten by the drum, was slow, heavy, and sluggish. "That may be true," answered Sir Roger, "but slow as it is, it has traversed your master's country from one end to the other." This bon mot is recorded in one of those little entertaining books written by Crouch, the bookseller, in the Poultry, and published about the end of the last century, under the fictitious name of Robert Burton; the book here referred to is entitled, Admirable Curiosities, Rarities, and Wonders in England, Scotland, and Ireland; the story is to be met with in page 5 of it, but where else is not said. Notwithstanding the many late alterations in the discipline and exercise of our troops, and the introduction of fifes and other instruments in our martial musick, it is said that the old English march is still in use with

the foot. Mr. Walpole has been very happy in discovering a manuscript in parchment, purporting to be a warrant of Charles I., directing the revival of the march, agreeably to the form thereto subjoined in musical notes, signed by his majesty, and countersigned by the Earl of Arundel and Surrey, the then earl marshal; this curious manuscript was found by the present Earl of Huntingdon in an old chest, and as the parchment has at one corner the arms of his lordship's predecessor, then living, Mr. Walpole thinks it probable that the order was sent to all lords lieutenants of counties.

THE following is a copy of the warrant, and of the musical notes of the march, taken from the catalogue of royal and noble authors, vol. 1. page 201.

#### CHARLES REX.

WHEREAS the antient custom of nations hath ever bene to use one certaine and constant forme of march in the warres, whereby to be distinguished one from another. And the march of this our English nation, so famous in all honourable atchievements and glorious warres of this our kingdome, in forraigne parts (being by the approbation of strangers themselves, confest and acknowledged the best of all marches) was, through the negligence and carelesse of drummers, and by long discontinuance, so altered and changed from the antient gravitie and majestie thereof, as it was in danger utterly to have been lost and forgotten.

It pleased our late deare brother Prince Henry to revive and rectifie the same by ordaining an establishment of an certaine measure, which was beaten in his presence at Greenwich, anno 1610. In confirmation whereof we are graciously pleased, at the instance and humble sute of our right trusty and right well beloved cousin and counsellor Edward Viscount Wimpleton, to set down and ordaine the present establishment hereunder expressed, willing and commanding all drummers within our kingdom of England and principallitie of Wales, exactly and precisely to observe the same, as well in this our kingdom as abroad in the service of any forraigne prince or state,

without any addition or alteration whatsoever. To the end that fo antient, famous, and commendable a custome may be preserved as a patterne and precedent to all posteritie. Given at our pallace of Westminster, the seventh day of February, in the 7th yeare of our raigne of England, Scotland, France and Ireland.

VOLUNTARY before the MARCH.

The musical score consists of eight staves, each with rhythmic notation (diamonds and stems) and lyrics below. The lyrics are as follows:

Staff 1: Pou tou pou tou pou R pou tou pou pou tou pou R poung

Staff 2: Pou tou pou tou poung

Staff 3: Pou tou pou tou poung

Staff 4: R pou tou R poung

Staff 5: R R pou R poung

Staff 6: R R pou tou R pou tou pou R tou pou R poung

Staff 7: R R R R poung

Staff 8: R R R pou R R pou tou pou R tou pou R poung pou tang

Subscribed Arundel and Surrey.

This is a true copie of the original signed by his majestie,

E. D. NORGATE, Windfor.

THE kettle-drums and trumpets of the horse are adorned with banners; respecting these and the trumpets, his majesty has made the following regulations:

*Banners of the Regiment of Horse.*

THE banners of the kettle-drums and trumpets to be of the colour of the facing of the regiment; the badge of the regiment or its rank

to be in the centre of the banner of the kettle-drums, as on the second standard; the king's cypher and crown to be on the banner of the trumpets, with the rank of the regiment in cyphers underneath; the depth of the kettle-drum banners to be 3 feet 6 inches; the length 4 feet 8 inches, exclusive of the fringe; those of the trumpets to be 12 inches in depth, and 18 inches in length.

THE trumpets to be of brass; the cords to be crimson, mixed with the colour of the facing of the regiment; the king's own regiment of dragoons, and the royal Irish, are permitted to continue their kettle-drums, and to which they are to have banners of the same dimensions as those which are ordered for the regiments of horse.

THE chief beats of the drum formerly used by the infantry were a CALL, a TROOP, a PREPARATIVE, a MARCH, a BATTLE, a RETREAT; these by Bariffe are thus explained (p): "By a call, you must understand to prepare to heare present proclamation, or else to repaire to your ensigne: by a troop, understand to shoulder your muskets, to advance your pikes, to close your ranks and files to their order, and to troop along with, or follow your officer to the place of rendezvous, or elsewhere: by a march, you are to understand to take your open order in rank, to shoulder both muskets and pikes, and to direct your march, either quicker or slower, according to the beat of the drum: by a preparative, you are to understand to close to your due distance for skirmish, both in ranke and file, and to make ready, that you may execute upon the first command: by the battle or charge understand the continuation or pressing forward in order of battle without laggin behinde, rather boldly stepping forward in the place of him that falls dead, or wounded before thee: by a retreat, understanding an orderly retireing backward, either for relief, for advantage of ground, or for some other politicall end, as to draw the enemy into some ambushment, or such like."

---

(p) MILITARIE Discipline, or the Young-Artillery-man, by lieutenant colonel William Bariffe. Second edit. London, 1643.

*The present different Beats of the Drum for the Infantry, are these :*

**THE GENERAL** ; this is beat instead of the reveillé, when the whole camp or garrison are to march.

**REVEILLE'** ; beat at day-break to awaken the camp or garrison ; after which the centinels cease challenging.

**ASSEMBLY, OR TROOP** ; at this beat the troops fall in, the roll is called, and baggage loaded.

**FOOT-MARCH** ; to march (q).

**GRENADIERS MARCH** ; beat only to that company.

**RETREAT** ; this is beat at sun-set in garrisons, and at gun-firing in camp, at which time the pickets are formed ; in fortified places it is a signal for the inhabitants to come in before the gates are shut.

**TAPTOO** ; the signal for souldiers to retire to their quarters or barracks, and to the futlers to draw no more liquor, from whence it derives its name ; the taptoo is seldom beat in camp.

**TO ARMS** ; a signal to summons the soldiers to their alarm posts on some sudden occasion.

**THE CHURCH CALL** ; called also **BEATING THE BANK** ; a beat to summons the soldiers of a regiment or garrison to church.

**THE PIONEERS CALL** ; known by the appellation of **Round Heads and Cuckolds, come dig** ; this is beaten in camp to summon the pioneers to work.

**THE SERJEANT'S CALL** ; a beat for calling the serjeants together to the orderly room, or in camp, the head of the colours.

**THE DRUMMER'S CALL** ; beat to assemble the drummers at the head of the colours, or in quarters at the place where it is beaten.

**THE PREPARATIVE** ; a signal to make ready for firing.

**THE CHAMMADE** ; a signal to desire a parley with the enemy.

(q) **THERE** was formerly another beat, called the **Long March** ; on the beating of which the men clubbed their firelocks, and claimed and used the liberty of talking all kind of ribaldry respecting their amours and those of their officers; this has for some time been very properly abolished.



THE ROGUES, OR WHORES MARCH; this is beaten and played by the fifes when a foldier is drummed out of the regiment, or common prostitutes are drummed out of the camp or garrison.

THERE are also several other beats used in different corps for particular signals; such as the Long Roll for turning out the regiment in camp or garrison; the doubling of the troop to break from grand to sub-divisions: but these are rather particular than general.

THERE was in the king's household an officer, stiled, drum-major-general of England, without whose licence no one could, except the king's troops, formerly beat a drum.

THE regimental drum-majors have no extra pay from government, but receive some addition by stoppage from the pay of the young drummers, and contributions of the captains.

MANY of the drums of the infantry were formerly of brass, with the arms of the colonel painted on them; but by his majesty's late regulation, no colonel is to put his arms, crest, device, or livery on any part of the appointment of the regiment under his command; and the drums are to be of wood, the front painted with the colour of the facing of the regiment, with the king's cypher and crown, and the number of the regiment under it.

THE different sounds or signals given by the trumpet were, according to Markham, in his *Soldiers' Accidence*, as follows:

THE first is BUTTE SELLA, or put on your saddles, which as soone as the foldier heareth (in the morning or other times), he shall presently make ready his horse and his own person, trusse up his sack of necessaries, and make all things fitting for his journey.

THE second is, MOUNTE CAVALLO; or, mount on horsebacke; at which summons the souldier shall bridle up his horse, bring him forth, and mount his backe.

THE third is, A LA STANDARDE; goe to your colours, or standard, whether it bee standard, cornet, or guidon; upon which sound the foldier, with those of his fellowship, shall trot forth to the place where the cornet is lodged, and there attend till it is dislodged: also, this sound in the field and in service, when men are disbanded, is a retreat

for the horsemen, and brings him off being engaged, for as oft as he hears it he must retire and goe backe to his colour.

THE fourth is, TUCQUET, or march; which beinge hearde simply of itselfe, without addition, commands nothing but marching after the leader.

THE fifth is, CARGA, CARGA, or an alarm; charge! charge! which founded, every man (like lightning) flies upon his enemy, and gives prooffe of his valour.

THE sixth and last is, AUQUET, or the watch; which founded at night, commands all that are out of duty to their rest; and founded in the morning commands those to rest that have done duty; and those that have rested to awake, and doe duty; and in these founds you shall make the souldier so perfect that, as a song, he may lanquet or sing them, and know when they are founded unto him.

OTHER foundings there are, as TENDE HOE, for listening; a CALL, for summons; a SENET, for state and the like; but they have reference to the greater officers, and those have no need of instructions.

IN modern times, that is, since the revolution, kettle drums and trumpets have been chiefly appropriated to the horse. The dragoons long had the hautbois and side drum, but about the year 1759 changed them for the trumpet; the infantry had only the drum, till the introduction of fifes as above-mentioned. Since the introduction of light infantry, many of those companies have used the bugle horn.

OF late years, in addition to the drums and fifes, each regiment of infantry has had its band of musick. The instruments are chiefly hautbois, clarinets, French horns, bassoons, trumpets, cymbals, and in some the tabor and pipe. The band is usually composed of men borne upon the establishment of the regiment as privates, and allowed some additional pay from the non-effective fund of the field officers and captains of companies. These officers also defray the charge for instruments, extra clothing, musick, &c.; though in many corps the money paid for discharges has been applied to the support of the regimental band.

## CHAPTER V.

*Of Flags, Colours, Standards, and Ensigns.*

FLAGS, banners, pencils, and other ensignes, are of great antiquity; their use was, in large armies, to distinguish the troops of different nations or provinces; and in smaller bodies, those of different leaders, and even particular persons, in order that the prince and commander in chief might be able to discriminate the behaviour of each corps or person; they also served to direct broken battalions or squadrons where to rally, and pointed out the station of the king, or those of the different great officers, each of whom had his particular guidon or banner, by which means they might be found at all times, and the commander in chief enabled from time to time to send such orders as he might find necessary to his different generals.

THE antient ensigns were of different kinds; some were to be fixed or planted, being too heavy to be carried by one man; others were attached to different corps or persons, and carried about with them. Carrying a banner or standard in the day of battle, was always considered as a post of honour; and in our histories we frequently meet with several instances of persons rewarded with pensions for valiantly (r) performing that duty; the office of the royal standard-bearer was

---

(r) A.D. 1350. 24 Ed. III. there is in Rymer, that king's writ to the treasurer of the Exchequer, directing the payment of 200 marks for life to Guido de Bryan, for his gallant behaviour in the last battle against the French, near Calais, and for his prudent bearing of the standard there against the said enemies, and there strenuously, powerfully, and erectly sustaining it.

RAUFE VESTYNDEN held 10l. per annum by letters patent under the great seal till rewarded with an office; this was granted to him by Edward IV. for the good and agreeable service which (says the record) he did unto us, in beryng and holdyng of oure standard of the black bull, at the batayl of Sherborne, in Elmcit. Rot. Parl.

usually granted for life, with a very large salary (s); an entry in the wardrobe account gives a description of some of the ensigns of King Edward I., which were thus charged; two with the arms of England, one with those of St. George, one with the arms of St. Edmond, and one with the arms of St. Edward; they were all fixed in lances (t).

THE different kinds of ensigns antiently in use were standards, banners, guidons, pennons, pencils, and bandrolls, or camp colours.

THE standards were originally large flags fixed on the tops of towers, or other elevated places, and from their being stationary were called standards, though this term was afterwards given to moveable ensigns, as at present to those borne by the cavalry.

BANNERS were small, and of a square figure, somewhat about the make and size of the standards now borne by the horse or dragoons; banners were borne before knights bannerets, whose arms were embroidered on them.

PENNONS were borne before knights bachelors, who brought a certain number of followers into the field; there are some instances of pennons being carried before esquires, but it was only those possessed of certain estates or fiefs; the pennon was in figure and size like a banner, with the addition of a triangular point; they were charged with armorial bearings of their owner; on the performance of any gallant action by the knight and his followers, the pennon was converted into a banner by the king, or commander in chief, cutting off the point, whereby the knight was raised to the degree of a banneret. Both knights and bannerets were bound to appear in the field at the head of a certain number of men, whence antient historians frequently

(s) A.D. 1514. 5 Henry VIII. Henry de Egerton, Knt. held the office of standard-bearer, with a salary of one hundred pounds per annum, with all accustomed perquisites.

(t) DOMINO Willmo de Felton pro quinque lanceis emptri pro quinque vexellis regis, portandis in guerra Scocie anno presenti, videlicet. duobus vexillis de armis Anglie, tercio vexillo de armis Sancti Jeorgii, quarto de armis Sancti Edmundi, et quinque de armis Sancti Edwardi, pro quolibet lancea 2s. per manus Willmi de Etcheyiche valetti fui apud Tynewold, octavo die Julii, 10s.

expres the strength of an army, by the number of banners and pennons of which it consisted.

THE guidon, according to Markham, is inferior to the standard, being the first colour any commander of horse can let fly in the field. It was generally of damask fringed, and usually three feet in breadth near the staff, lessening by degrees towards the bottom, where it was by a slit divided into two peaks. It was originally borne by the dragoons, and might be charged with the armorial bearings of the owner. The pencil was a small streamer fixed to the end of a lance, and was adorned with the coat armour of the esquire, by whom it was carried, and served to point him out in the day of battle.

HOLY or sacred banners were frequently carried into the field by monks or other ecclesiastics, in order to inspire a confidence in the troops, who were taught to believe that the saint, whose banner was then displayed, would interest himself in their behalf: thus the standard of St. Cuthbert was carried with the army of King Edward I. into Scotland (u), and with that of the earl of Surrey, to the battle of Flodden-field, and several of the standards there taken from the Scots were placed round the tomb of that Saint.

THE colours of the foot, frequently by the old writers stiled ensigns, are square, but larger than the banners or standards of the horse; they are fixed on a spear; formerly there was a stand of colours to every company; they were in time of action guarded by two ranks of halbardiers.

BANDROLLS are used to mark out the limits of a camp; at present, they are small square pieces of thin woollen cloth of scarlet, quartered with the colour of the facing of the regiment, and are commonly called camp colours.

---

(u) DOMINO Willmo de Gretham, monacho Dunolm, sequenti regem cum vexillo Sancti Cuthberti in guerra Scocie anno presenti pro expensis suis, a 3 die Julii, usque 24 diem Augusti, utroque computato, per 35 dies morando in exercitu regis ac etiam per expensis suis per 4 dies sequentes redeundo versus Dunolm, de licentia regis. See Wardrobe account of Edward I. p. 67.

IN the College of Arms there is the following curious manuscript respecting the sizes of flags, &c.

A<sup>o</sup>. predict. (fc R. Hen. VIII. 36to.)

AN order for the flags by the councell as hereafter follows:

A FLAGG to be in lengthe iii yards and half a quarter.

THE breadth, two yards three quarters and a nayle, with the best or crest and wourde poudred with crosses of St. George.

SET forth by the Duke of Norfolk.

FOR his Grace, iiiii.

FOR the Duke of Suffolk, ii.

FOR the Erle of Oxford, i.

FOR the Lord Latymere, i.

FOR the Lord Montjoy, i.

FOR the Lord Ferris, iii (x).

THE discomodities that may come into an army for lake of ensignes and banners, standards, pennons and guydonnes, which of necessity must be had in battayle.

FIRST, for conduite and for men to reforte unto, a hundreth men under a standart, and for their cappelaynes to be knowen thereby where to have them, when nede shall require, as knights, barones, and banneretts.

ALSOE, under a banner of armes, a hundreth men to be conducted, and none to have them but baronetts, knights of the garter, baronnes, vyscountes, marquesses, dukes and princes for the conduicte; under eche of these a hundreth men, and under their standarts as afourfaide.

ALSOE, pennons of armes, and gwydonns for conduifte under eache of them L men, for an esquire, gentyllman, or cappelayne to be knowen thereby to all his men, to follow him in there order in musters and battayles.

ALSOE, w<sup>th</sup>out standartes, pennons, and gwydons, the kinge's ma-

jestie in tymes of battell cannot make banneretts, as yt hath been accustomed in tyme out of mynd in this noble realme of England.

ALSOE officers of armes cannot be judges to judge noblemen according to their meryttes in these valyante actes, without the knowledge of these ensignes and tokens, nor yet to have knowledge where to find the cappetaines (yf they be sent for in time of needs), and other difcomcedyties may come thereof, and that our men cannot know their cappetaynes from their enemyes in tyme of foragyng or battayle.

ALSOE, yt hathe allwayes ben the custome of thys noble realme of England, that every cappetayne wolde rather dye in the fieelde, than to loofe any of these foresaide signes, as standarts, banner, pennon, or guydown token of his armes of nobylitie, and alwayes and unto this day they have, in any battell where they have gone and proceeded, had the victory of and againste the generall flages of there enemyes, which ys not hyer then a man may holde a lyttle over hys heade, and wavers nothinge in the winde, but by force of his armies, and standarts, pennons, and gwydonnes waver in the wynde, and be fene fare of, and maketh enemyes afferde, and comforteth the friende to followe them.

AND yf there be nothinge borne but flaggs for ensignes, as frangers doe, you shall not knowe the bandes of nobilitie of the realme from fraungers, nor gentellmen from knights, nor a knight from a baronne, nor no degree from another of nobilitie, but every man in like goode, and bastards as legettemate.

*The Scyffe of Standarts, Banners, Pennons, and Gwydonnes.*

THE great standart to be sett afore the king's pavylyon or tente, not to be borne in battell, to be of the length of xi yards.

THE king's standart to be borne, to be of the length of viii yards or ix.

THE duke's standart to be borne to be of the lengthe of vii yards.

THE earl's standart to be of the length of vi yards.

THE barron's standart to be of the length of v yards.

THE bannerett's standart to be of the length of iv yards.

THE knight's standart to be of the length of iv yards.

EVERY standart and gwydon to have in the cheffe, the crosse of St. George, y<sup>e</sup> best or creste with his devise, and wourd and flytte at the ende.

THE pennon of their armes rounde at the ende, and to be ii yards and a half longe.

THE gwydon to be in length ii dy. or iii yards.

THE banner of armes an elle longe, yard brode.

UNDER a standart, C men.

UNDER a banner, C men.

UNDER a pennon, L men.

UNDER a gwydon, L men.

A BANNER of a knight of the garter, a barronett, a barrone, a vyfcount, an erle, a marquis, duke or prince, C.

THE standart for the same personage aforefaid, and for a knight being cappetayne of . . . . men.

A PENNON of armes, and a gwydon for the conduicte under eche of them L men, for a gentleman or squier.

FLAGGS for horsfemen, a yarde and di. longe, w<sup>th</sup> the cros of St. George, the crest and worde.

WHEN the kinge or any other prince furste displayeth their banner, y<sup>t</sup> oulde be donne by stade and discreet counsellors, some of them hored of age, shewing them the lawful cause why, to the entente that there should be founde no wylfulness in the said prince, but that he doeth yt uppon a just cause of quarrell, w<sup>ch</sup> done to commande the chiefe of the herralds to unroll yt, and the prince to make hym knight that beareth the faide banner, yf he be not so before, and to ryde forth in the name of God.

THE fizes of banners of the knights of the garter in the time of Queen Elizabeth.

THE queene's banner is two yards di. long and two yards broade, besides the fringe.



THE banner of each kn<sup>t</sup> of the garter is two yardes quart. long and broad, besides the fringe.

AT present there are in general only two colours to a battalion of foot, and one standard to a squadron of horse (y).

---

(y) THE 2d regiment of foot had three colours as a distinguishing mark of honour; his majesty's arms were in the centre of the first, the queen's cypher in the centre of the second, both of which were in other respects unions; the third was sea-green (the original facing of the corps), and, to the best of my recollection, the colonel's arms or crest was in the centre. On our marching over Island bridge into Dublin duty, in 1750, this last mentioned colour (I being then the third ensign) was, by order of General Forke, taken out of my hands, furled, and never flew since; the men grumbled exceedingly; I felt myself hurt at being deprived of an honour no other corps then enjoyed, and which this had carried since its creation in 1661.

WHENEVER the king reviews it, as soon as the colonel presents the return, his majesty most graciously hands it to his royal consort (if there), it being the queen's own royal regiment of foot, of which his majesty is colonel. *Donkin's Military Collections.*

## CHAPTER VI.

*Of the Administration of Military Justice.*

THE administration of military justice was, in the earlier periods of our history, chiefly under the direction of the high constable and marshal, who presided as judges, and, assisted by civilians and officers experienced in military affairs, tried and punished, according to the laws and ordinances of war then in force, not only all military offences, but likewise determined all kinds of suits depending between the followers of the army. In cases of great import, military delinquents were tried before the parliament (z).

THE rules and ordinances of war, which served for the guide of the court, and wherein the martial law for the time being was declared, were either made by the king, with the advice of his peers and other experienced persons, for the expedition then on foot, as were those of King Richard II. and Henry V. or enacted by the commander in chief, the king's authority for that purpose being ge-

(z) HENRY DE ESSEX, standard bearer to King Henry II. was, for cowardice, in Wales, deprived of his lands, shorne, and shut up for life as a monk in the abbey of Reading. See Dan. p. 18. Speed, p. 502. Hollingf. and Stow. An. 2. Hen. II.

In the rolls of parliament 1st of Richard II. we learn, that William de Weston and John Lord of Gomery were tried in parliament, for delivering up the castle of Oaterwyk, and the town and castle of Ardes, in France, and convicted thereof; for which Weston was adjudged to be drawn and hanged: and the Lord of Gomery, on account of his rank and former services, and also not being a liege man, or natural born subject, was sentenced to be beheaded.

The Bishop of Norwich, in the seventh year of the same reign, for divers military offences as a general officer, appeared before the same tribunal, and was punished with the seizure of his temporalities and a considerable fine.

nerally given in their commissions (a), many of which appear in Rymer, even so low down as the reign of King James I. Rebels were sometimes tried by the martial law, as was the case in the reign of Henry VII.

AFTER the attainder of Edward Duke of Buckingham, in the 13th of Henry VIII. the office of high constable ceased, and was never renewed but for a limited time; since which the commanders of our armies were entitled lieutenant generals, or if peers, lord lieutenants, as being the king's representatives, or deputies.

NOTWITHSTANDING this, the marshal, who was commonly second in command, retained the prerogative of sitting as chief judge in all cases, not only respecting the discipline of the army, but also in every other cause, controversy and complaint that might arise therein. For the more regular dispatch of business, to this court belonged divers civil officers; among whom were a judge-martial, an auditor, and clerks; under-provosts, gaolers, tipstaves, and executioners. This court, we learn from the following clause in the ordonnances of war of King Henry VIII. was directed to assemble twice a week. "Item, the high marshal must hold two court days in the weke, that is to wit, one Munday and Thursdaie, for them that have anie

(a) In the commission granted by King James I. A. D. 1622, to Sir Horace Vere, appointing him captain general of the army intended to be sent to the Palatinate, he is authorized to make and proclaim ordonnances of war for the government of the army, and to enforce the observation thereof, and to hear, determine, and punish, by himself or deputies, all criminal causes, mutinies, desertions, and all other crimes whatsoever; and to punish by death, loss of member, or any other corporal infliction, according to their crimes and the laws and customs of war; and also to hear and determine in like manner all civil causes, contracts, &c. arising in the said army; also in like manner to judge all persons that may in future join the army; also to fill up all vacancies, and by his order to direct the payment of the said soldiers. All officers are directed to obey the commands of the said Sir Horace Vere. See Rymer in anno.

In a commission granted by King Charles I. A. D. 1640, to Thomas Earl of Arundel, to be captain general of the army to be employed at home, he is authorized to make laws and ordonnances for the government thereof, to appoint a provost marshal, which provost marshal shall use and execute the martial law. Rymer in anno.

matters in court, with his officers with him, as it is ordeyned by the chief captain."

As the commiffions of moft of the commanders in chief contained a claufe, authorifing them to enact ordonnances for the government of the army under their command, and to fit in judgment themfelves, or to appoint deputies for that purpofe, it feems in fome degree imperceptibly to have encroached on the independency of the marfhals court, and at length to have taken a new form, under the denomination of the court or council of war, which fat at ftated times, or as was ordered by the commander in chief, and at which officers of a certain rank, apparently not under that of a colonel (b), had a right to fit as affeffors or members; and, inftead of the marfhall, we hear of an officer ftiled prefident of the high court of war, who, on certain occafions, claimed the privilege of a double vote (c).

(b) SIR FRANCIS VERE, in his description of the duties of the feveral officers of a regiment, mentions it as the duty of all colonels once every week to call together all his captains, and to enquire of all offences in his regiment; and examine the nature and quality of fuch offences, to prepare the cafes for a more speedy hearing in a court martial, and to repair to the court martial as often as they fhall be warned.

MARKHAM, who wrote fhortly after him, that is, in the reign of King James I. fays, "and the lieutenants of colonels are captaines in curtefie, and may in a court of warre fit as the puny captaine of that regiment in which he commandeth." *Soldiers Grammar*, p. 123. Poffibly it might be about this time that captains firft obtained that privilege.

(c) THE next in order I conceive to be the prefident of the high court of war, whose place requireth him to be a perfon of honour, integritie, of found judgment, of ripe knowledge in civil and military lawes, before whom all matters civil and criminal, that have relation to the army, are to be tryed, and therefore he ought to be affifted with a learned fifcal or judge advocate, as alfo with a well experienced auditor, to audit and keep register of all cafes and matters that fhall be brought before the court of war.

His office is to affemble the court of war as often as the general fhall pleafe for to appoint him; and in the interim he is to prepare all bufynes and cafes fo as that the court of war may have a clear and juft information of all things; and when that any bufynes fhall come into a final fentence, he fhall have the previledge of a double voice, becaufe he represents the general's perfon.—*A Brief Treatife of Warr, &c. &c.* by W. T. in the year of our redemption 1649. MS. No. 6008, Harl.

TOWARDS the latter end of the reign of King James I. and in the beginning of that of his successor Charles, a kind of mixed court seems to have been occasionally adopted, composed of both civil and military members. This was when an army was quartered at Portsmouth, Plymouth, Dover, or other sea ports, waiting to be embarked for foreign service; in which case a commission was sent down, appointing commissioners to try all offences committed by the soldiers or followers of the army, within certain counties or districts. Many of these commissioners were military men; but with them were joined the earl marshal, lord lieutenant of the county, and the mayors, or chief magistrates, of the principal towns of that district and its environs.

SEVERAL of these commissions may be found in Rymer, about the year 1626 and 1640 (d). In the laws and ordonnances of war, published A. D. 1640, by the earl of Northumberland for the king's forces, and those of the earl of Essex, for the parliamentary forces in 1643, all controversies between soldiers and their captains and all others, were directed to be summarily heard and determined by the council of warre, except the weightiness of the cause require further deliberation. No other tribunal or court is mentioned.

AT what time courts martial, according to their present form, were first held, it is not easy to ascertain; they are, however, mentioned, with the distinction of general and regimental, in the ordonnances of war of King James II. published by royal authority, A. D. 1686.

---

(d) A. D. 1626, an. 2. Charles I. that king grants his commission to Philip, Earl of Montgomery, lieutenant of the county of Kent, Sir Nicholas Tufton, Sir Edward Hales, Sir Thomas Smith, with fourteen other knights and gentlemen, together with the mayors of the towns of Dover and Sandwich for the times being, to try in all places within the county of Kent, by martial law, all soldiers, mariners, or others joining with them, guilty of robbery, felony, mutiny or desertion, outrage or misdemeanor, "and to execute them by such summary course of law as is used in armies in times of warres," according to the law martial, for an example of terror to others; for which purpose they are directed to erect such gallows and gibbets, and in such places, as they shall think proper; in which all magistrates and others are commanded to be assisting. See *Rymer in anno*.

AFTER the revolution, the form and powers of courts martial were settled by an act of parliament, with the military laws, called articles of war, made under that authority. This act has generally (e) been renewed every year under the title of "The Mutiny Act:" it consists of two parts, namely, the act of parliament, which is equally binding to all his majesty's subjects civil and military, and the articles of war, enacted by the king, who is, by the aforementioned act, empowered so to do. These concern the soldier only. Both, the act of parliament as well as the articles of war, have been in a constant state of alteration from their first institution, and still require great amendment: where these are silent, there is another guide for courts martial, that is, the custom of war in like cases (f).

As the ordonnances of war and martial regulations of our early kings, so far as they can be recovered, give great insight into our Military History, I shall lay before my readers such as I have been able to procure; transcribing or abridging them as the article seems to merit.

THE first record of this kind is of the time of King John, entitled "Constitutions to be made in the Army of our Lord the King:" these are apparently calculated to facilitate the supply of the army with necessaries, which it seems were to be exposed for sale in the churches and church-yards, and to be sold under the eye of the superintendents or chief men of the church, who were to attend for that purpose, and to receive the money for the proprietors; and in case they were not present, or neglected to procure proper provisions, the persons taking them elsewhere were to deposit the value in the church.

FROM this it seems as if markets were sometimes held in church-

(e) GENERALLY, though not always, as has before been shewn.

(f) "And if any doubt shall arise which is not explained by the said articles or act of parliament, according to my conscience, the best of my understanding, and the custom of war in the like cases." See the Oath administered to all the Members of a Court Martial in the Act of Parliament, anno 1785.

yards ; or perhaps, in times of war or insurrection, on the approach of an army, the country people used to drive their cattle, and convey their goods of different kinds, to the churches and church-yards, as places of safety and sanctuary, whence no one would dare to take them by force, as it might be deemed a kind of sacrilege and infringement on the immunities of the church : but as this would cause a want of provisions or necessaries in the army, foldiers might be authorised to take what they stood in need of, on paying the value of the things taken to the churchwardens, or other superintendents of the churches.

THE next is the charter of King Richard I. made in the first year of his reign, A. D. 1189, and chiefly meant to prevent disputes between the foldiers and failors, in their voyage to the holy land. It is printed in Rymer, whence it was extracted and translated.

*Charter of King RICHARD I. for the government of those going by Sea to the Holy Land.*

RICHARD, by the grace of God, king of England, duke of Normandy, and earl of, &c. &c. To all his men going by sea to Jerusalem, greeting. Know ye, that by the common council of all good men, we have made the underwritten ordonnances. He who kills a man on shipboard, shall be bound to the dead man, and thrown into the sea : if the man is killed on shore, the slayer shall be bound to the dead body, and buried with it. Any one convicted by lawful witnesses of having drawn his knife to strike another, or who shall have drawn blood of him, to lose his hand. If he shall have only struck with the palm of the hand, without drawing blood, he shall be thrice ducked in the sea. Any one who shall reproach, abuse, or curse his companion, shall, for every time he is convicted thereof, give him so many ounces of silver. Any one convicted of theft, shall be shorn like a champion (g), boiling pitch shall be poured on

---

(g) CHAMPIONS hired to fight legal duels, in cases of murder or homicide, had their hair clipped

his head, and down of feathers shaken over it, that he may be known; and he shall be fet on shore at the first land at which the ship touches.

Witness myself at Chinon.

THE ordonnances of Richard II. are the next in point of chronological order, that I have been able to discover; they are in old French, among the Cotton manuscripts in the British Museum, marked Nero, D. VI. There is also a copy of them in the library of the college of arms. Both agree minutely, except that the latter has one article more than that in the museum.

*These are the Statutes, Ordonnances, and Customs, to be observed in the Army, ordained and made by good consultation and deliberation of our most Excellent Lord the King Richard, John Duke of Lancaster, Seneschall of England, Thomas Earl of Essex, and Buckingham, Constable of England, and Thomas de Mowbray Earl of Nottingham, Marechall of England, and other Lords, Earls, Barons, Banneretts, and experienced Knights, whom they have thought proper to call unto them; then being at Durham the 17th Day of the Month of July, in the ninth Year of the Reign of our Lord the King Richard II.*

I. FIRSTLY. That all manner of persons, of what nation, state, or condition they may be, shall be obedient to our lord the king, to his constable and marechall, under penalty of every thing they can forfeit in body and goods.

II. ITEM, that none be so hardy as to touch the body of our lord, nor the vessel in which it is contained, under pain of being drawn, hanged, and beheaded.

---

clipt or shorn close to their heads, as appears from an ancient manuscript quoted by Upton, p. 37. *Les Chevaliers qui se combatre pour meutre, ou por homicide, se doivent combatre a pie, et fans coyfe et estre roignes a la reonde.*" The circumstance of the party being a knight made no difference, the same regulations being laid down for both. *Champions, Chevaliers & autres.*



III. ITEM, that none be so hardy as to rob and pillage the church, nor to destroy any man belonging to holy church, religious or otherwise, nor any woman, nor to take them prisoners, if not bearing arms; nor to force any woman, upon pain of being hanged.

IV. ITEM, that no one be so hardy to go before, or otherwise than in the battail to which he belongs, under the banner or pennon of his lord or master, except the herbergers, whose names shall be given in by their lords or masters to our constable and marefchall, upon pain of losing their horses.

V. ITEM, that no one take quarters, otherwise than by the assignment of the constable and marefchall and the herbergers; and that, after the quarters are assigned and delivered, let no one be so hardy as to remove himself, or quit his quarters, on any account whatsoever, under pain of forfeiture of horse and armour, and his body to be in arrest, and at the king's will.

VI. ITEM, that every one be obedient to his captain, and perform watch and ward, forrage, and all other things belonging to his duty, under penalty of losing his horse and armour, and his body being in arrest to the marefchall, till he shall have made his peace with his lord or master, according to the award of the court.

VII. ITEM, that no one be so hardy as to rob or pillage another of money, victuals, provisions, forage, or any other thing, on pain of losing his head; nor shall any one take any victuals, merchandise, or any other thing whatsoever, brought for the refreshment of the army, under the same penalty; and any one who shall give the names of such robbers and pillagers to the constable and marefchall, shall have twenty nobles for his labour.

VIII. ITEM, no one shall make a riot or contention in the army for debate of arms, prisoners, lodgings, or any other thing whatsoever, nor cause any party or assembly of persons, under pain (the principals as well as the parties) of losing their horses and armour, and having their bodies in arrest at the king's will, and if it be a boy or page he shall lose his left ear. Any person conceiving himself aggrieved shall make known his grievance to the constable and marefchall, and right shall be done him.

IX. ITEM, that no one be so hardy as to make a contention or debate in the army on account of any grudge respecting time past, or for any thing to come; if in such contest or debate any one shall be slain, those who were the occasion shall be hanged; and if any one shall proclaim his own name, or that of his lord or master, so as to cause a rising of the people, whereby an affray might happen in the army, he who made the proclamation shall be drawn and hanged.

X. ITEM, that no one be so hardy as to cry "havok," under pain of losing his head, and that he or they that shall be the beginners of the said cry shall likewise be beheaded, and their bodies afterwards be hanged up by the arms (h).

XI. ITEM, that no one make the cry called mounté, or any other whatsoever in the army, on account of the great danger that may thereby happen to the whole army; which God forbid! and that on pain, if he be a man at arms, or archer on horseback, of losing his best horse; and if he be an archer on foot or boy, he shall have his left ear cut off (i).

XII. ITEM, if in any engagement whatsoever an enemy shall be beat down to the earth, and he who shall have thus thrown him down shall go forwards in the pursuit, and any other shall come afterwards, and shall take the faith or parole of the said enemy, he shall have half of the said prisoner, and he who overthrew him the other half; but he who received his parole shall have the keeping of him, giving security to his partner.

XIII. ITEM, if any one takes a prisoner, and another shall join him, demanding a part, threatening that otherwise he will kill him

(h) HAVOK was the word given as a signal for the troops to disperse and pillage, as we learn from the following item in the *droits of the marshall*, vol. 1. p. 229. wherein it is declared that in the article of plunder all the sheep and hogs belong to such private soldiers as can take them: and that on the word havok being cried, every one might seize his part: this probably was only a small part of the licence supposed to be given by that word.

(i) Mounté, i. e. montez, to horse; probably this was either a mutinous cry, calling on the cavalry to take horse and leave the army, or might be the method of calling to arms from a supposed approach of the enemy, and was what would now be called, raising a false alarm.

(the prisoner), he shall have no part, although the share be granted to him; and if he kills the said prisoner, he shall be in arrest to the marshal, without being delivered till he has satisfied the party, and his horses and armour shall be forfeited to the constable.

XVI. ITEM, that no man go out on an expedition by night or by day, unless with the knowledge and by the permission of the chieftain of the battail in which he is, so that they may be able to succour him should occasion require it, on pain of losing horse and armour.

XV. ITEM, that for no news or affray whatsoever that may happen in the army, any one shall put himself in disarray in his battail, whether on an excursion or in quarters, unless by assignment of his chieftain, under pain of losing horse and armour.

XVI. ITEM, that every one pay to his lord or master the third of all manner of gains of arms; herein are included those who do not receive pay, but only have the benefit of quarters, under the banner or pennon of arms of a captain.

XVII. ITEM, that no one be so hardy as to raise a banner or pennon of St. George, or any other, to draw together the people out of the army, to go to any place whatsoever, under pain, that those who thus make themselves captains shall be drawn and hanged, and those who follow them be beheaded, and all their goods and heritages forfeited to the king.

XVIII. ITEM, that every man, of what estate, condition, or nation he may be, so that he be of our party, shall bear a large sign of the arms of St. George before, and another behind, upon peril that if he be hurt or slain in default thereof, he who shall hurt or slay him shall suffer no penalty for it: and that no enemy shall bear the said sign of St. George, unless he be a prisoner, upon pain of death.

XIX. ITEM, if any one shall take a prisoner, as soon as he comes to the army, he shall bring him to his captain or master, on pain of losing his part to his said captain or master; and that his said captain or master shall bring him to our lord the king, constable, or marshal, as soon as he well can, without taking him elsewhere, in order that they may examine him concerning news and intelligence of the

enemy, under pain of losing his third to him who may first make it known to the constable or mareſchall; and that every one ſhall guard, or cauſe to be guarded by his ſoldiers, his ſaid priſoner, that he may not ride about at large in the army, nor ſhall ſuffer him to be at large in his quarters, without having a guard over him, leſt he eſpy the ſecrets of the army, under pain of loſing his ſaid priſoner; reſerving to his ſaid lord the third of the whole, if there is not a partner in the offence; and the ſecond part to him that ſhall firſt take him; and the third part to the conſtable. On the like pain, and alſo of his body being in arreſt, and at the king's will, he ſhall not ſuffer his ſaid priſoner to go out of the army for his ranſome, nor for any other cauſe, without leave of the king, conſtable, and mareſchall, or the commander of the battalion in which he is.

XX. ITEM, that every one ſhall well and duly perform his watch in the army, and with the number of men at arms and archers as is aſſigned him, and that he ſhall remain the full limited term, unleſs by the order or permiſſion of him before whom the watch is made, on pain of having his head cut off.

XXI. ITEM, that no one ſhall give paſſports or ſafe conduct to a priſoner nor any other, nor leave to any enemy to come into the army, on pain of forfeiture of all his goods to the king, and his body in arreſt and at his will; except our lord the King, Monſieur de Lancaſter, ſeneſchall, the conſtable, and marſhall: and that none be ſo hardy as to violate the ſafe conduit of our lord the king, upon payne of being drawn and hanged, and his goods and heritage forfeited to the king; nor to infringe the ſafe-conducts of our ſaid lord of Lancaſter, ſeneſchall, conſtable, and mareſchall, upon pain of being beheaded.

XXII. ITEM, if any one take a priſoner, he ſhall take his faith, and alſo his bacinet, or gauntlet, to be a pledge and in ſign that he is ſo taken, or he ſhall leave him under the guard of ſome of his ſoldiers, under pain, that if he takes him, and does not do as is here directed, and another comes afterwards, and takes him from him (if not under a guard) as is ſaid, his bacinet or right gauntelet in

pledge, he shall have the prisoner, though the first had taken his faith.

XXIII. ITEM, that no one be so hardy to retain the servant of another, who has covenanted for the expedition, whether soldier, man at arms, archer, page or boy, after he shall have been challenged by his master, under pain that his body shall be in arrest till he shall have made satisfaction to the party complaining, by award of the court, and his horses and armour forfeited to the constable.

XXIV. ITEM, that no one be so hardy to go for forage before the lords or others, whosoever they may be, who mark out or assign the places for the foragers, if it is a man at arms, he shall lose his horses and harness to the constable, and his body shall be arrested by the marshal, and if it is a valet or boy, he shall have his left ear cut off.

XXV. THAT none be so hardy as to quarter himself otherwise than by the assignment of the herbergers, who are authorized to distribute quarters, under like penalty.

XXVI. ITEM, that every lord whatsoever cause to be delivered to the constable and marshal the names of their herbergers, under penalty, that if any one goes forward and takes quarters, and his name is not delivered in to the constable and marshal, he shall lose his horses and armour.

THE rules and ordinances of war that next occur are those of King Henry V. made at Mans; of these there are two editions, one, probably the original, being by much the most full and explicit, is in Latin, printed in Upton de Re Militari; the other was till lately only in manuscript, in the English of the time; many copies of it are to be found in different libraries, private as well as public. It is printed in the preface to the Antiquities of England and Wales.

THE spirit of the time shews itself in these regulations, the first articles of which provide for the safety of the church, the preservation of the eucharist in its proper state, and the protection of the persons and privileges of the ecclesiastics.

THE regulations respecting duties, musters, watches and guards, quarters, taking and ransoming prisoners, &c. do not materially differ from the orders given on those heads before and since. By one article we find that the soldiers of every condition were bound to pay their captain, or immediate commanding officer, one third part of their acquisitions made by war, under penalty of losing the whole sum or property so acquired. But the most remarkable article is the last, "of turning out common whores;" by which it appears that these women were not permitted to remain with the army, but at all times, and especially during the sieges of towns, castles, and fortresses, they were to be stationed far off from the army, at the distance of a league at least; and in the case of transgression against this order, the punishment was "the fracture of the left arm of the said whore, if after one admonition she should be found publicly or privately in any prohibited place."

BESIDES these statutes of war of Henry the Vth, his orders to the governor of Rouen, or his lieutenant, are printed in Rymer (k), and exhibit a specimen of that king's garrison regulations. Similar orders were at the same time issued to thirty-six other captains or governors.

SOME orders for the English army, in the year 1486, the 2d of Henry VII., before the battle of Stoke, are found in Leland's Collectanea (l). The reader would rather be tired than gratified with the detail of all these obsolete military laws and regulations.

THE military code of Henry VIII. is preserved in manuscript in the college of arms (m); it is said in the title page to have been printed A.D. 1524, by Thomas Bertelet.

THE laws and ordinances of war established by the Earl of Northumberland, for the army of King Charles I., A.D. 1640 (n), is the next authentic military code that occurs: this was followed in 1643

(k) TOM. x. p. 106, &c.

(l) VOL. iv. p. 213, last edit.

(m) IN a book marked W. S.

(n) LONDON: printed by Robert Barker, printer to the king's most excellent majestie, and by the assigns of John Bill, 1640.

by that of the Earl of Effex, for the government of the parliamentary forces, entitled, “Laws and Ordinances of War, established for the better conduct of the armie, by his excellency the Earl of Effex, lord general of the forces raised by the authoritie of the parliament, for the defence of king and kingdom, and now enlarged by command of his excellency, and printed by his authoritie, London, for Luke Faune,” 1643.

THESE ordinances are set forth in chapters, as follows :

1. Of Duties to God. Four articles.
2. Of Duties to the King and State. Six articles.
3. Of Duties towards Superiors and Commanders. Ten articles.
4. Of Duties moral. Seven articles.
5. Of a Souldier's Duty touching his Armes. Seven articles.
6. Of Dutie in Marching. Four articles.
7. Of Duties in Camp and Garrison. Seventeen articles ; of which no less than eleven denounce capital punishment.
8. Of Duties in Action. Eleven articles.
9. Of the Duties of Commanders and Officers in particular. Thirteen articles.
10. Of the Duty of the Muster-Masters. Six articles.
11. Of Victuallers. Three articles.
12. Of Administration of Justice. Nine articles.

ALL other faults, disorders, or offences, not mentioned in these articles, are declared punishable according to the general customs and laws of war.

THE rules and articles of war in the time of James the II<sup>d</sup>. approach nearer to those by which the army is now governed : many of them indeed are the ground-work of the present articles. They are in number sixty-four, and are of a much more lenient spirit than those framed for the parliamentary forces during the civil war. The last article ends with this merciful proviso ;—that no punishment, amounting to the loss of life or limb, be inflicted on any offenders in time of peace, although the same be allotted for the said offence by these articles, and the laws and customs of war.

THE forms of proceeding in councils of war or courts martial, in the reign of King James II. are thus laid down, in an abridgment of the English Military Discipline, printed by especial command for the use of his majesty's forces, A.D. 1686.

*Of Councils of War or Courts Martial.*

IN an army the council of war is always to meet at the general's quarters or tent, and none are to be called to it but the lieutenant-generals, the major generals, the brigadiers, and the colonels or commanders of bodies, when the matters concern their regiments.

PRIVATE councils of war, or courts martial in a garrison, are either held at the governor's house, at the main guard, or where the governor orders; in a camp at the colonel's tent, who causes notice to be given to the captains to be present.

WHEN all are met, the governor or colonel, or he who is to sit as president, takes his place at the head of the table; the captains sit about according to their seniority, (that is to say,) the first captain on the right hand of him that presides, the second on the left, and so of the rest. And the town major, or the aid major or quarter master of the regiment, who in the absence of the judge advocate discharges his office, is to sit in his place, at the lower end of the table; the lieutenants, sub lieutenants and ensigns, have a right to enter into the room where the council of war (or court martial) is held, but they are to stand at the captains backs, with their hats off, and have no vote.

IF the council be called to deliberate on some matter of consequence, the president having opened it to the court, asks their opinions.

THE youngest officer gives his opinion first, and the rest in order, till it come to the president, who speaks last. The opinions of every one being set down in writing, the result is drawn conformably to the plurality of votes, which is signed by the president onely.

IF the council of war, or court martial, be held to judge a criminal,



the president and captains having taken their places, and the prisoner being brought before them, and the informations read, the president interrogates the prisoner about all the facts whereof he is accused; and having heard his defence, and the proof made or alleged against him, he is ordered to withdraw, being remitted to the care of the marshal or jailor; then every one judges according to his conscience, and the ordinances or articles of war. The sentence is framed according to the plurality of votes, and the criminal being brought in again, the sentence is pronounced to him in the name of the council of war, or court martial.

WHEN a criminal is condemned to any punishment, the provost martial causes the sentence to be put in execution: and if it be a publick punishment, the regiment ought to be drawn together to see it, that thereby the foldiers may be deterred from offending. Before a foldier be punished for any infamous crime he is to be publickly degraded from his arms, and his coat to be stript over his ears.

A COUNCIL of war, or court martial, is to consist of seven at least, with the president, when so many officers can be brought together; and if it so happen that there be not captains enough to make up that number, the inferiour officers may be called in.

AFTER the abdication of King James II., and the accession of King William III., the military code, as has before been said, obtained the sanction of Parliament, though passed only from year to year, under the denomination of the mutiny act; the following is the first that passed, on the 12th of April, 1689, and was to continue in force to the 10th of November in the same year.

*An Act for punishing Officers or Souldiers who shall Mutiny, or desert their Majesties Service.*

WHEREAS the raising or keeping a standing army within this kingdom in time of peace, unless it be with consent of parliament, is against law; and whereas it is judged necessary by their majesties and this present parliament that, during this time of danger, several of the

forces which are now on foot should be continued, and others raised for the safety of the kingdom, for the common defence of the protestant religion, and for the reducing of Ireland.

AND whereas no man may be forejudged of life or limb, or subjected to any kind of punishment by martial law, or in any other manner than by the judgment of his peers, and according to the known and established laws of this realm; yet, nevertheless, it being requisite for retaining such forces as are, or shall be raised during this exigence of affairs, in their duty, an exact discipline be observed; and that souldiers who shall mutiny or stir up sedition, or shall desert their majesties service, be brought to a more exemplary punishment than the usual forms of law will allow.

BE it therefore enacted by the king and queen's most excellent majesties, by and with the advice of the lords spiritual and temporal, and commons in this present parliament assembled, and by authority of the same, that from and after the twelfth day of April, in the year of our Lord one thousand six hundred and eighty-nine, every person being in their majesties service in the army, and being mustered and in pay as an officer or soldier, who shall at any time before the tenth day of November, in the year of our Lord one thousand six hundred and eighty-nine, excite, cause, or join in any mutiny or sedition in the army, or shall desert their majesties service in the army, shall suffer death, or such other punishment as by a court-martial shall be inflicted.

AND it is hereby further enacted and declared, that their majesties, or the general of their army for the time being, may, by virtue of this act, have full power and authority to grant commissions to any lieutenants-general, or other officers, not under the degree of colonels, from time to time to call and assemble court-martials for punishing such offences as aforesaid.

AND it is hereby further enacted and declared, that no court-martial which shall have power to inflict any punishment by virtue of this act for the offences aforesaid, shall consist of fewer than thirteen, whereof none to be under the degree of captains; provided always,

that no field officer be tried by other than field-officers; and that such court-martial shall have power and authority to administer an oath to any witnesses, in order to the examination or trial of the offences aforesaid.

PROVIDED always, that nothing in this act contained shall extend, or be construed to exempt any officer or soldier whatsoever from the ordinary process of law.

PROVIDED always, that this act, or any thing therein contained, shall not extend, or be any wise construed to extend to, or concern any of the militia forces of this kingdom.

PROVIDED also, that this act shall continue and be in force until the said tenth day of November, in the said year of our Lord one thousand six hundred eighty-nine, and no longer.

PROVIDED always, and be it enacted, that in all trials of offenders by courts-martial, to be held by virtue of this act, where the offence may be punished by death; every officer present at such trial, before any proceeding be had thereupon, shall take an oath upon the Evangelists before the court (and the judge advocate or his deputy shall, and are hereby respectively authorized to administer the same) in these words, that is to say :

You shall well and truly try and determine according to your evidence the matter now before you, between our sovereign lord and lady, the king and queen's majesties, and the prisoner to be tried.

So help you God.

AND no sentence of death shall be given against any offender in such case, by any court-martial, unless nine of thirteen officers present shall concur therein; and if there be a greater number of officers present, then the judgment shall pass by the concurrence of the greater part of them so sworn, and not otherwise; and no proceedings, trial, or sentence of death shall be had or given against any offender but between the hours of eight in the morning and one in the afternoon.

THIS act seems to have been passed in a hurry, merely to give some kind of law to the army, which, as we learn from divers relations, was then in a very unsettled state, having large arrears of pay due to

them, and being consequently under little or no discipline; by gradual additions to the articles of war, and the mutiny act, they have grown to their present size, and yet in many parts require explanation and amendment, being in various instances vague and disputable.

ONE material deficiency in that part of the act which concerns the quartering of officers and soldiers is, that it does not ascertain what kind of accommodation is to be given to the former; for want of any discrimination, it has of late been asserted, that no distinction was required or intended by law to be made between the quarters of an officer and a private soldier; it would, therefore, prevent all disputes on that subject, if it were directed, that every commission officer should have such kind of lodging, bedding, and furniture, as would be proper for a guest of the rank of a gentleman, of which the chief magistrate of the place should be the judge; and that no more than one officer should be put in a bed, and no more than two, and those under the rank of a captain, in one room: in the article directing the application of the penalty levied on publicans, for refusing to provide quarters and the necessaries directed by the act, satisfaction for the expence arising to the party from want of quarters, is confined to the soldier only, although a subaltern, having no other income than his pay, is perhaps, particularly after a long march, as little able to pay for a lodging as a private soldier.

THE great difficulty (o) found by most regiments in procuring an

---

(o) ALL these, with many more inconveniences, might be obviated by the erection of barracks, at the expence of the persons liable to have soldiers quartered on them; an expedient which, it is credibly reported, has been offered more than once. Nothing can be more ill-founded than the supposition that barracks would divide the soldier from the citizen; the real consequence would be, the uniting them in the bonds of friendship: at present, the soldier and the landlord, or publican, having opposite interests, live in a state of inveterate enmity, and the contempt and insult the small pay of the military subjects them to from the canaille of every sort, tends to make them in general at variance with the citizens; but if the troops were lodged in barracks, the chief causes of disagreement would cease, and the soldiery would be considered as a benefit instead of a burthen on the country wherein they were stationed; the men would besides be happier, more moral, and better disciplined.

hospital for their sick, renders a clause in the mutiny act for that purpose much wanted; it would be a very considerable benefit to the service, if the magistrates of every district wherein troops should be quartered were obliged to provide a convenient barn, stable, or other building at a reasonable rent; for want of some such regulation, the most exorbitant demands are usually made for the most wretched hovels, though the slender allowance to a regimental surgeon enables him to afford very little, particularly where the regiment is in scattered quarters, as in that case he must have two or more hospitals; the consequence is, that many a life is lost, which, with proper accommodation, might have been saved; in villages, parish officers might be obliged to take sick soldiers into their parish poor-houses, assigning them one or more rooms according to their numbers.

As it sometimes happens that, in bad or cross-roads, waggons break down, and the soldiers of the baggage-guard are prevented from arriving at their destined quarters by the time limited in their route, which is thereby rendered void and of no effect; some precautions should be taken against such accidents, and the commanding officer in that case expressly authorized to oblige the constable of the district where it happens to impress fresh carriages.

A SEVERE penalty should also be laid on any farmer, or his driver, who should give in a false weight of his waggon, a fraud constantly attempted, and often practised on the troops; the weighing of each waggon before loaded being attended with much trouble and delay (p).

---

(p) SEVERAL of the author's objections have been removed since the last edition of this work was published. The mutiny act now extends the penalty on refusing quarters to officers as well as soldiers; and the great number of barracks constructed within the last seven years have relieved the inn-keepers, and increased the accommodation of the troops. The same observation may be made with respect to what he says of hospitals. Victuallers and others liable to have soldiers quartered upon them, will seldom be burthened with them, except upon a march; and this is much alleviated, if the grievance be not entirely done away, by a late act of parliament, allowing the inn-keepers 14d. per diem for each horse's hay and straw, and 16d. for each soldier's diet. This, however, is only to subsist during the present high prices of provisions. May, 1800.

ALTHOUGH the duty of a foldier to labour in the conſtructing of fortifications and other military works without any additional pay, if ordered ſo to do by his officers, is implied in the Vth article of the 2d ſection of the articles of war, which ſection, with the VIth, is directed to be read to all recruits at the time of their enliſting; yet a contrary opinion has long ſubſiſted among the foldiers in general; wherefore, if a claufe was inſerted in the oath of fidelity, ſimilar to that in the ordinances of war, enacted by the earl of Northumberland, it might prevent much uneaſineſs, and if done ſome time ago, would probably have ſaved the lives of ſeveral foldiers ſhot for mutiny on that ſubject.

THE right of a foldier to appeal from the ſentence of a regimental to a general court-martial is now pretty univerſally denied, yet an idea of that right is ſtill ſtrongly rooted in the opinions of many old foldiers: it would be much better if this matter was poſitively aſcertained and declared; the following words in the act of parliament, rather appearing to imply the legality of ſuch appeal: “ provided always, and be it hereby declared and enacted, that no officer or foldier, being acquitted of any offence, ſhall be liable to be tried a ſecond time by the ſame or any other court-martial, for the ſame offence, unleſs in the caſe of an appeal from a regimental to a general court-martial.”

THE authority exerciſed by the naval officers over the land-forces, when embarked on board the king’s ſhips, either for ſervice, or to be tranſported to foreign gariſons, requires ſome regulation: as the law is now ſuppoſed to ſtand, a foldier finds himſelf ſubjected to two different codes; namely, the military articles of war, and thoſe of the navy; whereas, at his enliſting, he was informed he thereby became liable to the former only, and that he could not be puniſhed otherwiſe than by the ſentence of a court-martial; but, according to the naval diſcipline, the captain, or, in his abſence, the commanding officer of the veſſel, may, by his own authority, order any one on board his ſhip as many dozen laſhes as he thinks proper, by dividing the offence into ſo many different heads; reſpecting which he is both accuſer and judge: although the nature of the ſervice, the character of the people to be governed, with divers other conſiderations, require ſum-

mary proceedings ; and that the captain should have power over every person on board his ship, in the same manner as a governor of a fortress has over every individual of his garrison ; and allowing that nothing but confusion could arise from two distinct powers, *imperium in imperio* being an acknowledged solecism in government ; but this power would not be at all invaded or diminished, were there an article of war authorizing and directing a captain or commanding officer of a ship of war to order ship courts-martial for the trial of all offenders belonging to the land forces, to consist of a certain number of commission officers, either all belonging to the troop, or half naval and half land officers, reserving to himself the approbation of the sentence, as governor of the garrison ; soldiers being thus tried, wholly or in part, by their own officers, would still preserve that respect for them which the present practice is very apt to make them lose ; they would, besides, be judged by those articles to which they had sworn obedience ; it would likewise prevent a great deal of dissention between the two services.

THE present mode of proceeding at a general court-martial is as follows :

THIS court in England must consist of a president, and not less than twelve members, all commission officers ; and if they are to try an officer, if possible, none should be of a rank inferior to the prisoner ; the president at least a field officer.

THE president and members being assembled and seated according to their rank or seniority, the commission or warrant for holding the court is read, as also the appointment of the president and deputy judge-advocate, if the judge-advocate himself does not officiate ; should the court be held within any garrison, by virtue of the governor's commission, that commission is read, as also the governor's order for holding the court, and his appointment of the president.

THE judge-advocate next swears the president singly, as a token of respect ; and afterwards all the members, as many together as can conveniently hold the book ; the form of the oath is given in the articles of war ; the president is then to administer to the judge-advocate

the oath prescribed in the said articles; he being sworn, takes his seat at the bottom of the table, opposite to the president.

THE prisoner is now brought in; but, previous to the charge being exhibited against him, he is asked, whether he acknowledges himself to be an officer or soldier (as the case may happen) in the —— regiment? Should he deny it, if an officer, his commission is read, or the paymaster deposes he has received pay as such, or evidence is brought to prove he has been mustered.

IF a private soldier or non-commission officer, his attestation is produced, or proof that he has regularly received pay as such.

THE prisoner being thus proved amenable to the court, the names of the members are read to him, that he may challenge any of them, giving his reasons for such challenge; should they appear sufficient, another member is appointed; otherwise the objection is over-ruled by the court: the charge is next read, and the prisoner required to plead, guilty or not guilty; if he pleads guilty, the judge-advocate enters such a plea, and proceeds to collect from the different members the punishment allotted to the crime; if the person pleads not guilty, the judge-advocate proceeds to call evidence in support of the charge, which he, as official prosecutor, examines, taking down the substance of the deposition of each witness, except where the words contribute to the offence, in which case he takes it down verbatim, as spoken by the evidence; having finished the examination of a witness, and taken it down, he reads it aloud, asking first the evidence, then the prisoner and the court, whether they are satisfied with it, as expressing the meaning of the deponent.

THE judge-advocate having asked such questions as he thinks sufficient, next enquires of the court whether they would ask the evidence any further questions; the same is to be repeated to the prisoner, who has a right to cross-question every evidence produced in support of the prosecution. The prosecution being closed, the prisoner is put upon his defence, and where many evidences have been examined, or the charge contains many articles, is frequently indulged with a day to prepare it, the court adjourning for that time.



THE court having met, the prisoner states his defence, and calls his evidence to prove the facts there alledged; these witnesses he may, if he thinks proper, examine himself, after which the judge advocate and court may cross-question them.

THE judge-advocate, if he chooses, here makes a reply to any objections made to the evidence for the prosecution, but no new matter must be adduced; in this case the prisoner has a right to a rejoinder.

ALL the evidence for the prisoner must be taken down by the judge-advocate, with the same care and precautions as were observed in the depositions supporting the prosecution.

THE defence being closed, the judge-advocate collects the opinions of the members, whether the prisoner is guilty or not guilty, beginning with the youngest, the majority constituting the opinion of the court.

IF the prisoner is found guilty, the next consideration is, what punishment he shall receive, it being a maxim that when a prisoner is found guilty some punishment must be allotted. For this purpose the court considers under what article or articles of war the offence, or offences, immediately fall, many having specific punishments allotted to them, such as scandalous and infamous behaviour, breaking an arrest, &c.; if under these, the punishment is already settled by his majesty; but if the crime is adjudged to come under any article where the court have a discretionary power of punishment, the judge-advocate collects the opinions, beginning as before with the youngest member, and takes down the decision of the majority as the opinion of the court; observing that, in a sentence of death, there must be the concurrence of at least two thirds of the members.

IN cases of corporal punishment, it is doubted whether those members who have voted the prisoner not guilty can, with propriety, afterwards vote as to the number of lashes he is to receive, as it seems, *prima facie*, assigning punishment to an innocent man; but to this it is answered, that by voting for a very small number of lashes, they may effectually operate towards mitigating a sentence which, by their preceding opinions, they must esteem unjust.

BEFORE I conclude this head, I cannot avoid mentioning a singular circumstance recorded in the report of the committee of the house of commons, in 1746, before alluded to; this was to oblige an officer, who had been tried by a court-martial, to pay the expences of the profecutor, amounting to 54l. 1s. 6d. which sum was by the commanding officer of the regiment (who was also the profecutor) ordered to be stopped by the agent, out of a balance due to the said officer; upon his filing a bill in chancery the demand was dropped; the propriety of this demand being investigated by the committee, it was by the judge-advocate, and a variety of competent witnesses, declared totally unprecedented.

## CHAPTER VII.

*Of Military Rewards.*

THE military rewards of antient times were generally donations of land, according to the rank of the person to be rewarded; the estates so granted were held by military services: William the Conqueror, soon after his accession to the crown, was extremely profuse in his grants of lordships and manors to most of his Norman followers, dividing among them great part of the possessions of those English Barons who had sided with Harold against him.

THE unfettled and turbulent reigns of many of the succeeding kings, with the broils between them and their barons, both furnished employment for soldiers, and a sufficient number of forfeitures wherewith amply to gratify them.

IN process of time, as the value of lands became better known, and government more settled, military rewards of lands were neither so great nor common, but then they were eked out by honours; such as being made a banneret, or having additions to their armorial bearings; a matter in those days of no small estimation; and although the long and bloody dispute between the houses of York and Lancaster caused many of the great estates of this kingdom frequently to change their proprietors, yet the guerdons of that time seem to have been either annuities, or presents of small sums of money.

IN the reign of King Edward IV. we find two grants to private soldiers for their good behaviour and sufferings; the first to one John Sclatter, to whom that king granted an annuity of four marks for the loss of his hand at the battle of Wakefield, payable out of the rent of a mill, called Lownes' Mill; the other to Rauf Vestynden, of an annuity of ten pounds per annum, by letters patent under the great

feal, till rewarded with an office, “for the good and agreeable service which he did unto us (says the patent), in beryng and holdyng of of our standard of the black bull, at the batayl of Sherborne, in Elmett (q).”

BY the statute of the 43d of Queen Elizabeth, the majority of the justices of the peace in their Easter session had power to charge every parish towards a weekly relief of maimed soldiers and mariners, so that no parish paid weekly above ten pence, nor under two pence; nor any county, which consisted of above fifty parishes, to pay above six pence, one parish with another; which sums so taxed were to be assessed in every parish by the parishioners, or (in default) by the church-wardens and constables, or (in their default) by the next justice or justices of peace.

THE constables and church-wardens of every parish had power to levy the tax of every person refusing to pay it, by distress and sale; and (on their default) the said justice or justices next adjoining.

THE tax being thus levied, the constables and church-wardens were to deliver it quarterly (ten days before every quarter-session) to the high-constable of their division, who were to deliver it over to the treasurers of the county at the same quarter-sessions.

THE treasurers to be subsidy-men, viz. of 10l. in land, or 15l. in goods, and not to continue in their office above one year, rendering up their accounts yearly at Easter session, or within ten days after, to their successors.

THE officer, his executors, &c. that fail in payment of the sums levied, to forfeit, viz. the church-wardens or constables 20s. and the high constable 40s. which the treasurers had power to levy (by distress and sale) in augmentation of their stock.

THE treasurer (or his executor, &c.) that had been negligent to execute his office, or to render an account within the time above limited, to be fined by the justices of the peace in their session, 5l. at least.

THE maimed foldier or mariner who was prest, to repair (if he was able to travel) to the treasurer of the county where he was prest; if he were not prest, then to the treasurer of the county where he was born, or where he last dwelt by the space of three years, at his election; but if he was not able to travel, then to the treasurer of the county where he landed.

HE was to bring to any of the treasurers aforesaid a certificate under the hand and seal of the chief commander, or of the captain under whom he had served, containing the particulars of his hurts and services; which certificate was to be also allowed by the muster-master, or the receiver-general of the muster-rolls, under one of their hands.

UPON such a certificate, the treasurers aforesaid might allow him relief to maintain him until the next quarter-session, at which the major part of the justices might allow him a pension, which the treasurers were to pay him quarterly, until it was revoked or altered by the said justices; and this allowance to him that had not born offices might not exceed 10l., to an officer under a lieutenant 15l., to a lieutenant 20l.

WHEN foldiers or mariners arrived far from the place where they were to receive relief, the treasurers to give them relief and testimonial, whereby they might pass from treasurer to treasurer, until they came to the place required. And this to be done upon the bare certificate of the commander and captain, although they had not as yet obtained any allowance thereof from the said muster-master, or receiver-general of the muster-rolls.

THE treasurers to register the receipts and disbursements, and enter the names of the parties relieved, and also the certificate, by warrant whereof the disbursements were made; the muster-master also, or receiver aforesaid, to register the names of the parties, and the certificates by him allowed; and the treasurer returning, or not allowing the muster-master's certificate, thereupon to subscribe or endorse the cause of his non-allowance.

JUSTICES of peace in session have power to fine a treasurer that

wilfully refuseth to give relief ; which any two of them (appointed by the rest) may levy by distress and sale of goods.

A SOLDIER or mariner that begs, or counterfeits a certificate, to suffer punishment as a common rogue, and to lose his pension if he had any.

THE surpluse of this contribution to be employed by the major part of the justices in sessions upon charitable uses, according to the statutes made for the relief of the poor, and punishment of rogues.

IN corporations, the justices there to put this act in execution, and not the justices of the county, and were liable to fines, as well as other justices, if they misused their power therein, and might appoint a collector of this tax, who should have the power, and be subject to the penalties limited by this act, to high constables of the counties.

THE forfeitures accruing by this act to be employed as the surpluse above said, or otherwise kept in augmentation of the stock, as the major part of the justices in session should direct.

WHEN out of the county where the party was prest, a fit pension could not be satisfied, it was to be supplied by the counties where he was born, or where he last dwelt by the space of three years.

THIS act not to prohibit the city of London to make a tax (if need require), differing from that above limited ; so that no parish paid above 3s. weekly, nor above nor under 12d. weekly one parish with another. This act (r), according to Blackstone, is still in force.

DURING the troubles in the reign of Charles I. this ordinance was made by the parliament for the relief of their maimed soldiers, &c. (s)

MONDAY, March 6th, 1643. Whereas diverse well affected persons have gone forth in the army raised by the parliament, for the defence of the parliament, religion, lives and liberties of the subjects of England, and in fight have received diverse wounds and maims in their bodies, whereby they are disabled to relieve themselves by their usual labours ; and diverse others have lost their lives in the said service,

---

(r) WINGATE'S Abridgement of the Statutes.

(s) SEE Rushworth.

whereby they have left their wives and children destitute of relief to support and sustain them; the lords and commons assembled in parliament, taking the same into their pious and charitable consideration, and having relieved diverse of them here at London, with some small relief for their present subsistence, but finding that that course cannot be held for any continuance of time without many inconveniences, they have thought fit, and do hereby ordain, that every parish within the kingdom of England, wherein any such persons, either maimed or slain, did last inhabit before their going forth into the said service, shall raise a competent stock of money, by way of assessment, upon the inhabitants of the several parishes, for the relief of the said maimed soldiers, widows, and fatherless children of the slain persons; and that the church-wardens, collectors for the poor, constables, tything-men, or any two of them, within any of the said severall parishes, shall hereby have power and authority to assess, levie and collect, so much upon the several inhabitants of their several parishes as they, in their discretions, shall think fit and necessary for the relief of the said maimed soldiers, widows, and fatherless children, and to distribute the same according to the several necessities of the said poor people; and shall once every year, at the several quarter sessions holden for the county, or for any borough or town corporate that hold any sessions wherein such assessment or collection is to be made, and in their particular accounts, both of their assessments, collections, and disbursements, there to be recorded. And if any shall refuse to pay according to the said assessment, the said assessors shall hereby have power to distrain the goods or chattels of all such persons as shall so refuse, for the satisfaction of the said assessment, and shall and may certify the names to the committee of the house of commons for examinations, who shall have power to send for them as delinquents; and to the end that the deceit which may be endeavoured in the due prosecution of this ordinance may be prevented, it is further hereby ordained that all such soldiers who have been maimed in the service of the parliament aforesaid, as also all such widows and fatherless children whose husbands and fathers have been slain in the said service,

or shall die of any hurt received in the said service, shall bring unto the said assessors a certificate under the hand of the colonell, or under the hand of some other commander, or clerk of the band of that regiment wherein the said souldiers, or slain persons, did formerly serve, of the truth of their being maimed or slain in the said service, which shall be a sufficient warrant for the said assessors to make and levie such assessments as aforesaid.

By the statute of the 12th of King Charles II. chap. 16, all officers and souldiers who were under the command of the captain-general of the king's forces on the 25th of April, 1660, and had not since deserted the service, or refused to take the oaths of supremacy and allegiance, might exercise any handicraft or trade exercised about manufactures, in manner following, viz. such as had been apprentices might exercise such trades as they were bound to, though they served not out their time, with like immunities as if they had; and all others, such trades as they were apt and able for, in the towns and places within the severall counties where they were born; and if impleaded or indicted for the same, they might plead the general issue, and should have double costs if a verdict passed against the prosecutor; or if he was nonsuited or discontinued. Judges and jurors were to take notice of this act.

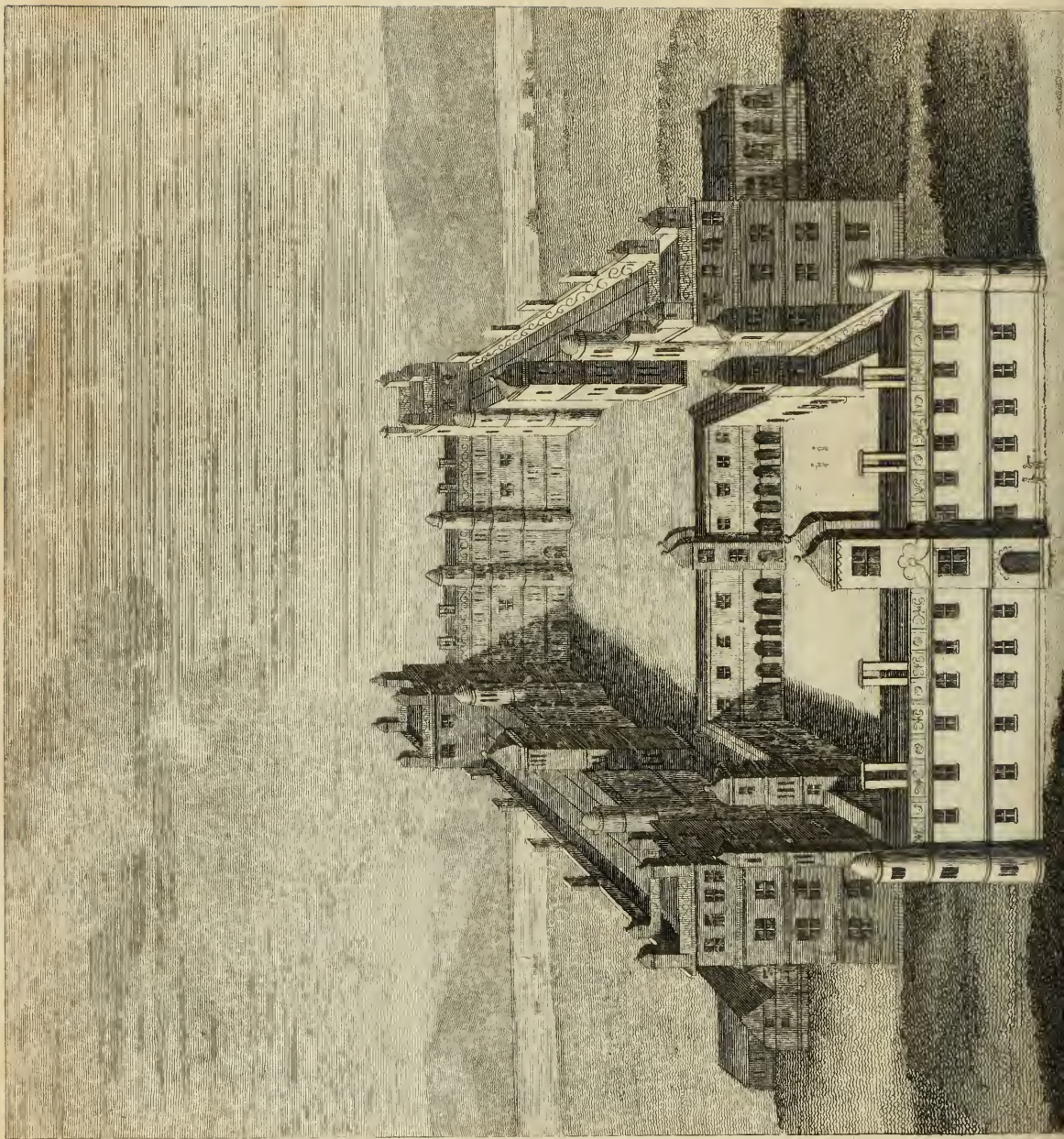
THE service aforesaid was to be proved by a certificate under the hand and seal of some field-officer, and two commission-officers of the regiment where the party served, or some general officer of the army, certifying his knowledge of such service; the said certificate to be proved by one witness, or for default of such certificate, the service to be proved by the oaths of two witnesses.

IF any person produced a false certificate he was to suffer imprisonment, not exceeding six months, and to lose the benefit of this act. Another act was passed in the 13th year of this reign for the relief of such maimed souldiers and officers as had served King Charles I. in his wars.

FOREMOST among the military rewards of modern times stands Chelsea College or Hospital, and the out-pensions from that establish-







ment; institutions that do honour to the founder, and to the nation; and by holding out to our soldiery the prospect of a comfortable retirement in their old age, encourage them to encounter death, wounds, hardships, fatigues, and the ravages of unwholesome climates, for the service of their king and country.

THIS building stands on the northern bank of the river Thames, and was originally begun by King James I. in the fifth year of his reign, for a college to consist of a number of learned divines, who being amply furnished with books, and all other necessaries and conveniencies of life, and exempt from all worldly cares, might devote their whole time and abilities to the study and teaching of controversial divinity, especially those points in dispute between the churches of England and Rome; and be able not only to convince the deceived, but also to establish the timorous and doubting in the principles held by the protestant churches; for this purpose the king appointed and incorporated the following provost and fellows, by the title of King James's College, in Chelsea:

Mathew Sutcliff, Dean of Exeter, Provost.

John Overal, Dean of St. Paul's.

Thomas Norton, Dean of Winchester.

Richard Field, Dean of Gloucester.

Robert Abbot,

John Spenser,

Miles Smith,

William Covitt,

John Howson,

John Layfield,

Benjamin Charriort,

Martin Fotherby,

John Boys,

Richard Bret,

Peter Lilly,

Francis Burley,

} Doctors of Divinity.

William Hellier, Archdeacon of Barnstable.

John White, Fellow of Manchester College.

William Camden Clarencieux,

John Haywood, Doctor of Law,

} Historians.

THIS corporation he endowed by his letters patent, with the reversion of certain lands in Chelsea, then under lease to Charles earl

of Nottingham, in which was thirty years to come, and authorized them to receive of his loving subjects lands not exceeding, in the whole, the yearly value of 3000l.; and it being thought by many judicious persons, that to bring water into London would produce a great and lasting revenue, his majesty likewise procured an act of parliament, authorizing the corporation of the provost and fellows of Chelsea College to bring water from the river Lea to the city of London, by cutting through any man's land they might find necessary, on paying to the proprietor a reasonable compensation for the damage.

THE corporation having agreed with the Earl of Nottingham for the term of his lease, at the rent of seven pounds ten shillings per annum, King James himself laid the first stone of the intended College in a piece of ground of six acres, called, Thames Shot, and gave them a licence to take from Windsor Forest the timber necessary to complete it: the building, however, for want of money, went on slowly; and before an eighth part of the model was executed it stood still, the whole of their ready money, to the amount of 3000l., being expended.

It remained in this state for some years; but at length the king, to advance so good a work, sent his letters, dated A. D. 1616, to the archbishop of Canterbury, requiring him to stir up all the clergy of his province to contribute towards it; in consequence of which collections were made in parishes of England, but their produce being but small, was swallowed up by the fees and collectors, so that very little came to the hands of the provost; the building therefore was stopped, and the project of the water-works came to nothing.

ABOUT this time Dr. Sutcliff, the first provost, dying, he, as an example to others, bequeathed towards the finishing this work four considerable farms, viz. Kingston, in Stavarton; Hazard, in Harberton; Appleton, in Churchton; and Kramerland, in Stoke Rivers; all in the county of Devon; besides the benefit of an extent on a statute of 4000l. acknowledged by Sir Lewis Stewkley, &c. but his example not being followed, nor any other bequests or donations accruing, the building stopped for the present, and after some time was laid aside

as impracticable, and the estates bequeathed by Dr. Sutcliffe, except the farm called Krameland, were returned to his heirs; the corporation was nevertheless kept up during the life of King James, and three provosts and divers fellows successively appointed to fill up the vacancies that happened in that time: it continued thus in a languishing state till the troubles under King Charles I., when all thoughts of its completion were laid aside: the foundation being represented by the fanatics as intended for the promotion, rather than the extermination of the Roman Catholick religion.

AFTER the restoration, King Charles II. wanting a convenient hospital for the reception of sick, maimed, and superannuated soldiers, converted the unfinished buildings of this college to that use; whence it has still occasionally retained the title of "the College:" he accordingly began to erect his royal hospital on this spot, but did not complete it; it was carried on during the short reign of his successor King James II. and finished in the reign of King William and Queen Mary, by that celebrated architect Sir Christopher Wren.

THE whole structure forms a prodigious range of buildings; the front, towards the North, opens into a space planted with trees, and laid out in walks for the pensioners; the South front into a square, beyond which are gardens that extend to the Thames, affording not only a view of that fine river, but also of the county of Surrey beyond it; in the centre of this edifice, is a pediment supported by four columns, over which is a handsome turret, and underneath it an opening, which leads through the building; one side of this entrance is a chapel, which has an altar-piece of the resurrection, painted by Sebastian Ricci: on the other side of the entrance is the hall, where all the pensioners dine in common; the officers by themselves; in this hall is the picture of King Charles II. on horseback, with several other pieces as large as the life, designed by Verrio, and finished by Cook: the wings which extend East and West join the chapel and hall to the North, and are open towards the Thames on the South: these are near three hundred and sixty feet in length, and about eighty feet in breadth; they are three stories high, and the rooms so well

disposed that nothing can be more perfect: on the front of the inner square is a colonade, extending along the side of the chapel and hall; over which, upon the cornice, is the following inscription:

IN SUBSIDIUM ET LEVAMEN EMERITORUM SENIO BELLOQUE FRAC-  
TORUM, CONDIDIT CAROLUS II. AUXIT JACOBUS II. PERFECERE GULIEL-  
MUS ET MARIA, REX ET REGINA, MDCXC.

IN the midst of the quadrangle is a statue of King Charles II. in the ancient Roman dress, standing on a marble pedestal: there are several buildings adjoining that form two other large squares, and consist of apartments for the officers and servants of the house, for old and wounded officers of horse and foot, and the infirmary for the sick; an air of neatness and elegance appears in all these buildings; they are of brick and stone, and on which side soever they are viewed there seems a disposition of the parts, perfectly suited to the purposes of its construction, that is, for the reception of a great number of men, and their accommodation, with all necessary conveniencies. The expence of erecting this structure amounted, as it is said, to 150,000*l.* and the extent of the ground is above forty acres.

IN the wings are sixteen wards, having in each ward twenty-six beds; these afford accommodations for above four hundred men, besides those contained in the other buildings: the pensioners consist of superannuated or disabled soldiers, who have been more than twenty years in the service, or have lost some limb in an engagement; they are clothed every two years; their uniform is red lined with blue; they are also provided with all other necessaries, diet, washing, and lodging; the salary of the governor is 500*l.* per annum, that of the lieutenant-governor 250*l.*, the major 150*l.*, and the adjutant 100*l.*; there are also many other civil and military officers, clerks, domestics, and tradesmen (t); the number of pensioners in the house is in gene-

---

(t) IT is a melancholy consideration, that among the many superannuated quarter-masters, serjeant-majors, and serjeants in and about that hospital, none can be found worthy and able to fill up the inferior offices of the house, or to be employed as artificers to it; were there any properly qualified to be found among them, it is not to be credited that these

ral estimated at about four hundred; these have a weekly allowance of eight pence for their pocket-money.

As the house is considered as a garrison, a regular guard is mounted every day, and they have prayers morning and evening in the chapel performed by two chaplains, each of whom has a salary of 100*l.* per annum: the physician, comptroller, secretary, deputy, treasurer, steward and surgeon have also 100*l.* a year each, and many other officers have considerable incomes by perquisites; indeed these serve to swell the expence to its present enormous sum, which is said to amount to near thirty pounds per man for every invalid subsisted there; besides these there are a great number of out-pensioners, who are allowed 7*l.* 12*s.* 6*d.* a year each (u); these expences are defrayed

these appointments would be bestowed on gentlemen's valet de chambres, or other discharged domestics, which is said to be sometimes the case; as the persons who have the disposal of those places must well know how few rewards are in store for the inferior ranks of military men, particularly those above mentioned, and yet it is they who are in a great measure the nerves and sinews of our armies, who bear the brunt of the battle and fatigues of the day; to rob them of their right in this charity is peculiarly cruel, as it is in part the produce of their own money; several of the places, though of humble denomination, and small nominal salary, would be considered by many married subalterns as a noble provision for themselves and families.

(u) THE out-pension was for a long time a very great assistance to recruiting; it being considered, particularly in the North, as a comfortable provision for old age, which every man might obtain by twenty years' faithful service; but an injudicious piece of œconomy put in practice about the year 1777, has taken away much of its attractions; this was a general call of all out-pensioners whatsoever, without any exception to want of limbs, or extreme old age: they were indeed ordered to assemble at the chief towns of their respective counties; but nevertheless many hundreds of them came thirty, and even forty miles from their homes; by which they were obliged to anticipate their pensions, and become beggars the remainder of their lives: such as could not walk, or had no legs, came in carts, wheelbarrows, and upon jack-asses, begging through every village they passed; when arrived at their rendezvous, no subsistence was given them, nor lodgings or quarters provided for them; they were therefore literally dying for want in the streets: after being examined by field-officers appointed for that purpose, a very few were found any way fit for service, and indeed most of those were discharged by the commanding-officers of the regiments to which they were sent; the remainder were dismissed to get home as they could, without subsistence,

by a poundage, deducted out of the pay of the army, with one day's pay stopped from every officer and foldier in the fervice, and in cafe of a deficiency, it is fupplied by parliament.

THE half-pay is another military reward, feemingly of modern date, as we do not meet with it till after the revolution.

IT was a long contefted point, whether the half-pay was to be confidered as a retaining fee, or a reward for pafit fervices; a queftion involving greater confequences than are at firft apparent; if it is a retaining fee, it may at any time be withdrawn, and whilst received would render the receiver fubjeft to military commands, and the articles of war; indeed fo it was interpreted in the year 1715, when fome half-pay officers, who had engaged in the rebellion of that year, being taken, were tried by a general court-martial for defection, convicted, and executed; this was meant as an example to half-pay officers, and a proof of their being liable to martial law; as otherwife thofe gentlemen might with undoubted propriety have been tried by the common law as rebels (x): on the other hand, if half-pay is a reward for pafit fervices, it is by many perfons doubted whether it can with juftice be taken away, or with-held, any more than the

ence, or quarters by the way, exhibiting fuch a picture of military mifery as cannot be defcribed, but which gave a wound to recruiting that will not foon be healed; application was made by feveral officers for fome allowance to thefe miserable wretches, but none could be allowed. No reflection is here meant on the parties who promoted or ordered this expedient; it is only mentioned to prevent a like error in future.

(x) "WITH regard to the prifoners taken at Prefton, fome half-pay officers being found among them, a court-martial was held at Prefton, on the 28th of November, to try the following perfons as deferters: the Lord Charles Murray, a younger fon of the Duke of Athol; Major Nairn and Captain Lockhart, brother to Lockhart of Cornworth, the author of the Memoirs of Scotland; Nairn and Lockhart had belonged to Lord Mark Kerr's regiment; Captain Shaftoe to Colonel Frank's; Ensign Erkinne to Prefton's; and Ensign Dalzel to Lord Orkney's: the five firft were found guilty, and fentenced to be fhot; but Dalzel was acquitted as to the crime of defection, upon his proving that he had refigned his commiffion fome time before he engaged in the rebellion; the Lord Charles Murray was refpited till further orders; but the others were, on the 8th of December, executed." *Tindal's Continuation of Rapin, vol. 17, page 484. Octavo ed.*



day's wages of a husbandman who has performed the service for which he was hired; in several new regiments it was stipulated previously to the raising them at the expence of the officers, that they, the officers, on the reduction of their corps, should be entitled to half-pay; whence it has been supposed that these gentlemen hold their half-pay by virtue of a contract with the crown, in which they have performed their part: a late determination respecting half-pay officers, by which they are declared not amenable to a court-martial, seems rather to favour the opinion of its being a reward for past services.

THE regulation prohibiting a half-pay officer to hold that allowance with any other employment under government, seems somewhat extraordinary, as an officer on full pay, at the time when his services are likely to be wanted, may hold as many offices as he has interest to obtain.

THE first time we meet with the allowance of half-pay is in a vote of the house of commons, Tuesday, 18th day of January, 1697; wherein it is resolved, that it is the opinion of a committee of the whole house, that provision be made for giving half-pay to the commission-officers, his majesty's natural-born subjects of England, of horse, dragoons, and foot, disbanded, and to be disbanded, till the officers shall be fully paid off and cleared, and be otherwise provided for; and it was ordered, that a list be laid before that house of the names of the commission-officers, his majesty's natural-born subjects of this kingdom, who are to have half-pay, in pursuance of the said resolution (y).

As the officer when disbanded is rewarded with half-pay, so the private soldier in the cavalry has his horse, and an allowance for his sword given him, with fourteen days' \* pay to carry him home; the

(y) THE half-pay to the different officers is given in the Chapter respecting the Pay of the Troops, p. 315, of the first volume.

\* THIS fourteen days' subsistence is allowed to any part of England; to any part of Scotland the allowance is twenty-one days, and to any part of Ireland twenty-eight days' subsistence.

infantry have likewise the fourteen days' pay, and had also when they wore fwords an allowance for them; but fwords were in general left off in the battalions ever since the year 1745, and about the year 1762 by the grenadiers; when the militia were first raised, fwords were issued to them from the Tower.

THE pensions granted by his majesty to the indigent widows of officers killed, or dying in the service, is another military reward: the fund for it arises from the pay of two fictitious men, borne on the muster-roll of every troop or company in the army on the British establishment; his majesty's regulations will best describe the particulars of this bounty.

#### GEORGE R.

*Orders and Instructions to be observed in the Payment of our Royal Bounty to the Widows of Officers who have, or shall be killed, or die in our Service; and likewise in the Payment of the Pension that hath been made, or shall hereafter be made by Parliament, to the Widows of such reduced Officers who have, or shall die on our British Establishment of Half-pay.*

I. WE do hereby declare it to be our intention, that the pensions which we are pleased to allow to the said widows, shall be according to the following regulations, by virtue of the commission, by which their respective husbands did receive pay, and not by brevets, except we shall think fit in any case expressly to direct otherwise.

#### REGULATION.

	Per annum. £.		Per annum. £.
To a colonel's widow	- 50		Cornet's or ensign's - 16
Lieutenant colonel's	- 40		Chaplain's - - - 16
Major's - - -	- 30		Adjutant's - - - 16
Captain's - - -	- 26		Quarter-master's - - - 16
Lieutenant's	- 20		Surgeon's - - - 16

II. THAT such widows shall be entitled to receive our bounty, intended for widows whose husbands have been killed, or died in our

service, as shall be named in a list or lists under our royal sign manual, containing the names and qualitie of all such widows whom we shall think fit objects for this our bounty; with the respective pensions or allowances, which it is our pleasure you shall pay them from time to time as the same shall grow due.

III. THAT every widow who shall hereafter claim our bounty shall, within convenient time, produce to our secretary at war for the time being a certificate signed by the colonel, or in his absence by the commanding officer and agent of the respective regiment in which her husband served, certifying to the best of their knowledge that such widow was the real wife of the officer for whom they certify; in which certificate shall likewise be expressed the time when such officer was killed, or died, and where, in our service, as well as the manner of his death; which, together with the condition and circumstances of the said widow, we do hereby require to be laid before us by our said secretary at war, in order to our signifying to you our directions under our sign-manual.

IV. THAT no other widow shall be hereafter intitled to receive our bounty, until her pretensions have been duly laid before us by our secretary at war, as aforesaid, and we have signified to you our royal approbation thereof, under our royal sign-manual, which shall be your sufficient authority to pay such pension or allowance as shall be hereby directed.

V. THAT you shall not make any payment of this our royal bounty, to any other persons or uses whatsoever, without our particular warrant authorizing you so to do.

VI. THAT every widow before she receives her pension shall deliver you an affidavit, sworn to by her before a justice of the peace, or other magistrate, that she is a widow, and hath no other pension or allowance from us, either in Great Britain or Ireland.

VII. THAT as any regiment which contributes towards the fund for this bounty shall be transferred to our kingdom of Ireland, the widows of any officers who did belong to such regiment shall cease to be paid, otherwise than in Ireland.

VIII. AND we do hereby further declare it to be our intention, that the provision which hath been made, or shall hereafter be allowed by parliament to the widows of such reduced officers who have, or shall die on our British establishment of half-pay, shall be according to the before-mentioned regulations, in respect to the quality in which their respective husbands did receive pay on our establishment of half-pay at the day of such death.

IX. THAT every widow who shall hereafter claim to be put on the estimate, annually delivered into parliament for widows of such reduced officers of our land forces and marines who have died upon the establishment of half-pay in Great Britain, shall bring and deliver to our secretary at war for the time being a certificate, signed by two or more creditable persons, that she is the widow of such officer; that he did serve as an officer of the land forces before the 25th of December, 1716, and that she was married to him before that time; in which certificate shall likewise be expressed in what quality her said husband died upon the establishment of half-pay, and the time when such officer died; and that to the best of their belief she has ever since continued the widow of the said officer, without any provision from the government either in Great Britain or Ireland; and every widow shall likewise make oath before one or more justice or justices of the peace to the truth of the said certificate.

X. THAT every widow of a reduced officer, before she receives her pension, shall deliver you an affidavit, sworn to by her before a justice of the peace, or other magistrate, that her husband did serve as an officer of the land forces before the 25th of December, 1716, and that she was married to him before that time; and that she still continues the widow of the said officer, without any provision from the government, either in Great Britain or Ireland.

XI. THAT such widows shall be entitled to receive the pension intended for widows, whose husbands have died on our establishment of half-pay, as shall be named in a list or lists under our royal sign manual, containing the names and qualities of all such widows for whom provision hath been made, or shall hereafter be made by par-

liament; which respective provision it is our pleasure you shall pay them, according to such list or lists as aforesaid.

XII. THAT timely application be made to the paymaster-general of our guard, garrisons, and land-forces in Great Britain, and forces abroad, to have money sufficient to discharge the ensuing four months payment of the respective pensions, or provisions, directed by us as aforesaid.

XIII. THAT once in every four months (if you should have in your hands a sufficient sum for this use) you shall make payment of the respective pension, or provisions, directed by us as aforesaid, without any deduction whatsoever, taking a receipt for the same, attested by one witness.

XIV. THAT in case any widow shall not appear in person to receive her pension or provision, her attorney shall, before payment, produce the like affidavits sworn to by the said widow, with a certificate under the hand of the minister and churchwardens of the parish where such widow inhabits or resides, that she is living, and, to the best of their knowledge, still a widow.

XV. THAT as any of the said widows shall die or marry again, their pension or provision shall cease and determine from the time of such death or marriage.

XVI. THAT you carefully observe and follow all such orders, instructions and directions, as we shall at any time give you under our sign manual.

XVII. AND we do hereby declare our further pleasure to be, that 12d. for every 20s. which you shall receive and pay by virtue hereof, or any of our special warrants in that behalf, shall be allowed you for your expences, care, and pains in this service, which shall not be deducted out of the pensions or provisions paid by you, but the auditors of our imprests are hereby required and authorized to allow you in your accounts in part of your discharge of the money by you, without any further or other warrant from us in this behalf, or your being subject to render any account for the same.

XVIII. AND for your regular discharge of and from all sums that

shall be received and paid by you for this use; we hereby direct and order, that annual accounts be kept by you of all your receipts and payments for the said service, and rendered upon oath to our auditors of our imprests, or one of them, who are hereby required and authorised to certify and allow the same, upon producing to them, or one of them, our orders or warrants for the payments made by you, in pursuance of these our orders and instructions and receipts for the same, under the hands of the parties, or their attorneys or assigns, whose state or certificate of your accounts we declare shall be, and be deemed from time to time, a full, sufficient, and final discharge and quietus unto you, for all your receipts and payments, without your making or passing any other or further account to us in our exchequer, or otherwise, for the same; to all which orders and instructions you are hereby to conform and behave yourself accordingly, and for so doing this shall be your sufficient warrant. Given at our court at Hampton-court, this 26th day of July, 1737, in the eleventh year of our reign.

By his Majesty's command,

WILLIAM YOUNGE.

To our trusty and well-beloved  
Edward Sainthill, Esq.

SINCE the last edition of this work, an augmentation has taken place of the pensions to officers' widows. The new rates commenced from the 25th of December, 1798, and are as follows:

Rank.	Per annum.	£.
Colonel's widow - - - -	- - - -	80
Lieutenant Colonel's - - - -	- - - -	50
Major's - - - - -	- - - -	40
Captain and captain lieutenant's - - - -	- - - -	30
Lieutenant's - - - - -	- - - -	26
Second lieutenant, cornet, ensign, quarter-master, and adjutant's - - - - -	- - - -	20
Paymaster of the regiment or district's - - - -	- - - -	26

Rank.	Per Annum.	£.
Chaplain's	- - - - -	16
Surgeon of the regiment's	- - - - -	26
Staff surgeon and apothecary's	- - - - -	26
Physician and purveyor's	- - - - -	30
Assistant and veterinary surgeon's	- - - - -	20
Deputy purveyor, and hospital mate's	- - - - -	16

BESIDES the national provisions for officers and soldiers before mentioned, there is, in the city of Hereford, an hospital of private endowment for superannuated non-commission officers and private soldiers, and ancient servants of good character. It was founded about the year 1614, by Sir Thomas Coningsby, of Hampton Court, in the county of Hereford, on the site and out of the ruins of the convent of Black Friars.

THIS fraternity consists of a corporal, chaplain, and ten servants. Their weekly subsistence is four shillings and ten pence in money, besides bread and beer. The corporals and servants ought to be resident in the hospital, and when regularly admitted cannot be displaced but for some crime. The vicar of Bodenham, for the time being, is always chaplain; his stipend is 30*l.* per annum.

THE qualifications of the persons to be admitted as servants are many, and relate to the county, service, and profession. As to the first, they must be natives of Shropshire, Herefordshire, or Worcestershire: their profession military, either by sea or land, for three years at least; their service seven years in one family.

OTHER qualifications are necessary for their continuance after admission; these chiefly relate to good morals. If any person be guilty of immorality, he is first to be admonished by the corporal and chaplain; for the second offence his provisions are withdrawn, and for the third he is expelled.

THE visitatorial power is vested in the commander, owner in fee of Hampton Court, who has the power of removing offenders after such previous course taken, as is before directed, and not otherwise, and to nominate others in their room.

THERE is likewise a visitatorial power vested in the bishop of Hereford for the time being, and of the justices of assize in their circuit, which takes place when the commander neglects to remove, by virtue of his own power, such members as are guilty of immorality, proved by two lawful witnesses before the chief magistrate of the city of Hereford: they have also authority to see that the intentions of the founder are complied with by the trustees or possessors of the lands; but, to the honour of the commanders, these last-named visitors have not been troubled for a long series of years; the rules and institutions established by the founder having been invariably observed.

IT is somewhat remarkable, that this is almost the only private endowment by which the soldier is benefited; whilst there is scarce any other profession or trade, but some successful member of their vocation has provided a comfortable retreat for a few of his ancient and indigent brethren. No reflection is hereby meant to the military gentlemen who have every essential disposition requisite for doing the like, except the means; the profession of arms being so far from enabling even those of high rank to found hospitals, that it requires great œconomy to prevent their families becoming candidates for admission into them.



## CHAPTER VIII.

*Of Military Punishments.*

MILITARY punishments are divided into capital, loss of member, corporal, pecuniary, degradatory, cashiering, imprisonment, suspension, and reprimand: of these some affect commissioned officers alone; some commissioned and non-commissioned officers and soldiers; and others the non-commissioned officers and soldiers only.

OF antient capital punishments I find only three; these were, beheading, hanging, and drowning: two of them, namely, beheading and hanging, occur in several of the ordonnances of war; we meet with drowning in the charter of King Richard I. only.

IN many instances where a corps of a considerable body of men were guilty of a crime for which the established punishment was death, to prevent too great a weakening of the army the delinquents were decimated, that is, only every tenth man was taken; the common mode of decimation was this, a number of billets equal to that of the body to be decimated, were put into a helmet, every tenth billet being marked with the letter D, or some other character signifying death. The helmet was then shaken, in order to mix them, and the soldiers filing off singly from the right, passed by the commanding officer, before whom, on a table, stood the helmet: as they passed each drew a billet and presented it to an officer placed to receive them. If the billet had the fatal mark, the soldier was seized and marched into the rear; if it proved a saving one, he continued his march, and fell in with the other men that had passed before him.

SOMETIMES corps were decimated by ranks, the right hand man of each rank being from his post devoted to suffer; the reason given for this determination, which, indeed, is not a very good one, was this;

“ that as the right of every rank was a post of honour, it became the peculiar duty of the occupiers thereof, to shew a good example.” An officer, deputed for this duty, went along each rank to the left, counting and turning out every tenth man; so that, in fact, this might as well be called decimating by files as by ranks.

IN cases where the number of offenders was smaller, or where only a few were condemned to suffer for example's sake, the whole were ordered to cast dice on the drum head, and their names and the number they threw were noted by the provost-martial; as many as it was settled should suffer were then taken from among those who had thrown the lowest numbers; if any two happened to throw the same number, they threw again to settle the precedency between them. From a manuscript in the British Museum it appears, that this method of casting dice was practised in Ireland in the reign of King William III.

At present, and for at least forty years past, the only capital punishments in use in the British Army in Europe (z) have been shooting and hanging; the manner of performing the first of these executions is generally as follows:

THE royal approbation of the court-martial being notified to the commanding officer of the corps to which the criminal belongs, and the time when it is to be put in execution being specified, an execution party is named, composed of pardoned deserters, or persons guilty of the same offence for which the party is to suffer; or if there are no men under these predicaments, the party is taken from the men next for duty, as they stand on the common roster, and a steady non-commission officer is chosen to command them. The prisoner is then brought from the provosts, with his hands tied behind him, at-

---

(z) IN the East Indies, the company's troops frequently inflict the sentence of death by shooting the criminal from the mouth of a field piece, to which he is bound, his breast opposite the muzzle; this is both a military and a merciful death: I think, but am not certain, that it was adopted by Sir Eyre Coote, and used by him on some of the king's troops.

tended by the chaplain of the regiment, and followed by the execution party; in this manner he is led along the line guarded by a detachment of the regiment to which he belongs, or by one from the pickets of the army. Sometimes when there are only a few regiments in the camp, barracks, or quarters, they form a semi-circle at the place of execution, to which the prisoner is brought immediately without form.

ON his arrival at the place of execution, after some short prayers, a cap or handkerchief being drawn or tied over his eyes, he kneels down, and the execution party make ready, moving up within about six or seven yards of him, and on a signal given by him, two thirds of them present and fire; if he should not be killed, as has sometimes been the case, the reserve step up close to him and put him out of his misery. All the troops then march by the body, that by the example they may be deterred from a like offence. The recruits in particular are generally made to file off singly close to it.

HANGING is generally performed on a kind of portable gallows, which is set up for the occasion, and a spike driven into it, so that the sufferer hangs with his feet very near the ground; a small stool being set, he stands on it till the cord is fixed by a noose over the spike, and the stool being pulled away he is turned off. In one of the expeditions to the coast of France, the provost's man took his measure so ill, that a grenadier of the 72d regiment who was to suffer for a rape on a woman of seventy, on being turned off just touched the ground with his toes, and was actually after hanging some time in that state taken down, till the spike was driven some inches higher, and then re-hanged (a).

HANGING is the punishment inflicted upon spies, generally after a short enquiry before a general officer, by whose mandate I have known several executed in Flanders; they were generally hanged on

---

(a) IN divers of the antient ordinances of war particular crimes are punished with drawing and hanging; this was drawing the criminal on a hurdle or sledge to the place of execution.

trees on eminences, that they might be seen at a distance, but so far out of the camp as not to be offensive; their bodies were usually left hanging.

THE loss of limb or member as a military punishment has been long out of use, nor is it frequently found in the ancient ordinances of war. It is, indeed, mentioned by King Richard I. in whose charter it is enacted, that any one convicted by lawful witnesses of having drawn his knife to strike his fellow soldier, or of having drawn blood of him, should lose his hand; the loss of the left ear was a punishment allotted to archers on foot, boys, servants to the soldiers, and other followers of the army, for riots or disturbances in camp or quarters.

RESPECTING corporal punishments it may be necessary to observe, that they were not so common in our ancient armies, as at present; private soldiers in those days having some property, were punished by forfeitures and fines. Soldiers of the present times having nothing but their bodies, can only be punished corporally. Of corporal punishments, there are a great variety; but of these, only one could be inflicted on an officer, this was boring the tongue with a hot iron, for blasphemy, a punishment that remained in force till the reign of Queen Anne.

RIDING the wooden horse was a punishment formerly much in use, in different services. The wooden horse was formed of planks nailed together, so as to form a sharp ridge or angle about eight or nine feet long; this ridge represented the back of the horse; it was supported by four posts or legs, about six or seven feet long, placed on a stand made moveable by trucks; to complete the resemblance, a head and tail were added. The annexed plate will give a much better idea of it, than can be conveyed by words.

WHEN a soldier or soldiers were sentenced by a court-martial, or ordered by the commanding officer of the corps, to ride this horse, for both were practised, they were placed on the back with their hands tied behind them, and frequently, to increase the punishment, had muskets tied to their legs, to prevent, as it was jocularly said, their

horse from kicking them off; this punishment being chiefly inflicted on the infantry, who were supposed unused to ride. At length riding the wooden horse having been found to injure the men materially, and sometimes to rupture them, it was left off. The remains of a wooden horse was standing on the parade at Portsmouth about the year 1760.

THE picket was another corporal punishment chiefly used by the cavalry, and artillery, and in the former often inflicted by the order of the commanding officer, without the sentence of a court-martial. The mode of inflicting it was thus: a long post being driven into the ground, the delinquent was ordered to mount a stool near it, when his right hand was fastened to a hook in the post by a noose round his wrist, drawn up as high as it could be stretched; a stump, the height of the stool, with its end cut to a round and blunt point, was then driven into the ground near the post before mentioned, and the stool being taken away, the bare heel of the sufferer was made to rest on this stump, which though it did not break the skin, put him to great torture; the only means of mitigation, was by resting his weight on his wrist, the pain of which soon became intolerable. Soldiers were frequently sentenced to stand on the picket for a quarter of an hour. This, like the riding of the wooden horse, has been for some time left off, it having lamed and ruptured many soldiers.

WHIPPING is almost the only corporal punishment now in use; this was formerly inflicted with switches, but for these thirty years at least, excepting running the gantelope, with what is called a cat of nine tails, being a whip with nine lashes, of whip-cord, each lash knotted with nine knots. This punishment is inflicted either by the soldiers or drummers of the regiment, according to the sentence of the court-martial.

THE gantelope was in cases of theft, or some offence that affected the character or interest of the corps, and was practised two ways: in one called running the gantelope, the regiment was formed six deep, and the ranks opened and faced inwards; each man being furnished with a switch, the offender, naked to the waist, was led through the

ranks, preceded by a serjeant, the point of whose reversed halbert was presented to his breast, to prevent his running too fast: as he thus passed through the ranks, every foldier gave him a stroke. But this method being found inconvenient, and in many points objectionable, the offender was tied to four halberts in the ordinary way, three being placed in a triangle, and the fourth crosses two of them, to keep him on the outside: in this situation the regiment filed off from the right and marched by, when they came near the halberts, a cat was given to the first man, who having given a stroke to the culprit, threw down the cat, and passed on; this was repeated by the whole regiment, each man giving him a lash; this likewise being found objectionable, as degrading foldiers to executioners, has been likewise in a great measure left off, and the infliction of this punishment put into the hands of the drummers, under the inspection of the drum-major, surgeon, and adjutant; the first to see the halberts are properly fixed, the cats in order, that each drummer does his duty and is properly relieved after having given twenty-five lashes: the surgeon is to take care that the prisoner does not receive more lashes than he is able to bear, without endangering his life, or injuring his constitution; and the adjutant to cause the sentence of the court-martial to be properly inflicted, and to oblige the drum-major to make his drummers do their duty.

IMPRISONMENT may in some measure be considered as a corporal punishment, and was formerly inflicted on officers and private men for different crimes and misdemeanors, as may be seen in the different ordonances of war. But since the revolution it has in a great measure, if not totally, been left off with respect to officers; but foldiers are sometimes by the sentence of a court-martial confined for a short time in the black-hole, or locked up in a bread and water house, that is, a place of confinement where they have no other nourishment but bread and water.

PECUNIARY punishments were frequently allotted in our ancient military codes, but at present occur in a very few instances; certain offences are, by the mutiny act, made punishable with fines, but these are mostly of a civil nature, and in addition to some other penalty;

as in the instance of an officer convicted of making or procuring false musters, who besides the punishment of cashiering, and being incapacitated to serve his majesty, is also to be fined fifty pounds; an officer embezzling military stores is to be cashiered, and to forfeit an hundred pounds; and any pay-master, &c. detaining in his hands the pay of an officer or soldier for a month, is to be fined an hundred pounds, and discharged from his office; the poverty of the non-commission officer and soldier make fines or other pecuniary punishments in a great measure impossible; there are, however, one or two instances where they are directed, particularly in cases of a soldier's selling or spoiling any of his arms, clothing or accoutrements, in which cases he may by the sentence of a court-martial be put under stoppages for the replacing them, not exceeding the half his pay.

CASHEERING, or, as it is now generally spelt, cashiering, mentioned as a punishment, signifies a dishonourable dismissal of an officer or soldier, and in the former admits of three degrees; the first is simply a dismissal of an officer from his employment, by a letter from the secretary of war to him signifying that his majesty has no farther occasion for his services, or by the sentence of a court-martial, whereby he is sentenced to be cashiered\*.

THE second is dismissing an officer from the service, and rendering him incapable of serving for the future in any military capacity; a sentence which seems rather an infringement on the royal prerogative; perhaps a declaration that the court deem him unworthy for the future to hold any such office, might be a more unexceptionable mode of expressing their opinion.

THE third dismissal with infamy, and degradation from the rank of a soldier and a gentleman; the execution of this sentence is attended with many ignominious circumstances, more terrible to a man of feel-

---

\* ANOTHER mode of cashiering an officer, has been practised this war (1800), particularly in the militia, called displacing; by which the officer is dismissed from his regiment. This seems to differ in no respect from the ordinary mode of cashiering, but in the smaller degree of ignominy that may be attached to it.

ing than death itself. A sentence of this kind for cowardice was inflicted in the following manner on an officer of artillery, after the battle of Falkirk, in the rebellion of the year 1745. The line being ordered out under arms, the prisoner was brought to the head of the oldest brigade, completely accoutred, when his sentence being read, his commission was cancelled, his sword broken over his head, his sash cut in pieces and thrown into his face, and lastly, the provost-martial's servant giving him a kick on the posteriors, turned him out of the line. Somewhat similar to this is the ceremony of dismissing a soldier sentenced to be drummed out of the regiment with a halter about his neck. The corporal punishment commonly accompanying this sentence being over, and the regiment turned out, with or without arms, the prisoner is brought to the right of it, under an escort of a corporal and six men, with bayonets fixed: the halter is then put round his neck, and frequently a label on his back signifying his crime, a drummer then takes hold of the end of the rope, and leads him along the front, the drums following and beating the rogues march; when they have passed the left, the procession moves to the rear, if in camp, or if in quarters, to the end of the town, where the drummer giving him a kick on the breech dismisses him with the halter for his perquisite.

IN ancient military authors we frequently meet with the term *casheering* applied to private soldiers; this simply meant, as has been before observed, a dishonourable dismissal.

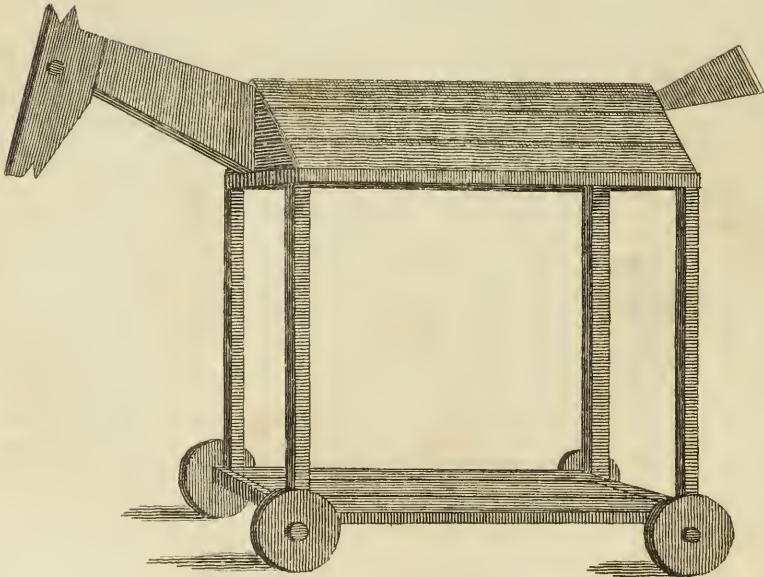
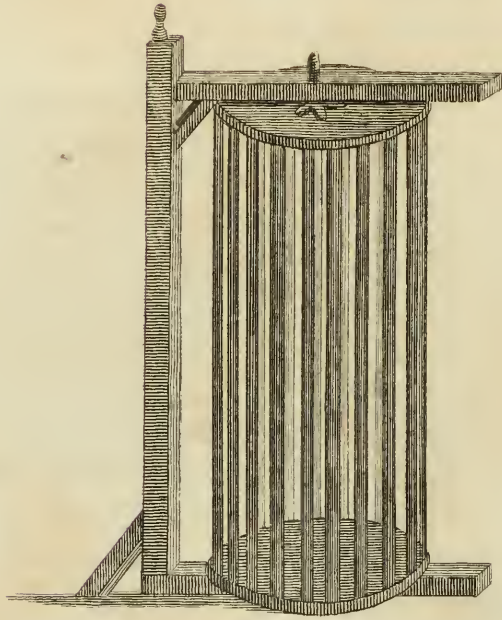
DEGRADATION is a sentence inflicted on non-commission officers only, who before they can receive any corporal punishment except imprisonment, must be degraded to the ranks, or station of a private soldier. In former times, so late as the reign of King Charles I. private soldiers for misbehaviour in action were degraded to pioneers.

SUSPENSION for a stated time, is another punishment inflicted on both commission and non-commission officers; during its continuation, commission-officers are generally mulcted of their pay, and the non-commission officers receive only that of private men; the remainder being given to the hospital.

A REPRIMAND at the head of the regiment, is sometimes ordered by a







MILITARY PUNISHMENTS.

court-martial, and sometimes only in the presence of the officers of the corps; this is generally given by one of the field officers; the usual terms in which it is given, are something like these: Captain, or lieutenant A. B. you have been tried for ——, and are by the sentence of a general court-martial found guilty thereof, and sentenced to be reprimanded at the head of the regiment; the disagreeable task of doing it is assigned to me: I therefore do hereby reprimand you, and hope that it may prevent your falling again into the like error. Non-commission-officers are sometimes, though not frequently, ordered to be reprimanded.

IN garrisons where martial-law prevails, the followers of an army are liable to military punishments; one formerly very common, for trifling offences, committed by petit fustlers, jews, brawling-women, and such-like persons, was the whirligig; this was a kind of circular wooden cage, which turned on a pivot; and when set in motion, whirled round with such an amazing velocity, that the delinquent became extremely sick, and commonly emptied his or her body through every aperture: the print of it will thoroughly explain its structure.

## CHAPTER IX.

*Of the Ransom of Prisoners of War.*

THE ransom of prisoners of war, was one of the principal sources of emolument to military men of ancient days, similar to the prize-money of the present time, to the officers and seamen of the Royal Navy, many having thereby raised large fortunes; Sir Walter Manny in the reign of King Edward III. is said to have gained 8000*l.* by prisoners of war in one campaign; but this right of ransom was by custom restricted to certain ranks, (b) and sometimes particular persons were excepted in the indentures, made between the king and the contracting foldier; (c) nor did the whole ransom in any case

---

(b) THUS in the ordinances of war of Henry V. in the article respecting prisoners it is enacted, that if a prisoner shall be superior to his captor, and shall have his sovereign's leave to display his standard, or if he shall be of the blood royal, a duke, a marquis, or an earl, or a chief captain, then the said prisoner to be the captive of the chief captain of that part of the army by which he was taken, who is to give a compensation or reward to the original captor. An instance of the compensation made for the caption of a royal prisoner occurs in Rymer, where it appears that for the taking of David Bruce King of Scotland at Durham, John de Coupland was constituted a bannerett, and to maintain the state thereof King Edward gave to him and his heirs five hundred pounds per ann. 400 from the exits of the customs of the port of London, and 100 from those of Berwick upon Tweed; and also to the said John for his former services, and for those in future of himself with ten men at arms, annually one hundred pounds from the exits of the port of Newcastle, for life or till he is provided with one hundred pounds rent. Tom. 5. p. 539. And Thomas de Holland had a grant of eighty thousand Florins (Florinorum de Scuto) granted him by the king for taking the Earl of Eu, constable of France. Rymer, tom. 5, p. 568.

(c) IN an indenture of K. Ed. III. with Thomas Tunstall, the prisoners excepted are, the King of France, any of his sons, nephews, uncles, cousins german, or any King of any kingdom whatsoever; the king's lieutenant, or any chieftain, having the power of the said adversary of France: Rymer.

accrue to the captor, for the king and the commanding officer of the corps were both entitled to certain proportions of his good fortune.

THE usual price demanded for the ransom of a prisoner of war was, according to Monsieur St. Palaye, one year's rent of his estate, one third of which was, by the royal ordonnances, the property of the chief captain under whom the captor served; out of which, one third of that third, equal to one ninth of the whole ransom, was to be paid by the captain to the king; stipendiary soldiers who had no estates, usually paid for their ransom one half of their year's pay; one third of any plunder, or the ransom of prisoners taken by the followers of the army, not being in the king's pay, was also the property of the crown.

RYMER has preserved a very curious record respecting the mode of securing and paying ten thousand marks for the ransom of Aph. Till. A. D. 1207, 9th K. John, wherein it is stipulated, that of ten thousand marks to be paid by that prisoner for his ransom, he should pay down two thousand, and the price of ten horses, each of the value of thirty marks, before he was released on his parole; and as security for the remaining 7700 marks he should give hostages; namely, his brother, his son, and two daughters, and five of his knights prisoners with him, which the king should select and detain; the said hostages, that is, his brother, sons, and daughters, to come to England before he went out of prison, and between the fifth day of our Lord and the ninth, the king to deliver up all the knights he had belonging to the said Aph, except the five above mentioned, who were to remain in prison till the whole ransom was paid; after the said Aph had paid the 200 marks, and value of ten horses, and caused the hostages to be given, he was to have leave to go to his country to seek for the remainder of his ransom, which if he remitted by the stated time, his hostages should be set at liberty; if he could not pay it, then he should return and surrender himself prisoner to the king, and the hostages, except the five knights, should be set at liberty; but the 2000 marks, and the price of the horses to remain in the hands of the king; to whom proof

was to be made that the persons called the brother, son, and daughters of the said Aph, were really and legitimately so; and if the said Aph should return to prison, and bring with him the knights released, the king should return him the 2000 marks, and the price of the horses, or a proportionable part according to the numbers of knights he should bring back with him.

THE hopes of ransom frequently acted in the place of humanity, avarice assuming the place of mercy; this is evident from the reason assigned by Patin, for the great slaughter of the Scots, at the battle of Muffelborough, in 1548, to wit, that their mean appearance gave little hopes of their ability to pay ransom (d).

UNDER the regulations here mentioned, prisoners of war were so much the property of the captors, that they might (e) give, bequeath,

(d) To these another, and not the meanest matter, was (says he) their armour among them so little differing, and their apparail so base and beggerly, whearin the lurdein was in a manner all one with the lorde, and the lounde wyth the larde: all clad alyke in jackes coovered with whyte leather, doublettes of the same, or of fustian, and most commonly all white hosen, not one with either cheine, brooch, ryng or garment of silke that I could see, onles cheynes of latten drawn four or fyve tymes along the thighs of their hosen, and dooblet sleeves for cuttyng, and of yt fort I sawe many. This vilenes of port was the caus that so many of their great men and gentlemen wear kyled and so few saved. The outwarde sheaw, the semblance and signe whearby a stranger might discern a villain from a gentleman, was not among them to be seen. As for woordes and goodly proffer of great raundsoms wear as common and ryfe in the mouthes of the tone as in toother. And therefore hereby it cam to pas that after the examinacions and counting of their prisoners; we found taken above twenty of their villayns to one of their gentlemen, whom no man nede to dout, we had rather have spared then the villayns yf we could have knowe ony difference between them in takyng.

(e) AFTER the death of King Henry V. A. D. 1422, a petition was presented by the lords, captains, and others, indented to serve his late majesty in his wars, praying that the thirds and thirds of thirds of all sorts of gains taken in war, as also the prisoners belonging to the king at the day of his death, should be deducted and accounted for at the exchequer, out of the sums due to the petitioners from the late king, on condition that the overplus due after the deduction of the said wages shall be paid to the king, and that after this account, they, their heirs, and executors, should be discharged and released of all demands, by the authority of parliament; this was granted; and also that all those to whom jewels had been pledged by the late king,

if

or with the king's licence sell them to any person; and princes or great men frequently bestowed some of their prisoners on knights who had distinguished themselves in an engagement, thereby to enrich them (f).

THE non-payment of ransom was deemed so particularly dishonourable, that according to Colombiere, persons dying under that predicament, could have their image represented on their tombs only in a particular manner, which was, without spurs, calf, coat of arms or sword, the scabbard only hanging by their sides in their belt (g); if the non-payment was intentional, the arms of the defaulter were reversed and he was deemed infamous.

PERSONS taken prisoners were, with the king's permission, frequently permitted to go home to raise money for the payment of their ransom, on giving their parole to return within a stated time, either to pay the money, or to surrender themselves prisoners; a breach of their parole was always severely punished, and in most treaties and truces there was a clause, agreeing that justice should be done on both sides respecting prisoners (h); prisoners of high rank obtained passports for

if not satisfied in half a year for their services, might keep the said jewels, provided they were not the antient jewels of the crown. *Rot. Parl.*

(f) THE captors sometimes sold their prisoners to other persons, perhaps for the sake of ready money, but for this it appears that the royal licence was necessary, for an archer having taken the archdeacon of Paris prisoner, and sold him without the king's licence to the abbot of Colchester, was directed to be seized and brought before the council, A. D. 1346, 20 Ed. III. (See Rymer.) And in the same year the sheriffs of Yorkshire, Nottingham, Lancaster, and Derby, were directed by the king's writ to make diligent search after certain persons who had ransomed and released diverse Scotch prisoners of war taken by them at Durham, without the royal licence for such ransoming; they were likewise ordered to forbid the like practice by proclamation throughout their bailiwick, under penalty of forfeiture of life and limb, and every other possible forfeiture; and all persons having such prisoners in their custody, were directed to appear personally with them before the council at London, there to treat with them for the satisfaction to be made them for the said prisoners. *Rymer*, tom.

v. p. 533.

(g) PART 2d. p. 625.

(h) IN the truce made at Calais, it was agreed that justice should be done on both sides

their servants, as well as to procure money for their ransom, as to transact their private affairs (i).

SOMETIMES prisoners were purchased of their captors in order to be exchanged for others of the same rank : ransom was not only paid for prisoners of war, but also for the dead bodies of great persons slain in battle ; an instance of this is cited by St Palaye, which he says happened at the siege of Rouen, where 400 nobles were paid for the body of a person there slain (k).

THE rigid treatment shewn to prisoners of war in ancient times, strongly marks the ferocity and uncultivated manners of our ancestors, and that even to ladies of high rank ; notwithstanding the homage said to have been paid to the fair sex in those days of chivalry : many instances of this appear in our histories, and a striking one is recorded by Rymer respecting the Countess of Baghun, or Buchan, a Scotch prisoner, for whose confinement the chamberlain of Scotland, or his lieutenant, were by writ of privy seal, 34 Edward I. A.D. 1306, directed to fit up one of the turrets of the castle of Berwick upon

fides, respecting prisoners who had broken their faith ; and William de Wyncheles having complained that during the war, he took a certain William de Conte in Normandy, and afterwards on his faith permitted him to cross over, on condition that he should return at a stated time to pay his ransom, but he remaining in Jersey in violation of his faith, had not satisfied the said William for his ransom ; wherefore being desirous of doing justice in this case, the king by this writ, dated the 12th of December, 1347, directed the bayliffs and jurats of Jersey, to arrest the said William, and deliver him to William de Wyncheles, to be held by him as his prisoner, according to the law of arms and form of the aforesaid truce. *Rymer*, tom. v. p. 599.

A. D. 1351, 25 Ed. III. John de Bello Campo being prisoner to the King of France and over in England on his parole, the king by his writ forbids all his officers and subjects, under penalty of loss of body and goods, to prevent his return by any kind of arrest or imprisonment whatsoever, and promises to oblige his securities to fulfil their obligations. *Rymer*, tom. v. p. 730.

(i) A. D. 1350, 24 Ed. III. That King granted his passport for fifteen persons, servants to the Earl of Eu, to go to France and to return to England (in war or peace) for the purpose of procuring money for his ransom, and other business. *Rymer*, tom. v. p. 688.

(k) *Jean le Fevre de. S. Rem. Hist. de C. VI. page 127 and 128.*



Tweed, and therein to build a strong cage of lattice work, constructed with stout posts and barres, and well strengthened with iron; this cage to be so contrived, that the countess might have the convenience of a privy, proper care being taken that it did not lessen the security of her person: in this cage the countess was to be kept, without being suffered to go out on any account whatsoever, and also to be prevented from speaking with any person, Scotch or English, except the keeper of the castle, and a woman or two of the town of Berwick, appointed by him to deliver her food; the keeper to be answerable for the safe keeping of her body. The sister of Robert Bruce was prisoner at the same time, and treated in the same manner.

IN the directions given by Edward I. A.D. 1306, respecting the confinement of the wife of Robert Bruce: among the servants allowed is the following; and also let her have a foot-boy to remain in her chamber; one that shall be sober, and not a riotous one, to make her bed, and to do other things required for her chamber. From the same authority it appears that a child, the heir of Mar, was excused wearing fetters on account of his tender age, which strongly implies that it was customary to fetter prisoners of war; and this receives some farther confirmation from a subsequent order in the reign of Edward III. whereby Thomas de Bodestone, keeper of the castle of Gloucester, soon after the invasion and destruction of Winchelsea, was directed to keep the Count de Juny the king's prisoner in the said town of Gloucester, carefully, without irons, unless on just cause of suspicion; none of his attendants were to remain in the said town or castle with him, except one for the purpose of providing and dressing his victuals, which was to be taken to the castle gate by a servant deputed by the said keeper, who was to deliver it to the count, and to attend on him; the usual oath taken by other prisoners was directed to be administered to him, if he refused to take it, the keeper to guard him at his peril, and as he would answer to the king; and A.D. 1347, in the 21st of the same reign, the king by his writ to the Archbishop of Canterbury, William Bishop of Winchester, Richard de Stafford, and Peter de Gildefburgh, commands, that they cause the

Lord Tankervill, then lately taken in the wars in France, to be strictly confined in some strong and well walled place, so that he may not speak or communicate by writing with any one without his (the king's) especial licence, and that his servants or attendants should not be suffered to go out of that place; a like writ was directed to Thomas Holland for the safe keeping of the Earl of Eu, constable of France (1).

ANNO 1543; 35 Henry VIII. Thomas Lord Audeley, of Walden, Chancellor of England, the Duke of Norfolk, Stephen Bishop of Winchester, Thomas Bishop of Westminster, William Lord St. John, and Sir John Gage, Knt. commissioners appointed by King Henry VIII. treated with the Earl of Glencairne, George Douglas, William Hamilton, and divers others deputed as commissioners, proctors, orators, and ambassadors of Mary Queen of Scotland, then a minor, and with the advice of James Earl of Arreyn, governor of the realm during the queen's minority, for the ransom of divers Scottish prisoners, when they settled their ransoms at different sums, from 1000l. to 100l. sterling (m); "and it was farthermore covenanted, that in case such prisoners of England as have their ransoms to be taxed in Scotland, shall be there seized and taxed in their ransoms after a lower rate and moderation than the sums of ransom before limited and taxed; they shall be abated and diminished agreeably, portion for portion alike, and that the said prisoners of Scotland shall be used with such gentleness as is shewed unto the Englishmen prisoners there.

"AND further it was agreed, that at such tyme as the hostages of Scotland shall be delivered, at the same tyme the prisoners of Scotland giving bond by obligation for the payment of their ransom at convenient daies, with their owne promise to yelde themselves prisoners if they breke their said daies of payment, with a writing also of the Governour of Scotlande, conteynge his promise to uphold and

(1) RYMER, tom. v. p. 558.

(m) THE Earl of Cassilis was rated 1000l. sterling, the Earl of Glencairne the same, the Lord Somerwell 1000 marks.

mainteigne the faide bondes and promises ; this doon, the prifoners of Scotland fhall be at that day, and from thence forward, accompted free of the captivitee ; provided always that the Englifhmen, prifoners in Scotland, be ufed in all thingis after the fame fortee, meaning oonly in the covenante fuch prifoners Englifhmen as were taken by the King of Scots lieft. or others, and were to be fpecially deteigned as notable prifoners."

IN witness of this covenant and agreement, both parties fubfcribed and fealed thofe indentures.

By the feudal fyftem all the tenants, vaffals of a lord, were obliged to contribute towards his ranfom, if taken prifoner of war : thus King Richard I. levied an aid for the ranfom of his perfon when he was taken and imprifoned on his return from the Holy Land. The tenants in capite, both barons and knights, paid it under the name of fcutage or efcutage, fo called from its being affeffed at XXs. per fcutum or for each knight's fee, at the fame time a payment was alfo made for the fame purpofe by the name of hidage.

INFERIOR lords of feigneries had the fame aids as the king. John de Brittany, Earl of Richmond, being taken prifoner by the Scots, whilft he was in the king's fervice in the field, had the king's letters directed to all his tenants requesting them to pay reasonable aid, there called a fubfidy, for his ranfom according to their ability, and the quantity of their refpective tenures, to which, faid the record, they were bound as well by natural equity as by the duty of their fealty.

THE expence of keeping the king's prifoners of war was advanced by the fheriffs of counties, wherein they were confined, and charged in their accounts at the exchequer. A number of instances of writs directing them to advance different fums on this account out of the profits of their bailiwicks occur in Rymer. Probably thefe expences were repaid by the prifoners, with their ranfom.

THE ufual fum was from one fhilling to fix pence per diem, for men of rank ; for a knight four pence, and for his robe twenty-five fhillings per annum ; ordinary prifoners were allowed three pence and two pence, with a mark for their annual clothing.

THE Bishop of St. Andrews was delivered to the sheriff of Southampton to be kept in Winchester castle, his allowance for his own expences six pence per diem, for one valet serving him three pence, one boy likewise in his service three halfpence, and one chaplain to celebrate mass to him one penny and a halfpenny by the day, which chaplain, valet, and boy, were to be chosen from such as might be trusted, and for whom the sheriff would be answerable.

IN other matters the sheriff was authorised to use such other means for the safe keeping of the said bishop as he thought necessary. The same allowance was made to the Bishop of Glasgow, confined in Portchester castle. The Abbot of Stone, a rebel, was directed to be kept in a strong part of Winchester castle with iron fetters on his feet\*.

WITH this article the author begs leave to conclude his work, having, to the utmost of his abilities, endeavoured to complete the plan proposed in the advertisement: for the faults and errors, particularly the typographical ones, he relies on the candour and indulgence of his readers, as he can assure them they were not caused by negligence or inattention; industry being the only merit he pretends to claim, except that of having brought forward, and preserved from oblivion, many curious manuscripts and scarce printed books respecting the Military Antiquities of this kingdom.

\* INSTEAD of ransom, the usual mode of liberating prisoners of war is now by exchange, of man for man, and officer for officer, of the same rank reciprocally, when there are such to exchange: otherwise it is arranged by a cartel; and there are resident commissaries from the powers at war to see it duly put in execution. In England the care of the prisoners is under the management of the transport board. Each government engages to pay for the maintenance of its subjects, that are kept as prisoners in a foreign country. Ransom, however, still continues to be practised at sea, particularly in the captures made by private ships of war.

FREQUENTLY officers, when prisoners of war, are allowed to go at large, within a certain district, on their parole of honour not to go beyond the limited boundary; and sometimes they are even permitted to return to their own country, on the same parole of honour, not to serve till they are regularly exchanged. Some late regulations on this head may be seen in the Appendix.

## APPENDIX.

## NUMBER I.

*The Antient Musketeer.*

THE following extract from a military treatise, written in the year 1619, exhibits a striking delineation of the musketeer of those days (a): “ Therefore a souldier must either accustom himselfe to beare a peece or pike: if he bear a peece, then must he first learn to hold the same, to accommodate his match betweene his two foremost fingers and his thombe, and to plant the great end on his breast with a gallant souldier-like grace: and being ignorant, to the intent he may be more encouraged, let him acquaint himself first with the firing of touch-powder in his panne, and so by degrees both to shoote off, to bow and beare up his body, and so consequently to attaine to the levell and practise of an assured and serviceable shot, readily charge, and with a comely couch discharge, making choise at the same instant

---

(a) ENGLAND'S Trainings and plainly demonstrating the dutie of a private souldier, with the office of each severall officer belonging to a foot company, and the martiall lawes of the field; as also the office and charge of a colonell; the exercise of trayning or drilling: with diverse other necessary and profitable disciplined notes and observations: by Edward Davies, gentleman, 1619, p. 4.

of his marke, with a quick and vigilant eie. His flaske and touch box must keepe his powder, his purse and mouth his bullets; in skirmish his left hand must hold his match and peece, and the right hand use the office of charging and discharging.

BEING against the enemie, whilst with an indented course he doth travell his plaine ground, or else takes advantage of his place and invasion, as under the safeguard of a trench, the back of a ditch, old-wall, or tree, or such like; let him ever first load his peece with powder out of his flaske, then with her bullet, and last with amuring and touch-powder, foreseeing ever that the panne bee cleane, the cover close, and the tutch-hole wide, or else well proind: so that still observing modest order in his traverse, neither over slow nor over speedy, to the entent he become not each man's marke through his sluggishnesse, nor run himself out of breath through his own rashnesse, for the most parte keeping his side towards his enemie: let him discharge going, but never standing: so shall he the better shunne the enimies shot, and chuse his assured advantage. A fouldier ought to be careful that his furniture be good, substantiall, and staunche from raine, the charge of his flaske just for his peece, and the spring quick and sharpe: the pipe of his touch-box somewhat wide, that the powder may have free passage, which otherwise would choak up.

IN time of marching and travelling by the way, let him keepe a paper in his panne and tutch-hole, and in wet weather have a case for his peece, somewhat portable, or else of necessitie he must keepe the same from wet under his arm-hole or cassocke, or by some other invention free from damage of the weather, and his match in his pocket, onely that except which he burnes: and that likewise so close in the hollow of his hand, or some artificiall pipe of pewter hanging at his girdle, as the coale by wet or water go not out.

It is moreover requisite, that a fouldier keepe his cocke with oyle free in falling, and his peece bright without rusting; neither must he want his necessarie tooles, as a scowrer, tirebale and worrne, having every one a vice to turne into the end of the scouring sticke, so that if thorough wet weather, or any other accident, his peece will not be

discharged, the skilful souldier may with his tireball pull out his bullet with the worme, the paper, and wet powder, and with his scourer make his peece cleane within. His scourer must be trimmed on the end with a linen cloth of sufficient substance, therewith to make cleane the cannon of his peece within. The one end of his scouring stick ought to have a round end of bone of just bignesse with the mouth of his peece, therewithall at his pleasure, to ramme in powder and paper, or instead of paper, suche softe haire as they stuff saddles withall, the danger whereof is not like; but this the souldier must use when time permits. During the time of his service let him ever have a diligent care to keepe his peece cleane and bright within, and once a fortnight, or at least once a month, take out the breech, and throroughly view and wash the barrell within, to see whether it hath any flawes, brackes, chambers, frettings, or ruptures, which would endanger the breaking thereof, especially if before hand the end of his bare scourer hath given him any cause to suspect such faults, to the intent he may change the same for a new for feare of spoiling himselfe.

HE that loves the fastie of his owne person, and delights in the goodness and beautie of a peece, let him alwayes make choice of one that is double breeched, and if it be possible a Myllan peece, for they be of tough and perfect temper, light, square, and bigge of breech, and very strong where the powder doth lie, and where the violent force of the fire doth consist, and notwithstanding thinne at the end.

OUR English peeces approach very neare unto them in goodnesse and beautie (their heavinesse only excepted), so that they be made of purpose, and not one of these common sale peeces with round barrells, whereunto a beaten souldier will have great respect, and choose rather to pay double money for a good peece, than to spare his purse and endanger himselfe.

BUT to returne to my matter; let a souldier have hanging ever at the strings of his tutch box, or some other readie part of his garment, a couple of proyning pinnes at the least, that if by fortune the tutch hole of his peece be stopped or furred up, hee may therewith both

make his pan cleane, and yeeld a ready passage, that the fire may have her course, by incorporating both the tutch-pouder without and the corn-pouder within together (b). But a reydy souldier will alwaies foresee that the tutch-hole be so wide as the pouder without in the pan may have free concourse to that within the peece, thereby to hasten more speedy discharge, considering a souldier cannot have leisure and commodity to proine his peece at all times, but must of necessitie use a great dexterity.

BUT since I am false into the speech of a quicke charge and nimble discharge, I will by way declare the opinion of certaine nations therein.

EXPERIENCE of late daies hath taught us, that those nations which followe the warres invent every way how they may endamage the enemy in all their enterprises, but especially in skirmish, which for the most parte consists in shot, and by such as can with the eye of his minde make an assured levell, and with a nimble discharge both choose out and kill his enemy.

AND therefore those souldiers which in our time have bene for the most part levied in the low countries, especially those of Artoys and Henault, called by the generall name of Wallownes, have used to hang about their neckes, upon a baudricke or border, or at their girdles, certaine pipes, which they call charges, of copper and tin, made with covers, which they thinke in skirmish to bee the more readie way. But the Spaniard dispising that order doth altogether use his flaske.

THE Frenchman both charge and flaske. But some of our English nation their pocket; which in respect of the danger of the sparks of their match, the uncertaine charge, the expence and spoile of pouder, the discommoditie of wet, I account more apt for the show of a triumph and wanton skirmish before ladies and gentlewomen, then fit for the field in a day of service in the face of an enemy: and in like sort the

---

(b) THIS passage shews that the touch-powder contained in the primer was mealed, or what was formerly called serpentine powder.



charge which either doth shed and loose his powder, whilst a souldier doth traverſe his ground, or elſe is ſo cloddered and rammed together, that he ſhall be forced ſometimes to faile of halfe his charge. Therefore I conclude with the Spaniard, that a good flaſke is that which is moſt warlike and ready in ſervice, without the curious help of any extraordinary invention.

ONE of the greateſt helps conſiſts in powder and match: for a ſouldier muſt ever buy his powder ſharpe in taſte, well incorporate with ſaltpeter, and not full of coole-duſt. Let him accuſtome to drie his powder, if hee can in the ſunne, firſt ſprinkled over with aqua vitæ, or ſtrong claret wine. Let him make his tutch-powder, being finely ſarfed and ſifted, with quick-pale, which is to be bought at the powder makers or apothecaries; and let his match be boiled in aſhes-lye and powder, that it will both burne well, carrie a long coale, and that will not breake off with the touch of your finger. The preparations will at the firſt touch give fire, and procure a violent, ſpeedy, and thundering diſcharge. Some uſe brimſtone finely powdered in their tutch-powder, but that furs and ſtops up your breech and tutch-hole.

THE bullet of a ſouldier's peece muſt be of a juſt bigneſſe with the mouth of the ſame, ſo that falling in ſmoothly it may drive down, and cloſe up the mouth of the powder. Some, contrary to the lawes of the field, uſe chaine-ſhot, and quarter-ſhot, which is good in the defence of a breach, to keepe a fortrefſe, or upon ſhip-board; but being daily uſed it will gaule a peece within, and put it in hazard to breake, ſpecially in a long ſkirmiſh where the barrell is hot.

NOTE, that after his peece is very hoate, let the ſouldier if he can give ſomewhat a leſſe charge for feare of burſting his peece, unleſſe he have good triall thereof. If the ſtocke of his peece be crooked, he ought to place the end juſt before above his left pappe; if long and ſtraight as the Spaniards uſe them, then upon the point of his right ſhoulder, uſing a ſtately upright pace in diſcharge.

IT is not in vaine to advertiſe him, that in ſkirmiſh he muſt hold his peece betwixt his thombe and the ends of his fingers, which I account

a fure meane, betwixt griping of the barrell, and laying the fame onely upon his foremost finger and thombe; for the one is over dangerous, and the other altogether unsteedy.

I JUDGE it likewise most convenient for him, to take hold of his peece with his left hand in that part of the wood (wherein the barrel lies) there as the peece is of most equal ballance; although some accustom themselves to hold it just under the cocke, by reason whereof he shall be enforced to change his hand, if he charge out of a flaske, into the midst of the peece, to bring downe the mouth to his flaske, which is great delay and hinderance in skirmish. So to conclude, he that meanes to be accompted a forward and perfect goode shot, by continuall exercise must be so ready, that in all particular points touching his peece, powder, match, bullets, and the use of them, that he neither be to seeke, nor grow amazed in the furious rage of Bellona's fiery skirmishes, her sudden surprises and bloody slaughter, of dangerous assaults, of cruell battailes.

THE musket is to be used in all respects like unto the hargabuse, save that in respect he carries a double bullet, and is much more weightie. He useth a staffe breaste high, in the one end a pike to pitch in the ground, and in the other an iron forke to rest his peece upon, and a hoale a little beneath the same in the staffe: whereunto he doth adde a string, which tied and wrapped about his wrest, yeelds him commodity to traîne his forke or staffe after him, whilest he in skirmish doth charge his musket afresh with powder and bullet.

Now to speak somewhat of a pikeman's charge, a few words shall suffice, because I will not be over tedious. Let him learne to tosse his pike, couch and crosse the same, to receive the violent charge of horsemen, to front the furious shocke of footemen, and be able to furnish out his fight both afarre off and neere hand: which notes with the like will be sufficient, by reason that he is for the most part put to stand in a maine and square battaile. Both the hargabusier and the pikeman must weare a short rapier and a small poinado: for if in the midst of encounters and skirmishes, they be driven to use them, their length is an occasion they cannot be drawne, unlesse he abandon his peece or

pike, wherdby he fhall either loofe his pike, or want his rapier, which at the fcræ and clofe, is very neceffary both for defence and offence: contrary to the careleffe cuftome of fome whom I have feene come into the field without rapier or dagger, which was an affured argument, that their heeles fhould be their target, and their fhamefull flight their fafety, when their powder was fpent.

Now as thefe careleffe perfons farre miffe the marke with over-great fecuritie, fo fome bring in a cuftome of too much curiofitie in arming hargabüfiers, for befides a peece, flaske, tutch-box, rapier and dagger, they loade them with a heavie fhirt of male, and a burganet: fo that by that time they have marched in the heat of fommer, or deepe of the winter, ten or twelve Englifh miles, they are more apt to reft, than ready to fight, whereby it comes to paffe, that either the enterprife they go about, which requires celerity, fhall become frustrate by reafon of the ftay they made in refreshing themfelves, or elfe they are in danger to be repulfed, for want of luftineffe, breath and agilitie.

WHEREFORE in mine opinion it is not neceffary, that this extraordinary arming of fhot fhould be ufed, but in furprifes of townes, efcalades, and affaults of breeches, to defend the fouldiers heads from ftones, and fuch ftuffe as they befieged have prepared to drive them from their enterprife. Or elfe in fome fpeciall fet battaile againft the cut and thruft of weapons: which exploits, for that they be not fo ordinarye as is the fkirmifh, fo are thefe armes nothing fo neceffarie, but rather a burthen, more beautiful than beneficiall, and of greater charge than the commoditie, fpecially a fhirt, of male, which is very dangerous for fhot, if a number of thofe fmall peeces fhould bee driven into a man's body by a bullet.

THE furniture due to a pikeman, befides his pike, rapier and dagger, confifting of a common corfelet, having a collar, curiat, tafes, back-part, poldrowes, wambrasses, and burganets for the head, for that they be fufficiently knowne, becaufe I will not be over prolixè upon every particular point, I will onely fay thus much more touching the pikeman, that he ought to have his pike at the point and middeft trim-

med with handsome taffels, and a handle, not so much for ornament, as to defend the fouldiers body from water, which in raine doth runne downe alongft the wood (c).

EVERY fouldier ought to carry his hargabufe, pike, or halberd, upon that shoulder and side which is outward in ranke, for that side which is discovered inward is more defended by the general order that is kept than any other, which order of carrying armes is not onely ready and commodious to use on all occasions, but also doth make a gallant shew, and a general forme of good proportion and true prospect; a thing most necessarise for a man of valour to use in all his doings (d).

THE exchange of the match-lock musket for the fire-lock, fusil, or snaphance (e), most probably was not made at the same time, throughout the army, but brought about by degrees. The fire-lock seems to have been known as early as the reign of Henry VIII. many pieces so named occur in the survey of the different armouries and arsenals of this realm and its dependencies, taken 1st Ed. VI. (f) but whether by the term fire-lock, a wheel-lock was meant, admits of a doubt; certainly the wheel-lock is as much a fire-lock as the snap-

(c) THE parts of this quotation describing the armour and appointments of the pikeman, which have been already treated of, being very short, were here given, to avoid breaking the thread of the description.

(d) ALTHOUGH the arms and appointments of a musketeer are here pretty minutely described, it may be necessary to observe, that the Flemish custom for soldiers to carry their powder in small cases of copper, tin, leather, pasteboard or other substances, with each its cover, was adopted here; a dozen of them hung to a belt worn over the left shoulder, was called a bandaleer, or bandaleers; to the same belt hung the bullet bag, flask for priming, and sometimes the spare match. These small cases were sometimes fixed to a belt worn round the waist.

(e) SNAPHANCE, the Dutch name for a fire-lock; the first fire-locks were so called here.

(f) GREENWICH, item, one chamber pece blacke, the stocke of redde woode, set with bone worke, with fier-locke in a case of crymfon vellet. Item, one longe white pece, with a fire-locke Item, one longe pece, graven and guilte, with a stocke of redde woode, set with white bone, with a fier-lock, in a case of lether. Item, two chamber peeces, guilt and graven, with a fier-locke, in a stocke of yellow vellet, &c. *Mr. Brander's MS.*

hance, both being fired by the collision of the flint and steel. The duke of Albemarle recommends arming a dragoon with a snaphance to a musket barrel, because on occasion he might use it on horseback, and go upon service in the night, without being discovered by the light of his match (g).

THE fire-lock musket is also recommended by the earl of Orrery, in preference to that with the match-lock, in his *Treatise on the Art of War*, published in the year 1677 (h), for which he gives these reasons: "First, it is exceedingly more ready; for with the fire-lock you have only to cock, and you are prepared to shoot; but with your match-lock you have several motions, the least of which is as long a performing, as but that one of the other, and oftentimes much more hazardous; besides, if you fire not the match-lock musket as soon as you have blown your match (which often, especially in hedge fights and in sieges, you cannot do), you must a second time blow your match, or the ashes it gathers hinders it from firing.

SECONDLY, the match is very dangerous, either where bandoleers are used, or where soldiers run hastily in fight to the budge-barrel, to refill their bandoleers; I have often seen sad instances thereof.

THIRDLY, marching in the nights, to avoid an enemy, or to surprize one, or to assault a fortrefs, the matches often discover you, and inform the enemy where you are, whereby you suffer much, and he obtains much.

FOURTHLY, in wet weather, the pan of the musket being made wide

(g) OBSERVATIONS upon Military and Political Affairs, by George, duke of Albemarle, 1671, p. 27. To prevent the matches being seen in the night, small metal tubes of about a foot long, big enough to contain a match, and pierced full of little holes to admit the air, were worn by the Flemish musketeers; this contrivance is said to have been invented by Maurice, prince of Orange, and was the origin of grenadiers' match-boxes. These tubes are described by Walhuyfen, in p. 136. of his book entitled *L'Art Militaire pour l'Infanterie*, pub. in 1615.

(h) CAPT. SMITH, in his *Military Dictionary*, says, fire-locks were first made use of in 1690, when match-locks were universally disused; but he does not cite any authority for this assertion.

open for a while, the rain often deads the powder, and the match too ; and in windy weather, blows away the powder, ere the match can touch the pan : nay, often in very high winds, I have seen the sparks blown from the match, fire the musket ere the foldier meant it ; and either thereby lose his shot, or wound or kill some one before him. Whereas in the firelock, the motion is so sudden, that what makes the cock fall on the hammer, strikes the fire, and opens the pan at once.

LASTLY, to omit many other reasons, the quantity of match used in an army, does much add to the baggage, and being of a very dry quality, naturally draws the moisture of the air, which makes it relax, and consequently less fit, though carried in close waggons : but if you march without waggons, the match is the more exposed ; and without being dried again in ovens, is but of half the use which otherwise it would be of : and which is full as bad, the skeans you give the corporals, and the links you give the private foldiers (of which near an enemy, or on the ordinary guard duty, they must never be unfurnished), if they lodge in huts or tents ; or if they keep guard in the open field (as most often it happens) all the match for instant service is too often rendered uncertain or useless ; nothing of all which can be said of the flint, but much of it to the contrary.

And then the foldiers generally wearing their links of match near the bottom of the belt, on which their bandaleers are fastened, in wet weather generally spoil the match they have, and if they are to fight on a sudden, and in the rain, you lose the use of your small shot, which is sometimes of irreparable prejudice."

## NUMBER II.

*The High Constable.*

**E**XTRACT from the TITLES of BOURBON, in the chamber of accounts in Paris.

THESE are the rights of the constable of France, by virtue of his office.

FIRST, The constable is, and ought to be, the most secret and intimate of the king's council; and the king ought not to order any feat of war, without the council of the constable, if he can be present to give his advice.

ITEM, the constable should have a lodging at court, or wherever the king shall be.

ITEM, If the king goes to the army, the constable may go on an expedition as often as he pleases, without his proper establishment of followers, the king being obliged to furnish him with a guard, whether he be with the same part of the army as the king, or with another; and his retainers shall mount no guards, unless at his will; and he shall post the guards, when mounted by knights (i).

ITEM, If a fortress or castle is taken by storm, or shall surrender, the horses, harness, provisions, and all other things found therein, belong to the constable, excepting gold and prisoners, which belong to the king; and the artillery to the master of the cross-bows.

ITEM, If the constable goes out on an expedition, whether with or without the king (provided it be in the king's army), he, the constable, may take ten men at arms from each battail, to accompany him, except from that of the king.

---

(i) THE knights only mounted guard on some particular occasions, and it was meant as an honour to that body, that the constable was to post their guard and attend its mounting.

ITEM, The constable serving in the king's wars, with or without him, ought to cause his war-horses and those of his companions, and all the people of the household, to be appreciated by the marshal; and the price set on them by the marshal, shall be restored by the king.

ITEM, No one shall have any cognizance, authority, lordship or judgment, on any of the suite of the constable, except himself, and the matters of his household.

ITEM, Whenever the king is at war, the constable shall have a day's pay of all persons receiving wages, or who are to have a certain sum instead thereof (k).

ANY one changing his establishment for another, the constable shall again have of him a day's pay (l).

ITEM, If the constable rides out on an expedition, every thing taken by him or his household is his, except gold and prisoners, which belong to the king.

ITEM, Every day that the king rides forth armed at all points for assault or battle, the constable shall have an hundred livres, but if his legs only are armed, he shall have but fifty; and if several horses are brought to the king for some feat of arms on that day, after the king has chosen one, the constable shall take the second.

ITEM, In all legal duels within the kingdom, the constable shall guard the parties, and take their oaths; and if any part of their armour shall fall in the field, it belongs to the constable; and he may stop them, or cause them to proceed or cease at his direction; and the lances, swords, and armour of the dead horses are his perquisites.

ITEM, The constable being on service in the king's war, all his expences shall be defrayed by the king.

ITEM, All military persons in the army are to obey the constable, and such orders as he shall have caused to be proclaimed; and if any

(k) PROBABLY one day's pay in the year was meant, though not expressed.

(l) CHANGING of establishment, may mean either exchange of garrison, or quitting one banner to engage under another, perhaps on superior rank or pay, in which case, the second day's pay was a kind of fee on promotion.



one receiving pay, shall depart from the army contrary to his will, or without his leave, his horses and arms shall be forfeited to him, the said constable, and the body of the offender remain at the king's disposal.

ITEM, Neither the marshal nor the master of the cross-bow-men, shall undertake any feat of arms for the king's service, either in the army, or in garrison, without consulting the constable, and obtaining his assent.

ITEM, In all places where castles or fortresses are taken, if the king is not present, the banner of the constable shall be the first planted on them; and for each of his two banners, the bearers are to have one hundred pence of the king: and if the king is present, his banners always go foremost, and those of the constable follow them; but the bearers in that case have no perquisite.

ITEM, In all places where the king shall be present, all proclamations shall be made in his name, or that of his constable, without naming any other persons.

ITEM, Where the constable shall be present in the king's wars, whether with or without him, every serjeant of arms shall attend him and obey his orders (m).

ITEM, If a serjeant at arms shall misbehave, the constable may take away his mace, and suspend his service; in which case the king ought not to restore him, until the constable had related to him the cause of deprivation.

ITEM, When the king is at his coronation at Rheims, the constable ought to be lodged at the moulinet, before Notre Dame; and should send the men at arms to fetch the ampulla, or vessel holding the holy oil, and go with them and convoy them back."

HERE follows another piece, containing the prerogative of the constable also preserved in the chamber of accounts at Paris, in the register, entitled PATER. fol. 183.

" I. THE constable is superior to all other persons in the army ex-

---

(m) THESE serjeants at arms were the king's body-guard, and all of them gentlemen; their officers, who were persons of high rank, probably made a difficulty to receive the constable's orders, when the king was in the camp, which difficulty might have caused this regulation.

cepting the king. If there are dukes, barons, counts, knights, esquires, horse or foot soldiers, of what estate soever, they must obey him.

II. ITEM, The marshals of the army are under him, and have their distinct offices of receiving men at arms, dukes, counts, barons, knights and esquires, and their companions (n); but cannot, nor ought not, to go out on any expedition, nor order any battle, without the direction of the constable, nor make any ban or proclamation, without the commands of the king or constable.

III. ITEM, The constable shall order all battles, expeditions, and establishments of posts, both in the field and garrisons (o).

IV. ITEM, Whenever the army moves from one place to another, the constable takes and delivers by his right, their different stations in the troops, to the king, and other officers of the army, immediately after the master of the cross-bows, and then the battalions, and the marshal should be in his battalion (p)."

THIS matter, which (says Pere Daniel) is expressed in an obscure manner, is explained by an ancient manuscript in my possession, at the head of which is an ordonnance of Philip le Bel, of the year 1306, touching the gages of Battailles. Many other matters are there treated, and among them is this title, "Ordonnance of the king when he goes with the army." The contents are as follows:

"WHEN the king takes the field with the army, he ought to march in battalia; and first, the constable should command forth the scouts, who should be good soldiers and well mounted; after them a marshal, or other vailliant man, leading a squadron of choice men, having a sufficient number of archers, for the protection of the scouts; and there should be the masters of offices, prevoists, fourriers, and their people, for distributing quarters; after these comes the constable in the van-guard, with a sufficient number of barons and good soldiers;

(n) PROBABLY in order to assign their quarters in garrison, or ground in a camp.

(o) ESTABLIES. This word, in the old French, signifies as well posts in the field, as garrisons.

(p) BATTAIL was an ancient military term for an indefinite body of men; armies were frequently divided into three battles.

and there are their pennons, banners, and standards, and their body of archers who go before.

AFTER them comes the master of the cross-bows, with the archers; then comes the first esquire of the esquiere (q), who carries, or causes to be carried, the royal standard, until it is wanted for service; and after him are the pages on barded war horses (r), and the king's horses, who bear rich bacinets, helmets, lances, salades and hats; after them come the trumpets, and then the king's banner, which the first chamberlain, surrounded by kings of arms, heralds, and pursuivants is to bear, or cause to be borne, till it is wanted for service; after all these comes the king in person, accompanied by dukes, counts, barons, and princes, and other noble and powerful men; and the first groom carver (s) should be next behind him carrying his penon, which should move to and fro every where the king goes, in order that every one may know where he is; and the banner, pennon, and standard horses are at the conclusion of the campaign, the right of those who have borne those ensigns, the two wings of the corps de bataille, and their archers, should be commanded by two princes, admirals, or marshals, or other wise and valiant captains, who should speedily send some good and able cavalry to reconnoitre the way and country; after all these comes the rear guard, commanded by a duke, count, or marshal, well accompanied by valiant men, and the archers belonging to them, who behind them should have a little square (t) of good troops, and after them some horsemen well mounted, to prevent their being attacked in the rear.

By this extract may be clearly seen what is confusedly told in the preceding article, shewing in what manner the constable, by virtue of his office, and of his right, assigned to the king and the officers the post each should hold in the march of the army. First of all the constable made a detachment which marched before the army; and in

(q) ESCUYER d'Escuyerie.

(r) ARMED or barded horses.

(s) PREMIER Varlet Tranchent.

(t) THAT is, a small body of men, ranged in rank and file, which seems to shew that the other troops did not observe much order in marching.

that detachment were the fouriers and other officers destined to distribute the ground in the place where the camp was to be formed.

SECONDLY, The constable marched at the head of the van guard. Thirdly, after the van guard, and before the corps de bataille, marched the grand master of the cross-bow men, whose corps was very numerous; and then followed the corps de bataille, where the king was, after the body commanded by the master of the cross-bow men; and finally followed the rear guard, behind which was a detachment of brave soldiers, to prevent the enemy from troubling them in their march. I return to the suite of functions or prerogatives of the constable.

“ITEM, The king, if with the army, ought not to ride forth on any expedition, nor the other combattants, unless by the ordonnance and council of the constable.

ITEM, The constable has the care of sending messengers and spies for the use of the army every where he shall see necessary, as also when requisite couriers and other horsemen.”

THE four articles following respect the right the constable has to take a day's pay from each man of war in the wages or pay of the king, of which mention has been made in the other acts.

IN an account of William Charrier, of the year 1424, under Charles VII. taken from the chamber of accounts, I have remarked a privilege of the constable, namely, that he should have for every month, as his predecessors had, the payment of an hundred men of arms, without being liable to either muster or review, being only obliged to deliver every month, on a roll of parchment, the names and surnames of those men at arms, certifying, under his seal, that he had them in his company.

THESE were the chief military prerogatives of the constable of France, from whence probably those of the English constables were taken. This office was suppressed in France, by Louis XIII., in the year 1627: the motives mentioned in the ordonnance for this suppression were the great appointments and power of this officer, the latter frequently in prejudice to the royal authority.

## NUMBER III.

*On Ensigns or Colours, their Dignity, and the Disgraces to which they are liable.*

1. **T**HE dignitie and estimation of ensignes in all ages hath been held most venerable and worthy: they have been esteemed the glory of the captain and his company; and indeed they are no less; for where they perish with disgrace, there the captaine's honour faileth, and the foldier is in hazard of ruine; for if the loss proceed either from their cowardice or misgovernment, it hath been death by the law of arms to all that survive; and the best mercy that can be expected is, that every foldier shall draw a lot for his life (file by file), so that one out of every file perisheth for it.

2. **T**HE next dignitie of the ensign is, that every foldier, as soon as he is enrolled, and hath received either pay or imprefs, they antiently took a solemn oath to be faithful to their colours, to attend them carefully, and to defend them valiantly, and that upon all summons of the trumpet or drum, or command of their officers, to repair to them wheresoever they shall be lodged, stand or be, and not to depart or straggle from them until they have received orders.

3. **T**HE ensign hath another dignity, that whensoever he shall enter into city, town, garrison, camp, or other rendezvouze of aboad, he is to be first lodged, before any other officer or souldier; and not in any meane place, but the best and most spacious for the drawing up of the souldiers upon any alarme; and his quarter ought to be the most secure from danger.

4. **T**HE ensign hath dignity of place according to the antiquity of his captain; but in one particular case it hath been judged to be greater than his captain, and lendeth place to him; as thus, no cap-

tain can receive his antiquity from his inrollment, but from the first hour in which his colours flew; for if two be inrolled upon one day, and the latter marcheth before the face of his enemy with his colours flying, in this case the first has lost his priority, and the latter for ever after shall precede him.

I HAVE read of another resolve, three captains (or more as occasion happeneth) were all inrolled upon a day, and all their colours flying; presently upon a truce, composition, or other occasion, there is some small cessation of armes, and these new inrolled captains are calheered (or dismissed) for the present service: now the two first that had priority of place, not only by inrollment, but by flying of their ensigns, because they would not be out of action (to a souldier the taste of gain is pleasant), took upon them the commands as lieutenants of two colonels companies, &c. which are captaines places in courtesie, retaining those titles, and in some courts of war have had their voices; now the third all this time taketh upon him no place, but remaineth in statu quo prius; and in revolution of time all these three captaines aforesaid are again commissioned for three new companies of their own; the question was, whose ensign should fly first, and which of the three should have the priority of place? It was thus answered and adjudged by the old Earl of Essex and Sir Francis Vere, &c. that the two first who had taken upon them lieutenancies had utterly lost their superiorities, and the third whose honour slept, but diminished not, had precedencie of place, and his ensign flew before the other ever after.

5. THE ensigne hath this dignity, to have a guard ever about it, which no other officer hath; neither is it to be disembogued or unlodged without a special guard attending upon it, both of musquetteers and pikes; (and so for a cornet with his own squadron of horse). Also in the field, if it be in particular discipline, or otherwise upon an alt or stand, at such time as the army or company are to refresh themselves with victuals or other rest; in this case the ensigne shall by no means lay his colours upon the ground, or put them in unworthy or base hands, but he shall first furl and fold them up, and set the butt end

on the ground, supported with the serjants halberts, and the ensigne himself shall not go from the view thereof, unless he shall leave a sufficient guard for them.

6. ANOTHER dignity of an ensigne is, if a nobleman or an esquire will take upon him the command of a private company, and have no other superior place in an army; and a mean gentleman hath the like equal command, but a great deal more antient, although there ought to be a respect if they should happen in company unto the worth and quality of the person, yet the meaner gentleman's colours shall fly before the other.

As this hath been the antient practise in the wars, how then do those captains debase themselves, and their ensigns, to suffer young captains to step in (either by greatness in quality or favour) to fly their colours before them, &c.

7. EVERY ensign hath his dignity, although he is wholly to be at the captain's command; yet in justice no captain nor other officer can command the ensign-bearer from his colours, for they are man and wife, and ought not to endure a separation; nor can he be commanded with his ensign to any base (dishonourable) place or action: and hence it is that, to this day, this place and mark of honour is held in such a venerable and worthy estimation amongst the Spaniards and Italians, that they will not allow of any second between him and the captain, as the name of a lieutenant, to be amongst them, thinking it to be a superfluous charge and command, because it is, in their judgments, a lessening and a bating of the ensign's honour.

BUT in this, although we esteem an ensign very honourable, we in England differ from them, owning the place of a lieutenant to be honourable and necessary, who ought to be a man of most approved experience; for he takes from the captain those heavy burdens which otherwise would make the captain's trouble insupportable; nor can the ensigne discharge them, unless he neglects his care and duty to his colours.

8. As for the dignity of the ensign in England (not meddling with the standard royal), to a regimental dignity: the colonel's colours, in

the first place, is of a pure and clean colour, without any mixture; the lieutenant colonel's only with Saint George's armes in the upper corner next the staff; the major's the same, but in the lower and outmost corner with a little stream blazont, and every captaine with Saint George's armes alone, but with so many spots or several devices as pertain to the dignity of their respective places.

BUT with us in England, placing and displacing is left to the generalissimo, &c. and so to his substitutes or deputies: it is to me a riddle, that any person who cannot be stained with the least blemish, should lose his advancing honour; but kissing goes by favour.

#### Of DISGRACES to the ENSIGN.

THERE are as many disgraces that belong to the ensign as dignities; I shall, for brevity sake, mention but some few: all which must proceed from mistakes in one of these three, unskilful compofure, negligent government, or rash actions.

1. TOUCHING unskilful compofure, either in false making, or bearing of ensigns, and that you may be informed for the compofures thereof, I cannot better it than to declare to you Markham's own words out of his *Soldier's Accidence*, page 31, he saith, "There must be in military honour nine several faces, or complexions, that is to say, two which be called mettals, as yellow and white, figuring gold and silver; seven which are called proper colours, as black, blew, red, green, purple, tannis, and ermine.

AND here it is to be noted, that no mettal is to be carried upon mettal, and for the signification of those colours you shall understand that,

1. YELLOW betokeneth honour, or height of spirit, which being never seperated from virtue, of all things is most jealous of disgrace, and may not endure the least shadow of imputation.

2. WHITE signifieth innocencie, or purity of conscience, truth, and upright integrity, without blemish.

3. BLACK signifieth wisdom and sobriety, together with severe



correction of too much ambition, being mixed with yellow, or with too much belief or lenity, being mixed with white.

4. BLEW signifieth faith, constancy, or truth in affection.

5. RED signifieth justice, or noble worthy anger, in defence of religion or the oppressed.

6. GREEN signifieth good hope, or the accomplishment of holy and honourable actions.

7. PURPLE signifieth fortitude with discretion, or a most true discharge of any trust reposed.

8. TUNNIS, or tawny, signifieth merit or desert, and a foe to ingratitude.

9. ERMINE, which is only a rich furr, with curious spots, signifieth religion or holiness, and that all aimes are not divine objects.

Now from these colours and their mixtures are derived many bastard and dishonourable colours, as carnation, orange tawny, popengie, &c. which signifie craft, pride, and wantonness; so that all commanders are left at their own pleasure for their mixtures, but with these considerations; as,

1. NOT to put in his ensign his full coat armour.

2. NOT to bear one black spot and no more in his ensign, for it sheweth some blemish in the owner; if the spot be round, square, or of equal proportion.

3. IF the spot be unequal, it signifieth a funeral or deadly revenge.

4. NOT to carry words in his colours without a device, nor a device without words; and the words not to exceed four in number, for if there be more, it sheweth imperfection.

5. NOT to carry more colours than two, except it be for some special note, or the ensign of several kingdoms, it is a surcharge, and esteemed folly.

2. HAVING shewed the true colours, and the disgraces that may arise in the composition of them, as mentioned by Mr. Markham, I come to the next disgraces, which proceed from negligence in government; as in carrying his colours furl'd (or folded) up, when they should be flying; or to let his colours fly when they should be folded

up; or to display (or flourish them) when they should be carried without any hand motions; or to carry them without motion when they should be displayed; or to vaile them when they should be advanced, or to advance them when they should be veiled.

To lodge or dislodge colours without a guard, or to suffer any man to handle them that hath not a lawful authority. Now the avoydance hereof is sufficient to keep any man from gross errors.

3. THE last disgrace as to the dignity of the ensign is

1. FROM the rashness and unadvisedness of actions; when he is in safety, out of a phantastical bravado, to thrust himself into danger, as to charge the enemy when he should stand still: it is not only a disgrace, but the offence hath been adjudged worthy of death, although he may obtain victory by that forward action.

2. IF in a march, battalia, or setting of the parade, or upon any other military employments, he shall misplace himself, it is a disgrace.

3. IF in a battel, skirmish, or fight, where the ensign is put to retreat, his colours shall be furled (or folded) up, or shouldred, and not flying, and held forth and extended with the left arm, and his sword advanced in his right hand, his colours are disgraced, and such retreat is base and unworthy.

4. IF the ensign-bearer shall happen either in battel or skirmish to be slain, and so the colours fall to the ground, if those, or some of them, next adjoining thereunto, do not recover and advance them up, it is not only a disgrace to the ensign, but an utter dishonour to the whole company; as I have declared, that if the colours be lost there must be a severe account given for them; and indeed a greater act of cowardice cannot be found than to suffer the colours to be lost.

THERE is an antient president, but fresh in memory, that in great defeats when armies have been overthrown, scattered and dispersed, so that particular safety hath made men forget general observations; even then the ensign being wounded to death, and desperate of all relief, hath stript his ensign from the staff, and wrapt or folded it about his body, and so perished with it. This ensign cannot be said

to be loft, becaufe the honour thereof was carried with his freed foul to heaven, to the poffeffion of the eternal fort for ever: now in this particular the enemy cannot boaft of any triumph then purchafed, more then every fexton may do when he robs the dead of his winding fheet.

THUS it hath been reported that Sebaftian, king of Portugal, dyed at the battel of Alcazar: and I have read of many of our brave Englifh that thus dyed at the renowned battel at Newport, and have heard that many have fo done in the army of our late fovereign of ever bleffed memory.

5. AND, laftly, if any man fhall recover the loft enfign, and bring it away flying, &c. no matter how low in condition the man is, if the captain upon any after confiderations beftow thofe colours upon fome other man, it is a difgrace both to the captain and his enfign, for he doth injury to vertue, and difcourage valour.

OBJ. But fome may object, that upon compofition with the party deferving, the captain may difpofe of his colours where he pleafeth; I confefs it true, but if this compofition be forced, it is injurious; and if it come by a voluntary confent of the party, it is bafe and moft unworthy in him alfo.

Of the right USE and ORDERING of the ENSIGN or COLOURS; with the POSTURES and FLOURISHES thereunto belonging.

As to my beft remembrance, I have given a catalogue of the difgraces; fo I fhall here infert, as to my knowledge, the true ufe of the enfign, whereby thofe injuries may be avoyded.

1. AND firft, you fhall underftand, that in all extended marches (and not drawn into a body), as when they march either into a friend's or enemy's country; or otherwife are conducted to fome remote rendezvous; here the enfign (or colours) ought to be half furled (or folded) up, and half flying, fhall be fhouldred, and born a little crofs the enfign-bearer's neck, with his hand extended a good diftance from

his body, and his left hand upon his side or hilt of his sword; this is termed marching in state.

2. If he shall enter into any city or great town, then he shall unfold or open his colours, and let them fly at full length, and carry them in his right hand close under the hose, with a lofty hand, and extended arm; this is marching in triumph: but if the wind blow stiff, or there is a weakness, or wearisomeness in the ensign-bearer, then he may set the butt-end against his waist, and not otherwise: and is to have but one hand upon his staff in any march whatever.

3. In all troopings, the ensign shall ever be furled, and carried in the same postures as the pikes ought to be.

4. WHEN the company is drawn up in a body, the colours must be flying; and by the way, in case the general, or supreme of the wars, or any noble stranger, worthy of respect, do come, immediately upon his or their approach, the ensign-bearer, in all humility, is to bow the head of his colours, waving them with the bow of his body, and to raise both it and himself up again: and as the said person shall pass away, the drum shall beat, and the colours shall be displayed: this also the ensign shall do in all marchings, or other motions of civil exercises, where your superiors pass by you, or you by them: nay, it is expedient and fit so to be done to any gentleman that is your familiar; for it is no more but as vailing your hat, or giving your friend a courtesie.

5. Now when the body is drawn up into battalia, and the enemy within view thereof, then every man being in his place is to express all the gallantry he can, and especially the ensign-bearer, either in displaying his colours standing, marching, charging, and retreating (or retiring); and all these ought not to be done at one time, but when the bodies are joining, and they must be done with great respect, for to use the postures directly to the motion or standing of the body; and not to do as I have seen in some ordinary militia discipline, that have but one or two motions of their colours, upon and for all occasions; as if true honour had such weak inventions; this without doubt is most base and unworthy.

To proceed to the postures of the ensign.

THEY are in general as followeth, so well as I can express them ; for they are better in execution, and to be taught by example, than any pen can describe them.

1. To change them with a plain wave from hand to hand.
2. To change them with lofty turns from hand to hand : each hand performing their turns before you deliver them, as from the right to the left, and from the left to the right as at first.
3. FROM the right hand with a wave and lofty turn, jutting the colours upon the left shoulder, and raising them up with the same hand again, and with lofty turns to deliver it into the left hand, that so thereby you may execute the same upon the right shoulder, and after the turns, to deliver it into the right hand, as at first.
4. WITH (and from) the right hand with lofty turns, throw your colours under the left arm, recovering them speedily back with conceived flourishes, you deliver them into the left hand : you may execute the same with the left hand.
5. WITH turns or flourishes you bring the butt-end of the staff to your left hand, turning the palm of your left hand outwards (but not for the reception of it), and with the same hand only throw it off upon its turn with a flourish, to deliver it into the left hand, and to perform the same with the left hand and deliver the colours into the right hand as at first.
6. WITH lofty turns bring the colours over the head down right (but not too low) before, and raising it again, with the fore-turn and back-turn over the head, changing of hands, and delivering as before.
7. FROM the right hand deliver into your left hand, with the palm of your hand uppermost, the butt-end of your staff turning it backwards upon the left shoulder ; and turning it over the head with the same hand, you deliver it into the right hand after the same manner, which being performed with the right hand, you proceed to the next.
8. FROM the right hand with lofty turns, fore-turns, and back-turns, you deliver your staff into your left hand, and wheel it with the

same hand on the same side, and after your recovery to deliver it into the right hand, performing of the same, and proceed.

9. FROM the right hand upon the left shoulder, raising it and turning with its back-turn into the neck; with its returns and lofty flourishes over the head, you deliver the colours into the left, and with the left hand upon the right shoulder you execute the same, delivering them into your right hand as first.

10. 'TIS by some termed the figure of eight; that is with the right hand the half wheel to the left side, and so back on the right side, and then delivering it into the left hand to performe the same.

11. To turn it round the head oftentimes upon the palm with your fingers of your right hand, so recovering it, with lofty flourishes you deliver it into your left hand to performe the same, and so delivering of them into the right hand.

AND if it be your pleasure to be compleat in the exercise of them, you go back to the tenth, and so conclude with the first.

AND in your conclusion, I have seen some to furl them up as they display them, and so to open them again, but to furl them up in the field is most ridiculous.

OTHERS there are, that I have seen to round them oftentimes about their middles, but I cannot justify it upon any military account.

OTHERS I have seen, that thinking to display their colours bravely, delivered them from hand to hand under leg; I must boldly inform such as use it, that 'tis a debasement to the captain's colours, and an unworthy act in the performers of it.

I TOLD you of some particular postures, and proper for the ensign-bearer to observe.

1. STANDING, when the body stands, you are to display the colours to and fro, in a direct circle, and changing from hand to hand, and no more, without you are commanded to shew the excellency of your parts; but be sure to be well guarded when you shall be so commanded.

2. IN marching, the posture is to display the colours with the right hand only, casting the ensign still forwards, waving it close over

and by the right shoulder, never crossing the body, but still keeping it flying on the outside of the right shoulder.

3. THE charging posture is to carry the staff extended straight forward before your body, waving it to and fro as high as your bosom, being ready to give the assistance or aid with the left hand for the preservation of your colours, or to offend the enemy if occasion require.

THE retiring or retreating posture is a mixture compounded of the three former, for in the first retreat, or drawing away of the company, he shall use the posture of marching: but if the enemy press near upon him, he shall stand upon his guard, and use the posture of charging; and in fine, having quit himself of danger, he shall use the standing posture a little, and then march or troop away, according to the directions of the commander.

AND lastly, when the ensign returns from the field, and is to be lodged; in former times the lieutenant had the van-guard; but that I shall not insist upon, because I have observed it to be left off by able soldiers.

THE captain leading them out of the field, and coming near the place intended to lodge his colours, converts the ranks of musqueteers of both divisions to the right and left outwards, and joyns them; and being so fixed, the body of pikes stand in the rear, and the ensign in the head of them, the captain before the colours with the drums, and serjants guarding the colours on each side, and the lieutenant behind the ensign-bearer, and all being advanced, shall troop up with the colours furled to his lodging or quarters, and as he approacheth thereto, he shall with a bow to his captain carry in his colours; then the word shall be given to all the musqueteers to make ready; that being done, they shall all present, and upon the beat of the drum, or other word of command, give one intire volley; and then command every officer to go to their quarters, and to be in readiness upon the next summons either by drum or command.

IT may fall out, that time will not permit this large circumstance; then the whole company being drawn up in a body shall troop up to

the place, where the enſign ſhall quarter, to ſee the colours ſafely lodged, which being effected, the muſquetteers ſhall with one entire volley diſcharge their muſquets, and ſo depart to their reſpective quarters; commanding all upon the next ſummons to be in readineſs, &c.

AND I might here adde the funeral poſture: if for a private ſouldier, the enſign is to march in his place on the head of the pikes, with the pikes trailing reverſed, but the colours furled and reverſed only: but if it be a commander that is to be interred, he is then to march juſt before the hearſe, with his colours reverſed, &c.



## NUMBER IV.

**A**LIST of the royal army intended to be raised for the recovery and protection of the Palatinate, consisting of 25000 foot and 5000 horse, 20 pieces of ordnance or artillery, as by his majesty's command it was consulted, advised and concluded on by a committee of lordes and others under their hands at Whitehall, London, Jan. 13, 1620, 18 January, &c.

At the Court at Whitehall, Januarie the 13th, 1620.

Lo. Arc. Bpp. of Canty.	Lo. Viscount Doncastre
Lo. Chancellor Bacon	Lo. Viscount Ffaulkland
Lo. Privie Seale	Lo. Carew
Lo. Steward	Lo. Digby
Lo. M. Hambleton	Mr. Treasurer
Lo. Chamberlaine	Mr. Secretary Nanton
E. of Arundel	Mr. Secretary Calvert
E. of Kelcye	Mr. Chancelor of the Exchequer
	Mr. of the Wardes.

HIS majestie having resolved to make some royal preparations for the recovery and protection of the Palatinate (being the antient inheritance of his majestie's sonne in lawe and grand children) did, in his high wisdom, thinke meet to appoint some persons of knowledge and experience in the warres to consider and give their advice in such propositions as shall be made unto them from the counsel board for the better expediting of that service.

To which purpose the Earle of Oxenford, and the Earle of Essex, both lately returned from the Palatinate, the Earle of Leicester, the Lo. Viscount Wilmot, the Lo. Danvers, the Lo. Caufield, Sir Edd. Cecil, and Sir Richard Morrison, Knts. and Captayne John Bingham ;

were called to the table and made acquainted with his majesty's pleasure that they, or any five or more of them, with Sir Horace Vere and Sir Edward Conway, knights, if they returned into England while the committee shall continue, shall undertake that service, and have their meetings and assemblies in the old council chamber at Whitehall, touching the affairs above-mentioned. And that for their better assistance they call unto them such others of experience, whose advice and opinion they shall think meete to make use of in their severall consultations upon such things as shall be soe referred to them from the Board, which they are to prosecute without intermission or delay, until they shall make report of their opinions, which is to be done in writing under five of their hands at least; which is accordingly done as hereafter followeth.

THE particulars offered to their considerations were these :

I. WHAT proporcion or number of men, as well horse as foote, with munition, victuall, shippinge, and treasure, will be sufficient for that enterprize.

II. By what time it will be meete that these forces be in readines, and where the armyes, munition, and victuall may best be provided; together with such other circumstances as are incident to any of these heades, for their better directions therein Mr. Secretaryes will acquaint them with such intelligence as they have received touching the strength of the enemyes forces, now in the Palatinate.

XIth Feb. 1620.

The LIST of a ROYALL ARMY, consisting of twenty-five thousand foote, five thousand horse, twenty peeces of artillery, and all other habillaments and utensels of warre for such an enterprize soe difficult and remote; with our opinions and estimate of every perticular sett downe accordinge to the limits of your lordships directions, and grounded upon such advertisements of the enemyes strength, as wee have received from the secretaryes of state.

THE allowance of officers, and all entertainments unto this army, are extracted from the diversitie of former presidents in the severall

employments of our own nation, and onely supplied by the best institutions now in practice, where they have been defective.

£. s. d.

FIRST. The charge of rayfing the said 25000 foote for their apparell and arms, viz. 20000 pikes and muskets, at 3l. 10s. a man; and 5000 calivers at 3l. 6s. a man, abateing all dead payes, will amount to the sume of - - - - - 77836 8 0

The charge of rayfinge of 5000, viz. 3500 currafeers at 30l. a piece, and 1500 carbynes at 20l. a peece, all dead payes being likewise abated, will amount to the sum of - - - - - 126900 0 0

The charge of transportinge of 25000 footmen to the most convenient places of landing in the river of Maize, used by the states in the low countreyes for landing there foldiers in like expeditions, at 4s. the man, will amount to the sum of - - - - - 5000 0 0

The charge of transportinge 5000 horsemen to the same place at 18s. a peece for horse and man, will amount to the sum of - - - - - 4500 0 0

THE twentie pieces of greate ordnance before-mentioned; two mortar pieces for fireworks, must be all mounted upon field carriages with four wheelles, and lymmers, fully compleate, and to be furnished and attended with spare carriages and wheelles, blocke carriages, copper ladles furnished with spunges and rammers, and with all other habillaments and utensells of warre, and with many other small provisions which are soe necessary for the trayne of artillery, that without them they can neither march nor be used. To which alsoe must be added some proportion of small provisions for the supply of the army.

THEN follows in this state paper particulars of all the charges, pay, and allowances of the officers and foldiers, the military utensils of all kinds, the receipts for fireworks, list of spare provisions, &c. which we think too uninteresting to lay before the reader.

## NUMBER V.

*Respecting the Paymaster-General.*

THE officer appointed to pay the troops was styled treasurer of war; he had under him divers clerks, who paid particular bodies; their pay in the time of Edward I. was 1s. per diem. What was the pay of the treasurer is not mentioned, the clerks paying artificers had only 6d.

IN the 6th of Henry IV. the Lord Furnivall and Sir John Pelham were treasurers of the wars, and certain persons were appointed to audit their accounts.

A. D. 1548, 1st of Edward VI. from Patin's account of the expedition to Muffelborough in Scotland under the Duke of Somers, we learn that Syr Raufe Sadelyr, knight, was treasurer of the army, but what were his allowances for that office is not there mentioned.

A. D. 1587, 29th Elizabeth, Sir Thomas Shirley, knight, was appointed treasurer of the army in the Low Countries, with allowance of 1l. 6s. 8d. per diem for his own diet. For his vice-treasurer 10s., and for three paymasters 6s. 8d. per diem each, with allowance for portage of ten pounds in the thousand, out of all such sums as should come into his hands, with all such profits and advantages as were enjoyed by the late treasurer, Richard Huddleston, Esq. In the 39th of the same reign, William Meredith, Gent. was appointed to the same office, under the title of paymaster; he was bound to find security for the sums with which he should be entrusted.

IN Rymer, A. D. 1638, 14 Charles I., is the king's commission appointing Sir William Uvedale, knight, treasurer of war for the army intended against the Scots, with an allowance of 40s. per diem for his own diet, and for all such sums of money as should pass through his hands the hundredth penny, to be paid by those who received money

of him ; for a deputy 6s. 8d. per diem, four clerks each 2s., and one messenger at 12d. per diem.

THE next year another commission was issued, when the allowance for money passing through the hands of the paymaster was raised from the hundredth penny, or 1l. in the hundred, to 12l. 10s. for every thousand pounds coming into his hands, for portage money. His own daily pay for diet was the same as before, but he was allowed two deputies, six clerks, and one messenger, all paid as before.

THE salaries and allowances of the paymaster general of the year 1782, are stated in the sixth report of the commissioners appointed to examine the public accounts of the kingdom, presented in that year.

THE paymaster general (it is there said) is appointed by letters patent under the great seal, during pleasure ; he receives four annual allowances as paymaster general of the forces, and one as treasurer of Chelsea hospital : the four are, three thousand pounds as the particular salary belonging to his office ; one thousand seven hundred and sixty pounds for the payment of clerks ; six hundred pounds for contingent expences of his office, and twenty shillings a day as one of the staff upon the establishment ; the other allowance is twenty shillings a day as treasurer of Chelsea hospital. The amount of these allowances is six thousand and ninety-two pounds : out of which he paid for himself and officers in taxes nine hundred and sixty-two pounds nineteen shillings and nine pence ; to clerks one thousand seven hundred and seven pounds ; and for the contingent disbursements of his office three hundred and sixty pounds seven shillings and eight pence, making together three thousand and thirty pounds seven shillings and five pence ; which reduced his clear receipt to three thousand and sixty-one pounds twelve shillings and seven pence.

AMPLE as this allowance may appear, it makes but a small part of the emoluments of a paymaster general, in comparison with those accruing from the large sums constantly remaining in their hands, and the vast balances retained by them for many years, even after they have resigned their offices. “ We procured (say the commissioners before mentioned), from the Pay-office, accounts of the balances and

fums received and paid every year by each of these paymasters (n) since they went out of office; a computation of interest at 4 per cent. per annum upon these balances every year, from six months after they severally resigned the office, proves that the loss by the money left in the hands of Lord Holland amounts, at simple interest, to 248,394l. 13s.; of Mr. Charles Townshend to 24,247l. 3s.; of Lord North and Mr. Cooke to 18,775l. 3s.; of Mr. Cooke and Mr. Thomas Townshend 3,419l. 15s. Total 294,836l. 14s.

THE deputy paymaster has a clear yearly income of 962l. 10s. He is appointed by the paymaster general, who has the nomination of all the officers and clerks employed in his office.

THERE are besides in the paymaster general's office the six following lucrative departments, whose net annual emoluments are thus stated in the before-cited report.

	£.	s.	d.
The cashier - - - - -	8,389	15	6
The accountant - - - - -	2,715	3	9
The ledger keeper - - - - -	529	16	0
The computer of off-reckonings - - - - -	1,038	5	6
The cashier of half-pay - - - - -	583	5	0
The entering clerk - - - - -	1,498	5	4

THE deputy paymasters abroad are paid an allowance; six of them thirty shillings a day, and three of them three pounds a day. They have besides many very considerable known fees and emoluments, besides private advantages.

---

(n) LORD HOLLAND resigned this office in 1765; Mr. Charles Townshend in 1766; Lord North and Mr. Cooke in 1767; Mr. Cooke and Mr. Thomas Townshend in 1768.

## NUMBER VI.

*The Report of the Committee of the House of Commons respecting the Cloathing of the Army, continued from p. 338. of the First Volume.*

## AGENTS.

WITH regard to agents, it appeared, that their allowance consists of a man per troop or company, and 2d. in the pound from the whole pay of the regiment; that the place of agent is sometimes a gift, but generally a purchase; that he is properly the colonel's clerk, and that it is at the colonel's option, whether he shall receive the whole, or any part of the agent's allowance, except the 2d. in the pound, being obliged to account to the colonel for the rest, if he thinks fit to reserve it for his own use, which seems to depend on the price paid for the agency.

## COMMISSARIES OF MUSTERS.

THE allowance upon the establishment for musters appeared to be as follows:

To the commissary-general of the musters, 469l. 7s. 6d. per annum; to one deputy commissary-general, 419l. 15s.; to six deputies in South-Britain, 1095l.; to one deputy in North-Britain, 182l. 10s.; to one for Jersey and Guernsey, 45l. 12s. 6d.; to one in the island of Scilly, 24l. 6s. 8d.; and for two clerks to the commissary-general, 91l. 5s; making in all 2327l. 16s. 8d. per annum: but of this sum 150l. per annum are paid out of the day's pay allowed to Chelsea Hospital, which reduces the charge nominally upon the establishment to the sum of 2177l. 16s. 8d.

THAT the pay of a deputy commissary was 10s. per diem, subject to the deduction of 5 per cent. for poundage, 2½ per cent. for the civil list, one day's pay for Chelsea Hospital, and 2d. in the pound to the agent; the neat pay amounting to about 160l. per annum: besides which, that

in general a gratuity of half-a-guinea was given by the captain of every company of foot, and a guinea by the captain of every troop of horse and dragoons at each muster in England; and a pistole for each troop, and half-a-guinea for each company abroad: but that this gratuity was sometimes refused when the troops were complete.

THAT each deputy commissary had his proper circuit, which he was to perform every two months; yet that often two, and sometimes three musters, were taken together.

#### WIDOWS' PENSIONS.

THAT when a widow applies for a pension, a certificate is required, signed by the colonel and agent of the regiment, to which her husband belonged; together with an affidavit of her own annexed; in which she swears, that she is the real widow of the officer mentioned in the said certificate. Whereupon the king grants a warrant, which is countersigned by the secretary at war, for the pension, agreeably to the regulation; and that when this is granted, the widow receives her pension clear, and without deduction. That as often as the widows receive their pensions, they are obliged to make oath (except in a few instances, where the oath has been dispensed with) that they continue the widows of such officers, and that they have no provision or other pension from the government, either in Great Britain or Ireland: which oath is all that is required of them if they come themselves; but that if they empower any other persons, by letters of attorney, to receive their pensions, those persons must bring a certificate from the minister and church-wardens of the parish where the widows live, certifying that such widows are living, and, to the best of their knowledge, continue the widows of such officers.

THAT 1s. in the pound is deducted out of all the receipts on this fund (from the treasury) for the paymaster's salary, amounting, one year with another, to 750l. per annum, out of which 200l. was usually paid to the under secretary at war, and 100l. to the deputy paymaster.

THAT the whole annual fund is issued to the pay-master within the



compass of sixteen months, and that the payments are made every four months, after eight are due, to those who demand them.

OF THE STOCK-PURSE, OR NON-EFFECTIVE FUND.

THE agent to the Duke of Montague's regiment of horse being examined in relation to the disposal of the vacant pay of private men wanting to complete, informed the committee, that it remains with the captain, and is applied, together with the pay of the two warrant men, to the recruiting fund, an account whereof is made up once a year; in which account credit is given on the one side for the vacant pay, and on the other the expence of horses and men raised within the year charged, and the balance, if there is any, is carried to the next year's account; but that, in time of service, the fund seldom answers the expence. That a general account is made up for the whole regiment, and then sub-divided to each troop; but that the exceedings in one troop are not applied to make good the deficiencies in another. That this account is made up by the agent, and delivered to each captain, after it has been shewn to the colonel, who inspects it, in order to see how each captain has recruited his troop; but that the colonel, as colonel, never meddles with the money arising from this fund, further than to see that it is properly disposed of; and this is not the colonel's personal account, but belongs to the regiment, to which the colonel is answerable.

THAT it seldom happens that the balance is considerable, either for or against the captain, because the fund allowed for recruiting is calculated to answer the common casualties; but when by extraordinary calamities, which have sometimes happened, the loss has been so great that it was not in the power of the captain to make it good out of his remounting fund, it was customary to represent the case to the king, who has ordered the deficiency to be made up, either by an allowance of a certain number of vacancies for a time specified, or (as is generally done in time of war) out of the fund for contingencies of the army. That the balance in favour of the captain sometimes amounts to between 40*l.* and 50*l.* for two or three years, and that it

is not in the colonel's power to apply that balance towards making up deficiencies in another troop: that this balance, in time of peace, is sometimes paid to the captain, by the colonel's order, when their troops have been compleated; but when it is not paid to them, it is reserved for future accidents. That he has known a balance paid to one captain, when the balance has been against the other captains of the same regiment; but that he never knew a balance paid to one captain when there was so great a deficiency in other troops that there has been a necessity to apply to the king, and believes the two cases never happened together. That the agent keeps the account of the two warrant men upon the establishment, and the allowances by the king, which account the agent credits for two shillings per man; but that he is not charged with inlisting men; nor does any account of the fund for that purpose come to his hands.

BESIDES the two warrant men on the establishment, it appeared that there is the pay of another vacant man allowed to each troop, and in some regiments two, towards the remounting fund.

THE agent to Sir John Ligonier's regiment of horse being examined in relation to the fund for remounting and recruiting, informed the committee, that the subsistence of one of the two vacant men per troop, allowed in that regiment, is reserved in the agent's hands, towards the remounting fund, and added to the subsistence of the two warrant men upon the establishment: but that the subsistence of the other vacant man is issued to the captain with his own subsistence, and no account of that comes to the agent. That the clerk of each troop keeps a particular account of the vacancies both of private men and horses, and gives the same to the commanding officer, who delivers it to the pay-master, from whence a general account is transmitted to the agent. That the agent makes up an account annually with each captain of the expence of remounting and recruiting his troop, and if there is a surplus in his favour, he sometimes receives it, and sometimes not, as the colonel pleases; but that it is never paid without the colonel's orders. That if the captains decline taking the surplus, as they sometimes do, it is carried to the next year's account; but that

the balance is as often against as in favour of the captains: that he believes the captains sometimes pay the balance when it is against them; but that if there is a surplus in favour of the captain of one troop, and a great balance against the captain of another, the surplus of the former is not applied to make good the deficiencies of the latter.

WITH regard to the stock-purse, or remounting fund in the several regiments of dragoons, it appeared, that the subsistence of three men and horses is reserved for that service, besides the two warrant men allowed upon the establishment; and that the money is disposed of as in the cavalry. That the captains keep that account themselves, and that no vacant pay goes to the colonel, it being all appropriated to the fund of the stock-purse.

THAT the fund for recruiting the regiments of infantry arises from the vacancies, being thence called the non-effective fund. That in time of war the pay of three vacant men is commonly allowed for recruiting, besides the two warrant men granted to each captain upon the establishment; but if any man is respited upon the muster-roll, then the two warrant men are both respited, there being in all establishments a warrant to respite those two men when the company is not full.

ANOTHER agent being examined in relation to the stock-purse and recruiting accounts, informed the committee, that in the regiments of horse those accounts are kept separately by each troop, but that in the foot the method of keeping the recruiting account varies, being sometimes a particular, and sometimes a general regimental account: and that to this account is carried the subsistence of the two warrant men upon the establishment, and the vacant pay of non-effectives. That abroad the commanding officer makes a return of the number of effective men to the commander in chief, whereby the number of non-effectives is ascertained, and thereupon the pay-master of the regiment is ordered to issue subsistence to the captains for the effectives only. That in some instances the pay-master keeps the vacant pay in his own hands, and in others he remits it to the agent, as a fund for

recruiting ; but that the usual method is for the pay-master at every muster to send an account of the non-effectives in each troop or company to the agent here, who acquaints the pay-master general with the sums necessary to be sent abroad for subsistence, and carries the remainder to the recruiting fund. That at home the agent receives the whole subsistence of the regiment, and generally issues it to the several captains, without keeping any account of non-effectives at all ; so that, in that case, there is no recruiting fund kept by the agent, but each captain recruits his own company as he can, and receives the subsistence of his warrant men with that of the rest of the company. That when officers are sent out to recruit in general for the whole regiment, they draw for the money wanted upon the agent ; and that each captain is debited in proportion to the number of men he receives, and the balance paid to him annually.

It appeared also that, in some regiments of foot, the regimental pay-master keeps the account of non-effectives ; and that in others the money is stopped by the colonel in the hands of the pay-master, and remitted back again to the agent.

## NUMBER VII.

*Copy of a Letter from Captain Phipps, Engineer, at Gibraltar, to Lieutenant Colonel Ramsay, of the 30th Regiment, dated May 17th, 1771.*

DEAR SIR,

AGREEABLY to promise I sit down to write a few lines relating to Healy's mortar; the 14th instant was at length fixed for trying that new invented pierrier; eight in the morning was the time ordered by the governor; South Port Gate was shut, and the three guards between that and the South Barracks retired out of harm's way; the general had referred the charge of the mortar, &c. to Colonel Philips; Healy stood out for 50 pounds of powder, but the colonel insisted that the first experiment should be with 27 pounds; proper paving stones were collected, and a detachment of artillery attended to assist in loading; after the powder was placed in the piece, a tompon, or bottom of wood, was carefully put to cover the charge, a copper tube conveyed the quick-match from the tompon to the centre; the stones were carefully put into the mortar, 1470 in number, the least a pound weight, and few exceeded  $1\frac{1}{4}$ lb.; a hollow cane well directed conveyed the quick-match through the stones to the copper tube, and upon the extremity was fastened a port-fire, to burn five minutes before the fire should reach the quick-match; when the port-fire was first lighted, and every one retired to a great distance, with various conjectures about the success of the machine, five minutes passed, ten minutes passed, no explosion! poor Healy very impatient; at length people approached nearer and nearer to inquire into the mortar's silence, when upon examination it was found that the port-fire had but half burned; by some accident it was choaked in the making: another was immediately applied, which had the desired effect; great

was the explosion; near a quarter part of the stones went into the sea, above 100 yards; to the right they extended as far as Ragged Staff, and to the left as far as the Watering Pier, but no damage was done; the cavity of the piece was searched, but no fracture could be seen, and what was surprising, the rock above that appeared so bad did not give way; it was fired a second time with the same charge, the success much the same as the first.

THE third time it was loaded with  $13\frac{1}{2}$ lb. (viz. half the former charge) and 1220 stones, when I suppose about 200 passed over the line wall; with these three discharges the eight-gun battery was covered over with stones; she spit her venom most there; after three experiments Healy received the congratulations of Colonel Boyd and all the officers upon the road; the general took his observations from the terras walk; the mortar has not received the least damage; its complexion is a little changed by the powder.

COLONEL BOYD who goes home in the Lizard, which fails the first Levantor, hopes to see you in London, to give you a particular account of the success of your friend Healy, who wished several times you were present: such a number of people assembled together, and gaping upon one spot, put me in mind of the mountain in labour: Dr. Monington was man-midwife, and many others had a finger in the pye; the delivery was not a mouse (according to the fable), but 1500 paving stones, and, by way of secundine, a large tompion, which made no small figure in the air. It may not be improper to remind you that the figure of the mortar is a parabolic conoid, length of the axis four feet, and the diameter of the bore at the muzzle thirty-six inches, and the solid content fourteen cubical feet.

I am, Sir, with great esteem,

Your most obedient,

and very humble servant,

J. PHIPPS.

As this letter is not perhaps explicit enough to gentlemen who have neither been at Gibraltar, nor have heard of the construction

and utility of this mortar, I shall endeavour to explain it a little further.

THIS mortar is cut out of a rock, which Mr. Healy pitched upon, about 200 yards higher than the level of the sea, and 400 yards horizontal distance from the line wall.

HE began by forming a plain surface of 45 degrees elevation, then bored a centre hole, or axis, four feet deep, and perpendicular to the said surface, from that centre, described a circle three feet diameter; the rock being so hard that he could not excavate it by chipping, was therefore obliged to bore holes all round the circle, each inclining to the centre, so that all those holes run into one another, and into the centre hole near its bottom.

THEN cutting away the partitions betwixt the holes, a core of a conical figure become loose, and was extracted, which core Captain Bentinck brought home in the Centaur; Healy's next care was to chip off that conoid, so as to form it into a true parabola, and then to polish it.

As the nature of a parabola is such, that either light or sound sent from its focus proceeds in parallel lines; so he concluded that the impetus given to any charge by the explosion of gunpowder would be also parallel; doubtless it would be so, but as his mortar was loaded brimfull of stones, those which lay close to the tompon being first impelled, must of course strike those before them variously, by which means, like billiard balls, the foremost must pursue the direction in which they were struck, whence their spreading to the right and left, a good distance, is obvious, and rather an advantage than otherwise, where a great body of men are supposed to be marching, or a great number of boats are attempting to land troops.

THIS mortar has no other chamber but the bottom of the parabola, nor touch-hole but the hollow reed and copper tube which convey the fire from the muzzle to the focus, down through the very centre of the stones and tompon; by this contrivance the copper tube terminating in the focus and centre of the powder, the whole being instantly kindled, acts more forcibly than when lighted on one side, as in cannon, mortars, &c.

THE utility of this mortar in defence of any pass is very evident, especially where it may be formed on a high ground not easily come-atable by an enemy, and the weight that each stone will fall with renders this a very terrible machine to invaders, and a very serviceable one to defenders; for by the same rule that one of three feet diameter can throw about 1500 weight of stones, what would one of six feet diameter do, and be easier made than the former, because labourers could go into the inside to chip and polish it.

ONE objection to such is, that it cannot be turned or traversed as may be requisite; in answer thereto, it is only calculated for a pass, and if taken by an enemy cannot be turned against its friends, which is too often the case of mortars and cannon.

WHEN there are rocks of any kind at the entrance of harbours, &c. such a mortar might be constructed, at a cheap rate, for the defence of our ships, &c.; and where there are no rocks, I have invented an artificial battery of such mortars that, with great safety to the defenders, and peril to the offenders, might be put in practice at every accessible place on our coast, and the mortars traversable as need required; but as we are at present more attentive to domestic than foreign enemies, this is not the season for guarding against the latter, therefore needless to propose it.

IF the above description of Healy's mortar be not sufficient to convey an idea of it to those who are not acquainted with parabolic curves, the inside of a common wine glass is nearly the figure of it; it is likely the book you mention may have given Healy the hint of this, which you will allow is a great improvement; on the same principle he has invented mines which, with a tenth of the powder, will do ten times more damage by blowing tons of stones and rubbish horizontally.

J. RAMSAY.



## NUMBER VIII.

A PATENT was granted by King Charles I. to William Drummond, of Hauthornden, in 1625, for the sole making and vending, for the space of twenty-one years, the following machines and warlike engines invented by him ; the patent is printed in his works.

THE first is an equestrian instrument, by which a single horseman may be equal in fight to five or six armed with the common arms, which instrument indeed agrees also most excellently with the foot service, and from effects not less terrible than speedy, is called the thundering staff; but from its various properties, the box pistol, box musquet, box carrabyn, or box dragoon.

THE second is a new kind of spear, with which any foot soldier, besides using it as a pike, may discharge five or six guns ; this weapon may be named the projecting spear, or pike arquebus.

THE third is a sort of machine of conjugated muskets, by the assistance of which one soldier or two are enabled to oppose an hundred guns, which machine, from its effect, is called the thundering chariot, and vulgarly the fiery waggon.

THE fourth is a new species of gun of the greater kind, by the assistance of which, in the same time that they have been able to discharge one ball, they may now discharge three, four, or five, and that either in a land or sea engagement. Of this machine there are different figures and sizes ; but from the common property of all, they may be called by the general name of the open cannon, vulgarly the open ordnance.

THE fifth and sixth are of the mortar kind, of which one, from its remarkable use in defending walls and ships, and from its wonderful expedition, is called the flat scourer. The other, which is extremely useful in naval fights, for breaking the masts, yards, and oars, whence it is called the cutter.

THE seventh is a machine not unlike the species of the ancient Heliopolis, accommodated to the modern discipline for defending a fortress, and also for attacking one; by the assistance of it the besiegers may enter into the inner part of a city or fortification, or over a ditch, without the use of rolling mounts; and in the defence of a city, the fortification may be so strengthened by the use of this machine, as it shall never be taken or demolished, and it will stand free on the curtain. This from its likeness to a cavalier, and because it carries a number of soldiers, and has the power of motion, may be vulgarly called the elephant or cavalier errant (o).

THE ninth a new kind of ship that cannot be prevented by chains or barricades, or the force of any cannon, from entering any port, and either burning or taking all the vessels therein; this vessel, from its stupendous manifest and terrible effects, and horrid demolition of ports and vessels, deserves to be called the Leviathan.

THE tenth is an instrument serving to observe the proportional intensity and remission of winds, whereby the sailor is instructed with more certainty to take the just measure of his voyage, wherefore it is called the sea measurer.

THE eleventh is a kind of light vessel, which with sails and oars is carried with great celerity against the wind, for any time, and for velocity will outgo any ordinary vessel, and thence called the sea postillion.

THE twelfth is a certain instrument whereby the course of a vessel is exactly measured, and the difference of longitude of places either on the coast or at sea are determined: it is called the length compass.

THE thirteenth is an instrument whereby a quantity of salt water is rendered sweet and drinkable at a small expence; it will make every day a sufficient quantity of sweet water for the day's consumption, so that putrefaction by keeping it is not to be apprehended: this is called a ship fountain.

---

(o) THIS is printed from a manuscript; the eighth article is wanting, and I have not been able to obtain a printed copy of the book.

THE fourteenth contains burning glasses of different kinds, with which at any distance any combustible matter, whether on land or sea, may be set on fire, to which no guns are equal. These from various conic-sections, concave and convex, and other curvilinear superficies, and those variously combined, will burn both by reflection and refraction; and as the honor belongs to Archimedes, they are called Archimedean mirrors.

THE fifteenth comprehends a kind of perspective or telescope, by the assistance of which an object, the light being thrown on it, will appear as plainly and vividly at any distance, as if viewed in the ordinary manner at a proper distance: this is vulgarly called the lynx's eye.

THE sixteenth is an organised machine, from natural causes producing an unremitted and perpetual motion, the use of which, from its different principles, may be a great benefit to various mechanical operations: it is called the mover.

THIS patent was dated at Hampton Court, the 29th day of September, 1626, and sealed Holy-rood-house.

## NUMBER IX.

*List of the Military Establishment of England for 1684.*

THIS list was given at large in the Appendix to the last edition: a collection of obscure names can be no illustration to this work; we shall therefore confine ourselves to a summary enumeration of the forces then established.

THE first is the royal band of gentlemen pensioners, commanded by the Earl of Huntingdon; they consisted of a captain, a lieutenant, and a standard-bearer, with forty private gentlemen.

THE next is his majesty's body-guard, commanded by Lord Viscount Grandison; they were one hundred yeomen, under a captain, lieutenant, and ensign; fifteen of the hundred were subaltern officers, or yeomen ushers.

A TROOP of king's own horse-guards, consisting of two hundred men, besides officers and their grenadiers, commanded by the Duke of Albemarle.

THE queen's troop of horse-guards, commanded by the Honourable Sir Philip Howard: sixty-four private men, besides officers and their grenadiers.

THE duke's troop of horse-guards, commanded by the Earl of Feverham; the same in establishment and number with the queen's.

THE royal regiment of horse-guards, commanded by the Earl of Oxford, consisting of eight troops of fifty men each, besides officers.

THE king's own royal regiment of dragoons; six troops of fifty men each, besides officers.

Two regiments of foot-guards; the first composed of twenty-four, the second of twelve companies.

THE first, or royal regiment of foot, consisting of twenty-one companies.

THE second, or queen's regiment of foot, consisting of ten companies.

THE Duke of York and Albany's regiment of foot, consisting of twelve companies.

THE Holland regiment of foot, consisting of twelve companies.

THE Duchess of York and Albany's regiment of foot, consisting of ten companies, besides the company of grenadiers.—Some of the other regiments had additional companies of grenadiers attached to them. There were also other independent companies not regimented. The whole of this force was reviewed on Putney-heath, the 1st of October, 1684; and consisted in all of about 4000 men, commanded in chief by the Earl of Craven.

## NUMBER X.

*Of the Scots Brigade formerly in the Service of Holland.*

**ALTHOUGH** the Scots brigade in the service of the republick of Holland does not, strictly speaking, come within the plan of this work, yet as British soldiers who have nobly supported the honour of their country among foreigners, it is hoped the following short account of them will be favourably received.

**ABOUT** the year 1570, the fame of the low country wars, and the great name of the prince of Orange, caused in many Scotch gentlemen of martial spirit a desire to study the art of war under him; they therefore went over to Holland, carrying with them a number of their countrymen, who were formed into independent companies: among these gentlemen were many of the first families in Scotland, such as Balfour, Lord Burley, Scott, Earl of Buccleugh, Preston of Gorton, Halkett of Pitferran, many of the different families of the name of Stewart, Hay, Sinclair, Douglas, Graham, Hamilton, &c.

**THESE** troops signalized themselves on all occasions, and were much respected and depended on by the States; and in 1594, at the return of their ambassadors from Scotland, where they had been to compliment King James on the birth of his son, they carried back with them 1500 recruits for their Scotch companies, who were probably now, if not before, regimented.

**THESE** troops suffered much at the siege of Bommel, in 1599; at the famous battle of the Downs, near Newport, in 1600; and at the siege of Ostend, in 1601; gaining in the whole so much honour, that at the siege of Bois-le-Duc, in 1629, Frederick Henry, Prince of Orange, filed them the Bullwark of the Republick; there were then three regiments, namely, Scott's, Buccleugh's, and Halkett's.

AFTER the death of Prince William II. in 1690, the affairs of the republick were in great disorder, parties ran high, and the army was much neglected, and particularly the Scotch brigade, who having nobody to protect them, had a number of Dutchmen, Germans, and French refugees, by the interest of different burgo-masters, made officers among them, which entirely dispirited them; so that in divers engagements in the years 1675 and 1676, they did not behave themselves with their accustomed gallantry, at which King William being surprized and displeas'd, ask'd General Mackay, then lately come into his service from France, if he was not much hurt and ashamed at the behaviour of his countrymen, the Scotch brigade, and if he could conceive the reason of their being so much degenerated from what they were when serving in the army of Gustavus Adolphus, and commanded by the Lord Ræ.

MACKAY, as much piqued as the prince, begged leave to observe, that this corps, though called the Scotch brigade, was, in reality, a mixture of deserters and out-casts from all nations; and that in promotions to commissions, the preference had been given to Dutch, Germans, and Frenchmen; the young Scotch officers and cadets had therefore left the service, and prevented others coming into it as volunteers, and the old private men, not being commanded by their countrymen, had many of them deserted; but that if his highness would dispose of the foreign officers in the national or new levied regiments, and replace them with Scotch gentlemen of family, and raise Scotch recruits, he would answer that the corps would be as good as ever.

IN 1688, this brigade was demanded of the States by King James, but they refused to send them back, whereupon he issued a proclamation requiring them to return home, on pain of being declared rebels to their country; the revolution being then on foot, this proclamation produced no effect; but the brigade soon after came to England in support of King William; they were then commanded by General Mackay: by this circumstance it does not appear that these troops were raised under any formal treaty, but rather that they were tacitly connived at.

AFTER King William was made Stadtholder, General Mackay got the brigade put on a good footing, and formed the plan of their cloathing, pay, recruiting, &c. as it lately stood; but the price of every article of life having greatly increased since those regulations of their pay, it was by no means sufficient: the pay and perquisites of a colonel, at the highest, not exceeding three hundred and fifty pounds; that of a company, one hundred and forty pounds; and of a lieutenantancy, forty pounds per annum.

AFTER the peace of Aix la Chappelle, and the death of the Prince of Orange, the brigade suffered greatly by reduction and incorporation, and were, from ill-treatment, and neglect, by degrees dwindling to nothing, when the late rupture between England and Holland caused them entirely to quit the service of that ungrateful Republick.



## NUMBER XI.

*A Proclamation for the Use of the Bowe and Pike together in Military Discipline.*

A. D. 1633.  
 Pat. 9. Car. I.  
 p.º n. 9. dors. }

**W**HEREAS in former tyme bowes and arrowes have been found serviceable weapons for the wars, whereby great victories and conquests have been gotten, and by sundry statutes the use thereof hath been enjoyed; which statutes are still in force, and we expect that our subjects should conform themselves thereunto, knowing the exercise of shooting to be a means to preserve health, strength, and agility of body, and to avoid idleness, unlawfull disorders, drunkenness, and such like enormities and disorders, which are too frequent among our people.

AND whereas our loving subject, William Nead, an antient archer, hath presented unto us a warlike invention, of the use of the bowe with the pike together, whereby every pikeman may also be a bowman; which warlike service we, together with our counsell of state, and counsell of war, have seen exercised in military discipline, and we do approve the same to be serviceable and usefull in tyme of warr, and have, by our commissions under our great seal of England, authorized the said William Nead, and William Nead his son, whom he hath instructed, to teach and exercise our loving subjects therein: and to that end and purpose we do, by this our proclamation, signifie our will and pleasure; that the use and exercise of the bowe and pike together, shall be put together within this our realm of England, and dominion of Wales, that all our loving subjects who are fit to exercise arms, and especially the chief officers of our trayned bands, may be instructed therein, by such ways, and in such manner as shall be prescribed and directed by the said William Nead, and William Nead, or

either of them, and those whom either of them shall have sufficiently instructed and deputed in that behalf, at such convenient times and places as shall be appointed by the deputy-lieutenants, or justices of the peace in every county, mayors, bailiffs, constables, and other head officers in every city or town corporate respectively, so that the same may be done without prejudice or hindrance to general musters, trayning, or other publick affairs, willing and requiring them and every of them respectively, upon notice given by the said William Nead, and William Nead, or either of them, or by such others as by either of them shall be thereunto appointed; that they, or some of them, do from tyme to tyme prescribe and appoint convenient tymes and places for the exercise of this warlike service, and by warrant or such other ways and means as shall seem most meet unto them, to cause such of our loving subjects as aforesaid to be present at such tyme and place, there to be exercised and made perfect in the use of the bow and the pike together in military discipline.

AND that this our proclamation may take the better effect, we do hereby require and commaund all and singular deputy-lieutenants and justices of peace, mayors, bailiffs, constables, and all other our officers, ministers, and subjects whom it may concern respectively, that they and every of them be aiding and assisting unto the said William Nead, and William Nead, and persons deputed as aforesaid in the exercise and performance of the said premises, according to our will and pleasure herein declared, as they tender our pleasure, and will avoid the contrary at their perills.

GIVEN at our Court at Oateland, this 12th day of August.

Per ipsum Regem.

## NUMBER XII.

*New Regulations in the Office of the Paymaster-General.*

*Extract from the Report of the Commissioners of Public Accounts, 1781.*

THE public money in the hands of the paymaster-general is received by him, either from the exchequer, or from the treasury of Ireland, when Irish regiments are drawn out of that kingdom, and in part paid by Great Britain; or from persons who, upon their accounts being settled, are directed by the king's warrant to pay the balance into his hands.

THE present paymaster-general has no money in his hands received from the treasury of Ireland; all the accounts of the Irish regiments being made up, and their whole pay now borne by Great Britain. The sum in his hands arising from balances directed to be paid to him was, upon the 1st of February last, 8463l. 10s. 4d. The exchequer is the great source from whence he draws his supply.

THE supply for the army is granted by parliament to the king, and therefore no part of this supply can be issued from the exchequer without the royal sign manual authorizing such issue. After the supply is granted, there comes from the treasury to the pay-office the king's sign manual, directing the lords of the treasury to issue to the paymaster-general, a certain part of that supply (in time of war usually a million) by way of imprest, and upon account, according to such warrants and orders as either are, or shall be signed by the king. This sign manual, with the treasury warrant and order of the auditor of the exchequer, made in pursuance of the sign manual, after being entered in the pay-office, are lodged at the exchequer, and give the paymaster-general a credit there for the sum mentioned in those in-

struments. To obtain any part of this credit, the paymaster-general presents a memorial to the treasury, specifying the sum he requires, and for what service. The treasury, by letter, directs the auditor of the exchequer to issue that sum to the paymaster-general, upon the unsatisfied order above mentioned. This letter being produced, and passing through the forms of office, he obtains from them the sum he wants. When the sum in this sign manual is exhausted, another sign manual, with the consequential warrant and order, is obtained, and renewed in the same manner, from time to time, until there is occasion for the last sum, which completes the whole army supply of the year; when, instead of a sign manual, there comes a privy seal, directing the issue of that remaining sum, and including, authorizing, and confirming the whole supply of that year.

It was usual formerly for the paymaster-general to apply to the treasury every four months, each time for a third part of the sum voted for the services of the army, under the general head of pay and subsistence of the forces at home and abroad; but since the year 1759 the practice has been to ask of the treasury, from time to time, for the sums voted under distinct heads of service, and not until the time when the demands for the services are near approaching.

THE services are ranged under two general heads, the *ordinary* and the *extraordinary*. The ordinary are those for which specific sums are annually voted by parliament: the extraordinary are those which, though not provided for by parliament, are nevertheless considered as necessary, and therefore paid, in confidence of their being provided for in the succeeding session.

As the service is distinguished, so is the application for it to the treasury. Sums for the ordinary services are obtained upon the application of the paymaster-general himself: those for the extraordinary are directed into his hands, upon the application of others.

AFTER the supply for the pay of the army is voted by parliament, the secretary at war sends to the pay-office the four establishments for the year, which are:

1. THE guards, garrisons, and land-forces.

2. THE forces in the plantations, and the garrisons in North-America and the West-Indies.

3. THE forces in Minorca, and garrison of Gibraltar.

4. THE militia.

TOGETHER with the several regulations of the subsistence. The establishment contains the distribution of the whole sum voted amongst the several regiments, corps, garrisons, officers, and private men, by the day and by the year, and the gross sum allowed for each regiment, corps, and garrison. To each establishment are annexed two warrants, the one directing the paymaster-general to make a deduction of twelve-pence in the pound out of all he shall issue, called the poundage, and specifying to what service it shall be applied; the other directing a deduction of one day's pay, out of the payments in the establishment, for the use of Chelsea hospital.

THE application by the paymaster-general to the treasury for money is made under distinct heads of service; which may be comprehended under three heads:

1. THOSE services for which the whole sum received by the paymaster-general at the exchequer, is issued by him soon after he receives it.

2. THOSE, for which the sum he receives, belonging to particular persons, remains in his possession, upon account of the persons entitled, until they or their agents apply to him for payment.

3. THOSE for which a part only of the sum he receives is issued by him, soon after he receives it, and the remainder continues in his hands for any indefinite time.

OF the first class, where he soon issues all he receives, are the returned poundage; Chelsea hospital, and the out-pensioners; the subsistence of the forces in Jamaica and the East-Indies, and of the non-commission officers and private men in Africa; the subsistence and cloathing of the militia and invalids; the subsistence issued upon account; the stoppages of the officers; subsistence in the West-Indies, North-America, and garrisons of Gibraltar and Minorca; the general and staff officers and garrisons in Great Britain; the nett off-reckon-

ings; the allowances to the colonel, captain, and agent; the clearings; foreign subsidies; arrears of the foreign troops; levy-money; and all the extraordinaries. Under the head of subsistence of the forces at home, so much of the sum received, as the subsistence actually amounts to, is issued to the agent, as soon as he receives it.

OF the second class are, the reduced officers; and, under the several heads of the garrisons abroad, the general and staff-officers, and hospitals: so much of the sums voted for these services, as is contained in each warrant for the pay of the officers named in the certificate, remains in his hands until those officers or their agents apply for it.

OF the third class, where he issues a part only of the sums he receives, are the subsistence of the forces at home; the subsistence of the non-commission officers and private men of the British forces in the West-Indies and North-America, and of the foreign troops; the garrisons abroad; and the general and staff-officers and hospitals abroad. Besides these, there are some other heads of service, to satisfy which he does not expressly apply to the treasury for money, but pays the demands for them out of what he has received under other heads of service. These are, the allowance to widows; some services to which the poundage is made subject by the king's warrant, and contingencies.

FROM the arrangement made of sums received by the paymaster-general from the exchequer it appears, that the balance in his hands (p) cannot consist of any sums comprehended in the first class; because of them he very soon issues all he receives: nor is it probable, that the sums in the second class can constitute any very considerable part of it; because it is not to be presumed that officers of any denomination will suffer their pay to continue long without applying for it, either by themselves or their agents.

---

(p) IN November, 1781, the balance of publick money in the hands of the paymaster-general was 447153l. 11s. 3<sup>d</sup>.; and his average monthly balance for seventeen months has been 869148l.

UNDER the denomination of subsistence for the forces at home, the paymaster-general receives more than that subsistence amounts to, with an intent of procuring thereby a fund for certain payments not specifically applied for by him, and therefore otherwise unprovided for. He receives subsistence upon the full establishment of the non-commission officers and private men of the British forces in North-America, and part of the West-Indies, and of the foreign troops; but as these regiments must be incomplete, and the deputy paymasters there issue subsistence according to the strength only of the regiment, he does not remit to them the whole he receives, but so much only as, from the last accounts they send him of the state of the balances in their hands, he judges will be sufficient to enable them to carry on the publick service. This unissued subsistence of the British forces in the West-Indies and North-America, continues in his hands till the accounts of the several regiments are made up, when it falls into the clearings, and is issued to the agents; but this is not until fifteen or sixteen months after they become due. The unissued subsistence of the foreign troops remains with him till their arrears are paid to the agents, which time seems, from the account of the issues received from the treasury, generally to be about two years after they are due.

HE receives the whole sums voted for garrisons, staff, and hospital abroad; but the officers in these departments, named in the certificates from the war office, do not exhaust the whole sum voted.

HENCE arises a fund composed of these savings, out of which he issues for certain services, and defrays certain expences, without making any specific application for them to the treasury. These are, the allowance to widows; some of the payments to which the poundage is made applicable by the king's warrants; and the miscellaneous head of contingencies.

To demands for these services, and to no other (except such claims for the pay of the general and staff-officers, and officers of the garrisons and hospitals abroad, and of the reduced officers, as remained unsatisfied), was this balance liable on the day of its date. Nothing had been issued for the allowance to widows in the year 1780; for

enough remained of former receipts in the hands of the paymaster of the widows' pensions to carry on that service; and therefore this balance was not liable to be reduced by any issue under the head of allowance to widows. The payments out of the poundage and hospital, and for the contingencies in the year 1780, could not be ascertained, because some of the warrants had not been produced for payment, and therefore the accounts could not be made up; we must allow it then to be the same with that of the last year, in which these accounts were made up at the office, which are of the year 1778.

THE payments out of the poundage, and one day's pay, consist of salaries to officers, exchequer fees, returned poundage, and Chelsea hospital; the whole amount of which for this one year is 114265*l.* 10*s.* 2*d.* The articles of exchequer fees, returned poundage, and Chelsea hospital, though placed to this account, are not demands upon this balance. The exchequer fees for every sum are always paid at the exchequer out of the sum at the time it is received; the paymaster-general debits his cash with the whole sum he applies for, and credits it for the fees; and therefore the only alteration made in his cash is an increase by the sum he asks, deducting the exchequer fees. The other two services being applied for under their specific heads, he receives a sum with one hand, and issues it with the other: and therefore these three articles, amounting to 97912*l.* 7*s.* 6*d.* being deducted from the total, leaves the sum of 16353*l.* 2*s.* 8*d.* only, as a charge upon this balance; which sum consisting chiefly of salaries, for the most part paid quarterly soon after they become due, leaves claim to a very small amount indeed to be satisfied out of this balance.

THE contingent expences consist of a variety of articles, amounting to 24914*l.* 19*s.* 8*d.* This account never either much exceeds, or comes much under 24000*l.* the sum voted for the contingencies upon the establishment at home and abroad; for so much of these payments as exceed the sum voted, are carried to the account extraordinary. These articles being paid, some quarterly, some half-yearly, and some yearly, no very considerable part of them can probably remain unpaid at the end of the eleventh month of that year, and cannot



therefore be a charge upon this balance on the 28th of November, 1780. Hence it follows, that supposing the amount of the claims for these services in 1780 not to exceed their amount in 1778, the claims for these services upon this balance, upon the 28th of November, 1780, was so much only of the sums of 16353l. 2s. 8d. and 24914l. 19s. 8d., making together 41268l. 2s. 4d., as had not been applied for and satisfied during the first eleven months of that year; and therefore we think ourselves well grounded in an opinion, that the sum of 447153l. 11s. 3<sup>3</sup>/<sub>4</sub>d. in the hands of the paymaster-general of the forces upon the 28th of November last, was greatly more than was necessary to answer the claims upon him at that time for the service of the army.

AN account being produced from the pay-office of the balance in the hands of the present paymaster-general on the 31st of December, 1768, and at the end of each succeeding year to the 31st of December, 1780, inclusive, it appeared that the average yearly balance, for twelve years, has been 585898l.

It appeared also, that the paymasters keep this balance for a considerable length of time after going out of office. That of four paymasters-general, each, upon quitting the office, took with him the sum then in his hands; and that their balances were very considerable twelve years after their resignation. Lord Holland's balance, the Christmas after he quitted the office in 1765, was 460,000l.; in the year 1778, at the time his representatives paid back into the exchequer 200,000l., it was 450,000l.; and upon the 27th of September last it was 256,000l.; so that during a period of fifteen years after he was out of office, it suffered very little diminution from any claims whatever.

ACCORDING to the present course of business in this office, upon the resignation of a paymaster-general, his accounts of the year's establishment are carried on to the 24th of June, or the 24th of December, preceding or subsequent to his resignation, as is most convenient to the public service. When it is subsequent, he receives from the Exchequer, though out of office, his proportion of the supply of the

year to that time, and applies it in discharge of the demands upon the service, which accrued down to that period. But of these demands some do not come in a course of payment; others are not applied for till some time after they are due; neither the nett off-reckonings nor the clearings, which are the last payments on account of a regiment, are discharged till fifteen or sixteen months after they become due; the general, staff, and reduced officers do not all apply immediately for their pay; warrants for contingencies are frequently not produced until several months after they are payable; and the paymaster-general has deputies in various parts of the world, whose accounts he must have time to adjust: it is therefore convenient, and prevents trouble to the office, that his business should be carried on, and so much of the publick money as is necessary for that purpose continue in his hands for some short time afterwards; and if the balance be confined within its proper bounds, whilst he is in office, the interest of the publick will not be materially affected by the detention of a moderate balance, for a few months after his resignation.

WAS the paymaster-general to retain his balance until his accounts are finally adjusted, the publick would be kept out of their money to a very distant and uncertain period. It is sixteen years since Lord Holland resigned, and his accounts are still in the office of the auditors of the imprest unsettled. A late paymaster-general had been in office thirteen years; and the first three years and a half only of his accounts are sent into that office, and in their first stage. Being accustomed to go in one track, long inattention to the methods of expediting business, added to a great increase of it, have produced long arrears in the departments both of the paymaster-general, and the auditors of the imprest. It requires, and there ought to be, an extraordinary exertion in both offices to bring the accounts forward, and to introduce and establish that order and regularity, in making them up and keeping them, which should be strictly adhered to in every office of account. To obtain and preserve an accurate and competent knowledge of the state they are in, they should be made up and balanced once a year, to a certain stated time, and as soon as

may be after that time is elapsed. But the time it takes to complete the payment of certain services, and the manner of carrying on some branches of the business in this office, are impediments to such a regulation, and seem not well calculated either for perspicuity or expedition.

THERE are certain services for which no specifick sums are appropriated, either by the vote of parliament, or by the distribution in the establishment; but they are paid out of funds compounded of a great variety and number of articles, subtracted from various gross sums, either voted or allotted for certain purposes. These services are, Chelsea hospital, the allowance to widows, the cloathing of the regulars, exchequer fees, and salaries to certain officers. One of these funds is the poundage, which consists of various deductions of 12d. in the pound upon almost every individual sum (except the half-pay, from which the deduction is only 6d. in the pound) voted, or allotted by the distributions in the establishments, for the army services: out of this fund are paid, 1st. the returned poundage; that is, this very deduction, thus made, is paid back to a certain part of each corps; so that this part of it seems deducted for no other purpose but that of returning it back again: 2dly, a part of this poundage is applied towards the expences of Chelsea hospital: 3dly, the remainder pays the exchequer fees, salaries of the paymaster-general, and other officers.

THE expences attending Chelsea hospital are paid out of two funds, blended together. The one is part of the poundage above mentioned: the other is formed of the deductions of one day's pay of every person named in some of the establishments, and of some of the persons named in other of the establishments. To form this fund, and that of the poundage, and to make these several deductions, is the business of the pay-office.

ONE effect of these operations is, that in making up the state of every regiment in the pay-office, the sum allotted for its pay in the establishment must consist of six parts; the poundage, the hospital, the subsistence, the allowance to widows, the off-reckonings, and the

clearings, and sometimes respites. This state, besides the business it creates in the pay-office, must be examined, computed, and signed by the agent; for he receives the clearings, which is the balance due to the regiment; the truth of which balance depends upon the justness of the calculation of the other divisions. It must be examined into, and computed by the auditor of the imprest: for the paymaster-general taking credit on his account for the whole pay of each regiment, and furcharging himself with the total amount of the deductions of the poundage, hospital and widows, in every year, the auditor cannot know the accuracy of the surcharge, without an examination of each article that composes it.

To persons accustomed to the course of office, these computations are easy and familiar: but they certainly must take up time; an object, considering the present state of the army accounts, worth attending to. If, instead of these deductions, certain specific, distinct sums were estimated and set apart for those services in the establishment; if distinct accounts were kept of the receipts and payments, under each head of service; if the cloathing of the regulars were voted like the cloathing of the militia, separate from the establishment; if the sum allotted to a regiment should be the actual pay, and the whole of it be distributed among the officers and private men, and paid to them without deduction, at such times, and in such proportions as might be deemed best for the service; if every distinct service had its distinct appropriation, which can be easily estimated by the experience of preceding years; it should seem, this branch of the pay of the army might be carried on in a more simple, expeditious, and intelligible manner.

IN consequence of the above report, an act was passed in 1783, by which it is enacted (in order to prevent the abuses which have hitherto prevailed, and particularly to obviate the circumstance of an enormous balance remaining in the hands of the paymaster-general, for many years after his leaving his office), That whenever money is wanted for the services of the army, the paymaster-general is by a memorial, delivered to the treasury, to state the particular sums wanted, and to

pray that they may be issued to the governor and company of the Bank of England on his account. On receiving this memorial, the commissioners of his Majesty's treasury for the time being are to direct the auditor of the Exchequer to issue the sum required to the officers of the Bank, in the same manner as they have heretofore been issued to the paymasters-general; and all such monies so issued are to be placed to an account kept in the books of the governor and company of the Bank of England, entitled, *The Account of the Paymaster-General of his Majesty's Forces*; and the name of the paymaster-general for the time being specified: so that henceforward no money is to be paid immediately from the Exchequer into the hands of the paymaster-general; but that officer, or his deputy, is to draw occasionally for all army services upon the Bank; inserting in his drafts the heads of service to which the sums therein mentioned are to be applied.

IN the first memorial of each month to the Treasury, the paymaster-general is to specify the balance of publick money then lying in the Bank on his account; which balance, on the death or removal of a paymaster, is to vest in his successor. He is also to make up an annual account from the 24th of December to the 24th of December following, of the ordinary and extraordinary services of the army, entitled, *The Account of the Paymaster-General of his Majesty's Forces*, to be signed and attested by every paymaster-general, who may have paid or discharged any part of the said account. This account is to be transmitted, together with proper vouchers, to the auditor of the imprest, who is within six months to examine it; and if found satisfactory, to present it to the proper officer for declaration; after which, an acquittance in the usual form is to be given to the paymaster.

THIS act very properly abolishes all fees, for business done, to officers, clerks, or servants, in the paymaster-general's office.

## NUMBER XIII.

*New Regulations relative to the Cloathing.*

**A**N order was issued from the war office, April 9, 1800, establishing the following regulations.

IN every regiment of infantry of the line or fencibles, serving in Europe, North-America, or the Cape of Good Hope (Highland corps excepted), each serjeant, corporal, drummer, and private man, to have, annually, for cloathing, a coat, a waistcoat, or waistcoat front, a pair of breeches unlined, a cap made of felt and leather, with a brass plate, conformable to an approved pattern: the felt crown of the cap, cockade, and tuft, to be supplied annually; the leather part and brass plate every two years. And in lieu of the former articles of cloathing, called half-mounting, two pair of good shoes, of the value of five shillings and sixpence each pair.

SHOULD the price of good shoes at any time exceed five shillings and sixpence each pair, the difference, which is to be declared by the cloathing board, on or after the 25th of April in each year, is to be charged to the respective accounts of the non-commissioned officers and foldiers receiving them.

SEALED patterns of the cloathing, and shoes furnished in lieu of the smaller articles, are to be sent to and remain at the head-quarters of every corps of infantry abroad, as well as at home, in order that the new cloathing and shoes may be compared with them.

NON-COMMISSIONED officers or foldiers dying, or discharged before the completion of a whole year, from the usual day of delivering the annual cloathing of their regiment, have no demand whatever on that account.

COMMUTATIONS of money for cloathing are only to be made on particular occasions, and then with his majesty's approbation, through the commander in chief or secretary at war for the time being: and when his majesty approves the measure, the following sums, being the estimated amount of what the colonels would have paid to their clothiers, after a reasonable deduction for incidental charges, to which they are liable, are to be given to the men.

To each serjeant,	£.	s.	d.
Cloathing	2	18	0
Half-mounting	0	14	0
	<hr/>		
	3	12	0
	<hr/>		

To each corporal, drummer, and private,

Cloathing	1	5	6
Half-mounting	0	11	0
	<hr/>		
	1	16	6
	<hr/>		

THE cloathing of the army is henceforward to be viewed by two permanent inspectors of cloathing, instead of being viewed, as heretofore, by a general officer of the cloathing board; and for this purpose Lieutenant Colonel W. Wynyard, and Lieutenant Colonel Robert Anstruther, are appointed inspectors.

## NUMBER XIV.

*Respecting the late Changes in the Tactics, Exercise, &c.*

AFTER the revolution, our system of discipline was chiefly taken from the Dutch, who, under Prince Maurice, were the best regulated troops in Europe. Previously to this (such are the vicissitudes in the affairs of nations), the Spaniards were reckoned to have the best disciplined infantry. The exercise was, at the commencement of the century, and for many years afterwards, encumbered with a number of useless motions. The manner in which the soldiers were armed, with their heavy muskets, bandoliers, &c. obliged them to make wide motions, and to draw up with very extended ranks and files. The modern improved system is derived from Frederick, the father of the great King of Prussia. He was the first that caused the manual exercise to be contracted, and the motions performed close to the body. This new method came soon to be copied or imitated by other nations. About 1757 a new manual exercise was introduced into the British army, a good deal resembling the Prussian; and this exercise has of late been simplified and reduced to a smaller number of motions. The following are the motions of the present manual exercise.

1. Order arms, three motions.
2. Fix bayonets, one motion.
3. Shoulder arms, one motion.
4. Present arms, three motions.
5. Shoulder arms, two motions.
6. Charge bayonets, two motions.
7. Shoulder arms, two motions.

ABOUT the same time the evolutions, manœuvres, or field movements, which were various in different corps, and very numerous in



some, were reduced to one standard, and confined in number to eighteen.

THE purposes of these changes were stated in the regulations to be, the reconciliation of celerity with order; to prevent hurry; to insure precision and correctness; to inculcate and enforce the necessity of military dependence, and of mutual support in action; to adopt such motions only as are necessary for combined exertions in corps, rejecting what is only curious on parade; and to make utility, and not show, the principal object.

EACH battalion, consisting of ten companies, is drawn up from right to left as follows: First, the grenadier company; then the eight battalion companies; and lastly the light infantry.

THERE are no intervals between the companies; and they must be all equalized in point of numbers.

THERE are three ranks, which are at one pace distant from each other; besides a fourth, or supernumerary rank, which has three paces.

ALL the field-officers and the adjutant are mounted.

THE commanding officer is advanced in front, to exercise the battalion, when it is single; but in the march in line, and in the firings, he is in the rear of the colours.

THE lieutenant colonel is behind the colours, six paces from the rear rank; the major and adjutant six paces in the rear of the third and sixth companies.

THE colours are in the centre, as before, covered by three sergeants.

THE use of the fourth rank is to keep the others closed up to the front during the engagement, and to prevent any break beginning in the rear; on which account there should be as many officers and non-commissioned officers in it as may be spared.

THE pioneers are behind the centre, the musick behind the pioneers, the staff-officers behind the musick. The drummers of the eight battalion companies are assembled in two divisions, six paces behind the third rank of the second and seventh companies. The grenadier

and light infantry drummers fix paces behind their respective companies.

THE FILES are drawn up clofer than they formerly were ; fo that each foldier muft juft touch thofe on his right and left hand, and in all movements he muft preferve that touch, by which the whole drefs and move together.

RANKS have two diftances, the *open* and *clofe* ; the former are two, the latter one pace afunder. The open order is ufed only for infpection or parade.

THE fundamental order for the formation of infantry is three ranks, when in line, and clofed up ; two ranks, with open files, is only for light infantry : though when the battalions are upon a low eftablifhment, in time of peace, they may be exercifed in two ranks occasionally.

NEITHER the MUSICK NOR DRUMS are now ufed to regulate the march ; which is in three meafures : 1. *Ordinary time*, in which feventy-five paces are taken in a minute. 2. *Quick time*, in which there are one hundred and eight fteps in a minute. 3. *The quickeft time*, or *wheeling march*, is one hundred and twenty fteps of thirty inches each, or three hundred feet in the minute. This laft is ufed only for wheeling.

THE PLATOON EXERCISE has been altered, as well as the MANUAL ; but it was impoffible to reduce it, as the latter has been : it now confifts of the following words of command and motions.

1. Make ready, one motion.
2. Prefent, one motion.
3. Fire, one motion.
4. Handle cartridge, two motions.
5. Prime, three motions.
6. Load, three motions.
7. Draw ramrods, two motions.
8. Ram down cartridge, four motions.
9. Return ramrods, two motions.
10. Shoulder arms, one motion.

THE exercife is performed a little flow, three feconds being allowed between each motion. It is no longer done by fignals from beat of drum, but all by words of command.

THE infantry manœuvres, which were formerly fo numerous, are now reduced to eighteen; which are ordered to be practifed and performed in every regiment. The following are the movements, explanations of which and direCTIONS for performing them are given in the books of exercife.

1. Forming the battalion into clofe columns in the rear of the right company.
2. Clofe column in the front of the left company.
3. Clofe column on a central company, facing to the rear.
4. Changing pofition in open column.
5. Throwing back the wings.
6. Changing pofition by a counter-march.
7. Counter-marching by files on the centre of the battalion.
8. Marching in open column.
9. Echellon change of pofition.
10. Taking up a new line by the echellon movement.
11. Changing pofition to right or left.
12. Retreating in line.
13. Marching to a flank in echellon.
14. Forming the hollow fquare.
15. Retiring in line and filing.
16. Advancing in line, filing and charging to the front.
17. Retreating in line.
18. Advancing in line.

## NUMBER XV.

*Modern Improvements in Fortification.*

THE Author of this work has touched very slightly on the subject of fortifications, and has confined himself to a short account of those constructed in very remote ages. Vauban was the great inventor of the modern system; though other engineers have also made considerable improvements in the art.

VAUBAN'S fortifications were either regular or irregular polygons. Of a regular polygon all the sides are fortified in the same manner; each flank, face, and curtain, are of the same length, and the angles of the same degrees. The irregular polygon is sufficiently explained by the term itself:—it is used generally where there are natural advantages, or where the ground will not admit the regular method.

VAUBAN made another distinction in his works of fortification, as they were upon the large, the medium, or the smaller scale. The first was chiefly for towns and cities; the last for forts. He classed them as follows, according to the number of sides. 1. The square fort. 2. The pentagon. 3. The hexagon. 4. The heptagon. 5. The octagon. 6. The enneagon. 7. The decagon. 8. The hendecagon. 9. The dodecagon.

THE sides of these fortifications increased progressively in length, excepting the three first, which were of one hundred and eighty toises each, or three hundred and sixty yards. The sides of the dodecagon were three hundred and forty-six toises, or six hundred and ninety-two yards each. This multiplied by twelve, the number of sides, gives seven thousand three hundred and four yards for the whole circumference.

THOSE who wish to see the different systems of fortification, may find them all explained in Muller's works.

THE following is an enumeration of the principal writers on Fortification, some of whom were before Vauban, and some after him.

ERRARD, of *Bois-le-duc*, was the first who was known to have published a system of fortification. He served under Henry IV. of France.

MARROLLOIS soon after published a system after the Dutch method.

ANTOINE DEVILLE, who served under Lewis XIII., produced a complete treatise of fortification. He was the author of what, before Vauban, was called the French method.

COUNT PAGAN was also an eminent writer on fortification in the same reign. He came nearer to Vauban than any preceding engineer.

COEHORN, the great Dutch engineer, flourished at the same time with Vauban. There was great novelty and ingenuity in his plans of fortification; but they were best adapted to the country in which he served.

BLONDEL is another celebrated author on the same subject.

THE CHEVALIER DE ST. JULIAN has published another system, in which he attempts to improve upon Vauban.

THERE have been several other writers and compilers upon the same subject; among whom the most remarkable is M. de Montalembert, who condemns altogether the system of Vauban, and thinks bastions, the ground-work of his methods, wholly unnecessary.

THE only regular fortifications in England are to be seen at Portsmouth; if we may except that old erection of the last century, Tilbury Fort.

## NUMBER XVI.

*Horse-Artillery.*

IN addition to what was said of this institution and its introduction into the British army, we subjoin the following accounts from two recent publications.

“ THE principles of this new artillery is, that it is organized in such a manner as to perform movements the most rapid and the most unexpected. Thus it can proceed with celerity either to a point threatened by the enemy, or a post which, by a decisive attack, it is intended to carry; follow the horse every where, if needful, and crush the enemy by the combined effect of all the means of attack and defence which the theory of the military art, judgment, and experience, can suggest.

“ IN the campaigns of 1757, 1758, and 1759, against the Russians, it often happened that the Prussian light horse, at the very moment when they imagined themselves to be sure of success, met with a battery of cannon, though no infantry were present, which led them to suppose that the Russians had horse-artillery, able to follow all the movements of the horse. The fact being ascertained, Frederick the Great introduced this artillery into his army in the spring of 1759, at his head-quarters at Reichennendorff, near Landshuth, where every morning he exercised this new corps himself, and directed its manœuvres. The king also made a successful trial with his horse-artillery, before he left that camp, by covering it with a reconnoitring party beyond Liebau, on the retreat of his dragoons, in a manner so effectual, that all the attacks of the enemy's horse, though far superior in number, completely failed.

“ THE Austrians were the first who instituted this new military

establishment: in 1783 they manœuvred with horse-artillery near Prague; and since that time it has been introduced into the British, Swedish, Saxon, and Hanoverian armies; yet with considerable difference as to the calibre of the ordnance, and the way of mounting the artillery-men. The Prussian horse-artillery consists of six-pounders, the Austrian of light three-pounders, the Hanoverian of heavy three-pounders, the Danish of one-pounders, &c. The Prussian artillery-men are on horse-back; the Austrian ride on the carriages of the guns; the Hanoverian ride partly on horse-back, partly on the gun-carriages, wursts, &c.

“ BUT no European power has hitherto derived such important advantages from this new artillery as France, where it was introduced in the year 1792, and soon carried to great perfection. In order to give it the advantage of a superior fire, the French flying or horse-artillery consists of eight-pounders, and six-inch howitzers; the ammunition is carried in light caissons, and most of the artillery-men are mounted, whilst others ride on the wursts. By this arrangement, in addition to the known abilities of the French cannoneers, the Republican horse-artillery soon acquired a decided superiority over that of the Austrians, and has maintained it during the whole war.”

*Of the original Formation of the Horse-Artillery in France, in 1791  
and 1792.*

“ MONS. Duportail, minister at war, in the year 1791, signified the king's pleasure, that two companies of mounted artillery-men should be formed by the commandant of the military division at Metz. The most sanguine expectations were answered on this occasion; so much so, that a short time before the declaration of war in 1792, Mons. de Narbonne, who had succeeded Mons. Duportail, assembled a military committee, consisting of the most experienced officers in the artillery and engineer departments, aided by the advice of the generals commanding the three grand divisions of the whole French army, and came to the following resolutions:

“ 1. THAT a large body of mounted artillery, well appointed and constantly complete in its number of cannoneers and horses, afforded the best means of support to any corps of men that might otherwise be deficient in the strict knowledge of military evolutions; as such a force would assist them considerably during their attack upon an enemy with sword or bayonet, by taking rapidly possession of many favourable points, and thus defeating the great advantage which well disciplined troops must otherwise enjoy.

“ 2. THAT with respect to the mode of being armed, equipped, accoutred, &c., the mounted artillery was to differ from the field ordnance only by the rapidity of its movement; on this account the horses were to be strong and active, so that whenever there should be occasion for any part of the corps to be conveyed to points of action, the cannoneers might be carried with their pieces, and thus be enabled to execute their instructions without delay.

“ 3. THAT with this important object in view, it was considered to be more advantageous to the service to mount the cannoneers on horseback, in preference to artillery-carts, because the accidents that happen to the latter would be avoided, the movement from place to place would be more ready, the retreat more certain, and the replacing of lost or killed horses more convenient and expeditious.

“ 4. THAT without absolutely excluding pieces of larger calibre, eight or twelve pounders and howitzers seemed best adapted to the nature of this service.

“ 5. THAT it would be superfluous to drill the mounted artilleryman, so as to make him master of all the cavalry manœuvres; it being thought fully sufficient for him to sit his horse well, to be able to mount and dismount with ease and celerity, to guide his horse according to the position of his piece, and to leave it entirely to his own judgment to act with the cavalry should he find himself involved in their manœuvres.

“ 6. THAT the manœuvre of urging the piece forward, or, as the French term it, manœuvre à la prolonge, must be constantly practised, except in cases of utter impossibility. Many advantages attend this manœuvre, especially in the passing of ditches or rivers with ex-



treme rapidity. As the horses remain harnessed to the train, while the pieces are fired, the time which would otherwise be lost in taking off and putting on the leaders is entirely saved.

“ 7. THAT in order to raise a body of this description without delay, it is proposed, that two well-instructed men from the regular artillery be attached to each gun, and that the complement of the different troops be made up with drafts from the army in general, but most especially from the light cavalry and light infantry.”

## NUMBER XVII.

*New Regulations ; and Establishment of the Royal Waggon Train.*

THE following general orders have been issued to the infantry of the army.

“ IT is his majesty’s pleasure, that in future the use of hats be entirely abolished throughout the whole of the infantry of the army ; and that instead thereof caps are to be worn, of which a sealed pattern has, by order of his royal highness the commander in chief, been deposited in the office of the comptroller of the army accounts, there to be had recourse to as occasion may require.

“ HIS majesty is pleased to permit the colonels to engrave the number of their respective regiments on each side of the lion, on the lower part of the brass-fronting ; and likewise to the regiments which are entitled to that distinction, his majesty grants permission to bear their badges in the centre of the garter. The grenadiers, who are allowed to wear these caps occasionally when they do not use their proper grenadier caps, may, if their colonels choose it, bear the grenade in the same manner as regiments, entitled to them, wear their badges. It is his majesty’s pleasure that the tufts, used by the grenadiers, shall be white ; those of the light infantry (who are likewise included in this order), dark green.

“ ALL soldiers shall wear the button of their respective regiments in the centre of the cockade, except the grenadiers, who will use the grenade.

“ THE caps are to be made of a sufficient size to come completely over the soldiers’ heads : they are to be worn straight and even, and brought forward well over the eyes.

“ THE field and staff-officers, as also the officers of battalion com-

panies, are to continue to wear hats as usual. The grenadier officers are permitted to wear hats when their men do not parade in dress caps. The officers of the light companies are to wear caps similar to those ordered for the light infantry.

“ BY order of his royal highness the commander in chief,  
“ HARRY CALVERT, Adjutant-General.”

“ HORSE-GUARDS, 24th February, 1800.”

### *The Royal Waggoners.*

A CORPS of waggoners has lately been established, consisting of nine troops, each troop being sixty rank and file; the officers have been chiefly taken from the half-pay of the reduced cavalry corps, and the men and horses almost entirely from the regiments of fencible cavalry that did not offer their services as volunteers\*.

THE rate of pay, &c. of the officers, non-commissioned officers, and privates, of the royal waggon train, is as follows:

		<i>Per diem.</i>		£.	s.	d.
Lieutenant-colonel commandant	- - -	- -	- -	0	18	0
Major, pay	- - -	0 14	0 } - -	0	16	0
Allowance for a horse	- 0 2	0 } - -	0	16	0	
Captain, pay	- - -	0 9 5	} - -	0	11	5
Allowance for a horse	- 0 2	0 } - -	0	11	5	
Lieutenant, pay	- - -	0 5 8	} - -	0	7	8
Allowance for a horse	- 0 2	0 } - -	0	7	8	
Cornet, pay	- - -	0 4 8	} - -	0	6	8
Allowance for a horse	- 0 2	0 } - -	0	6	8	
Adjutant	- - -	- - -	- - -	0	5	0
Surgeon	- - -	- - -	- - -	0	11	4

\* THESE were first reduced; but since then, and since the first volume of this work was printed, all the corps of fencible cavalry in Great Britain have been reduced. The officers have been allowed a gratuity of six months pay, and most of the men have engaged in the standing dragoon regiments.

	<i>Per diem.</i>								£.	s.	d.
Veterinary surgeon	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	8	0	
Quarter-master	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	3	0	
Serjeant	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	2	2	
Corporal	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	1	7½	
Drummer	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	1	3	
Collar-maker	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	3	0	
Wheelwright	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	3	0	
Smith	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	3	0	
Farrier	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	3	0	
Driver	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	1	3	

THE officers, if they choose it, may draw their forage from the magazines, in which case they are not entitled to the allowance of two shillings per day.

WHEN reduced, the officers of this corps are to have the same half-pay with the officers of the infantry.

## NUMBER XVIII.

*Staff of the Army in Great Britain and Ireland, 1799.*

## IN ENGLAND.

**F**IELD-MARSHAL and commander in chief, his Royal Highness the Duke of York, with four aid-du-camps.

Adjutant-general.

Quartermaster-general, with his deputy and assistants.

Brigade-major-general.

Chaplain-general.

Barrackmaster-general, and assistants.

Inspector of the roads.

Physician-general.

Surgeon-general.

Inspector of hospitals.

Advocate-general, or judge-martial and deputies.

Commissary-general of musters.

BESIDES which there is a separate staff for each district, into which England is divided. These are eight in number, besides London, which is the chief district, viz. the eastern, southern, south-west, western, the Severn, Yorkshire, north-east and north-west districts. All these are commanded by general officers, who have their aid-du-camps, brigade-major, &c.

THE district of the capital is under the command of one lieutenant-general, with two aid-du-camps.

Five major-generals, with one aid-du-camp each.

One assistant adjutant-general.

Four brigade-majors.

*Staff of the Army in North Britain in 1799.*

ONE commander in chief.

One second in command.

Three major-generals, with one aid-du-camp and one brigade-major each.

One deputy adjutant-general.

One brigade-major.

One major of brigade to cavalry.

One military secretary.

Four aid-du-camps to the commander in chief.

One ditto to the commander in second.

One assistant barrack-master-general.

Two assistants to ditto.

One barrack-master.

One deputy quarter-master-general.

Two assistants to ditto.

One inspector of military roads.

One muster-master.

One commissary.

One deputy commissary of stores.

One assistant ditto.

One judge advocate.

One deputy ditto.

One inspector of hospitals.

One physician.

One surgeon.

Two assistant surgeons.

One apothecary.

*Staff of the Army of Ireland in 1799.*

ONE governor-general, with ten aid-du-camps.

One secretary to the board of general officers.

Three lieutenant-generals, with two aid-du-camps and one brigade-major each.

Twenty-three major-generals, with one aid-du-camp and one brigade-major each.

Seven brigadier-generals, with one brigade-major each.

One adjutant-general, with assistants.

One deputy adjutant-general, with ditto.

One quarter-master-general, with assistants.

One deputy quarter-master-general, with ditto.

One brigade major-general.

One inspector-general of recruiting, with assistants.

Two physicians-general.

One staff physician.

One surveyor-general.

One muster-master-general.

One deputy muster-master-general.

Six commissaries of musters.

One commissary-general of stores.

One deputy commissary-general of ditto.

One advocate-general and judge-martial.

Two deputies ditto.

One procurator-martial-general.

One deputy town-major of Dublin.





## NUMBER XX.

*Historical Account of particular Regiments.*

A NEW periodical publication has given an historical account of the establishment of a considerable number of regiments in the English army. The substance of what has been already published, respecting the old corps, will, it is presumed, form not the least useful part of the Appendix to this History.

*First Regiment of Life-Guards.*

IMMEDIATELY after the Restoration, Charles II. raised a body of life-guards, the privates of whom were taken from the cavalier gentlemen who had adopted the profession of arms, and followed the fortunes of his father during the civil war. From their origin, being for the most part men of family, they derived certain privileges similar to those of the household troops in France, after whom they were modelled; which privileges were continued long after the time when they ceased to be composed of the same class of men. This, of course, rendered them a body of high pretensions, and, as often happens in similar cases, of little use, calculated for show and parade, rather than actual service.

THE disadvantages, as well as expence, attendant on their original organization being apparent, the privates were reduced ten years ago, and a new corps, composed almost entirely of recruits, was formed under the old officers, and placed nearly on the same footing with the rest of the cavalry, still however retaining the advantages arising out of a higher pay, and an exemption from stoppages on the part of the privates, whose cloathing is furnished by government. The life-guards claim the privilege, that their officers are not liable to be tried by any

court martial, unless the members are composed of officers of their own regiment, or of officers of the other household troops.

THE first regiment of life-guards, consisting of very fine men, about six feet high at an average, was formed in 1788. No recruits are taken under five feet ten inches high; they must be growing young men, and the pay being handsome, no enlisting money is given. The uniform is scarlet, faced with blue, and gold lace. The commissioned officers consist of a colonel, one lieutenant-colonel, one supernumerary lieutenant-colonel, two majors, five captains, six lieutenants, one adjutant and lieutenant, five cornets, one surgeon, and one veterinary surgeon. The non-commissioned officers consist of quarter-masters and corporals. The privates are at this time about two hundred and sixty in number. Their quarters are permanent at Knightbridge-barracks. The Earl of Harrington is the present Colonel.

#### *The second Regiment of Life-Guards.*

THIS is on the same footing, and is of the same establishment with the first. The average height of the men is five feet eleven inches and three quarters; the horses are from sixteen to eighteen hands high; their colour black, with long tails.

THERE are five troops in this, as in the other regiment of life-guards, each troop consisting of one captain, one lieutenant, one cornet, one quarter-master, three corporals, forty-nine privates, including a farrier, and one trumpeter.

THERE is one kettle-drummer to each regiment. The officers usually ride bay horses; the kettle-drummers and trumpeters grey.

THE second regiment has stabling for three hundred horses in King-street, Portman-square; and the privates are allowed two pence per diem, under the head of lodging-money, in lieu of barracks.

THERE are two *gold-sticks*, one appertaining to each regiment: their duty is to attend alternately every month on his majesty. Whenever a vacancy occurs of a colonelcy of either of these regiments, the king nominates an officer of sufficient rank in the army to the vacant

gold-stick ; which is, in other words, appointing him to the regiment. The present colonel is Major-general the Earl of Cathcart.

*Account of the Foot-Guards.*

THOUGH most of our princes have had bodies of men more particularly attached to their person, it was not till after the *Restoration* that a body of foot-guards was regularly organized on the present plan.

THE republican army, which had subdued the adherents of Charles I. were not eyed favourably by his son, though he admired their martial appearance ; and the best mode of disbanding it occupied the attention of the British cabinet from the moment he landed at Dover, in May, 1660. The parliament, wishing to relieve the nation from the burthen of a large military establishment, concurred in these views, furnished the necessary sums for paying off the arrears, and all the troops, but 5000 men, and a few on garrison duty, were dismissed. To General Monk the Prince was indebted for his crown ; and it would have favoured of ingratitude to dismiss the corps of which he was colonel. He was himself invested with the order of the garter, created Duke of Albemarle, and, through compliment to him, his own regiment was retained on the establishment. It had been raised, during the civil wars, about ten years before the period alluded to, at Coldstream in Scotland ; and from this circumstance it assumed the name, which it has borne ever since.

THE year 1660 may then be considered as the æra of the formation of the foot-guards ; and of the regiments, in point of date, Monk's, or the Coldstream, had undoubtedly the priority. But other regiments were added ; and that called the first was put under the command of John Lord Wentworth, whose family had continued faithful during the preceding tempestuous periods. The third was conferred on the Earl of Linlithgow.

WHEN the Duke of Monmouth invaded the West of England, James II. sent down the guards to oppose him ; and they conducted themselves with great valour, under the Earl of Feversham.

THE subsequent landing under the Prince of Orange was more formidable ; but the valour and fidelity of the guards were not put to trial ; for the feeble monarch, James II., instead of opposing the progress of his son-in-law, fled out of the kingdom, and thus lost his crown without a contest.

UNDER William III. the guards frequently took the field, and often distinguished themselves in Flanders. He added a regiment of Dutch to those before employed in the household ; this, however, gave umbrage ; and his majesty, in order to remove all jealousy, very prudently sent them back to Holland, and entrusted himself wholly to his British subjects.

DURING the reign of George I., the spirit of disaffection which prevailed over a great part of the country, seems to have been communicated to the guards. On May 28 and 29, in the year 1715, the first being the king's birth-day, the latter the anniversary of the restoration, great tumults arose. The guards, and particularly the regiment of which the Duke of Marlborough was colonel, grew mutinous, on receiving, as part of their cloathing, some remarkably coarse linen. The soldiers, on this occasion, threw some of their shirts into the king's and duke's garden in the park, saying, they were " Hanover shirts."

ON this, as a real grievance existed, the linen was publicly burnt at Whitehall, in consequence of orders received for that purpose ; and the Duke of Marlborough made a conciliatory speech on the occasion to the first regiment.

FROM such a scene, it is with pleasure we turn our eyes to the plains of Fontenoy, where on the 30th of April, 1745, the guards behaved with great heroism, as has been attested by Voltaire in his History.

DURING the rebellion in Scotland (in 1745-6), a detachment of the guards marched with the Duke of Cumberland, and had their share in his victories ; the rest occupied the metropolis.

IN the seven years' war, the guards were principally employed in the expeditions to the coast of France. At St. Cas, they had the post of honour ; for they were the last to embark, having received orders

to cover the retreat of the rest of the troops. On this occasion they suffered severely.

DURING the American war part of the guards were brigaded, and sent across the Atlantic. In this new scene of action they displayed their usual bravery, under several generals, particularly Howe, Clinton, and Cornwallis.

SOON after the commencement of the present war with France, it was found necessary to send a body of troops for the protection of Holland. Accordingly 1800 of the guards were embarked, in presence of the king and royal Family, at Greenwich. They soon arrived at the place of their destination, and their arrival, small as their numbers were, fortunately turned the tide of success against the French. In the course of two campaigns they distinguished themselves in Flanders on various occasions, particularly at Lincelles, where all the three battalions behaved to admiration.

AFTER their return from the continent, they remained in their usual quarters until the breaking out of the late disturbances in Ireland, whither detachments were sent. Some light companies of the guards were also with General Coote when he landed near Ostend; and detachments served under the Duke of York in the expedition to North Holland.

THE guards possess many peculiar honours and privileges. They have precedence of all others; their officers possess a higher rank in the army; and without expence to themselves, when on guard at St. James's, they have a plentiful and well-supplied table, which is kept for them by the publick, and voted annually in the extraordinary of the army. The king's person, the royal family, the Tower, and, in times of danger, the bank of England, are in a particular manner under their protection.

THEIR uniforms are royal, with blue facings, and their pay\* superior to that of the marching regiments.

---

\* THAT of all the corps in the army is specified in the chapter respecting the pay of the troops.

THE present colonels are, to the first regiment, Field-marshal his Royal Highness the Duke of Gloucester: to the second, Field-marshal his Royal Highness the Duke of York, commander in chief, &c.; and to the third, Field-marshal the Duke of Argyle, &c.

THE prices of the several commissions in the brigade of guards are, according to the latest regulations:

Lieutenant-colonel, having the rank of colonel in the army	£.	6700
Major - - - - - ditto - -		6300
Captain, having the rank of lieutenant-colonel in the army		3500
Captain-lieutenant, ditto - - - - -		2600
Lieutenant, with rank of captain - - - - -		1500
Ensign - - - - -		900

THE three regiments are usually either in garrison at the Tower, or in barracks at Westminster; and change their quarters in London and Westminster, on the 5th of August, annually.

*Royal Regiment of Horse-Guards, Blue, commonly called Oxford Blues.*

THIS corps also derives its origin from the reformation. Its name is not taken from that of the famous city and university, so loyal during the civil wars to the house of Stuart, but from the noble family of Oxford, the head of which, Aubrey, Earl of Oxford, was its first colonel, anno 1661.

ON all occasions, when cavalry were wanted during our continental wars, the blues have been one of the first selected. This regiment was in Flanders and in Germany with the great Duke of Marlborough, and shared largely in the glory of the confederate army under that captain-general and Field-marshal Auverquerque, when the French lines between Elixheim and Oostmalen were forced on the 18th of July, 1705.

DURING the war of 1757 they were called upon, and distinguished themselves on a variety of occasions. In the American contest their services were not required abroad.

No sooner had hostilities commenced against France, and it was determined to land a body of troops in Holland, than the blues were again pitched upon. This regiment was accordingly employed in the army of his Royal Highness the Duke of York. On one occasion, in particular, they distinguished themselves greatly; it was in the action near Cambray, on the 24th of April, 1794. They then formed part of a brigade that attacked the French, and obliged them, though immensely superior in numbers and in cavalry, to give way.

THERE are some circumstances peculiar to this corps. 1. It is the only regiment, denominated *horse*, at present on the British establishment. 2. The promotions, the colonelcy alone excepted, go in the regiment; a most valuable privilege, holding out every inducement to long service, and the best prospect of an affluent and honourable provision to those who seek high rank by due seniority. 3. The quarter-masters' commissions are signed by the king; they are therefore properly termed commissioned officers; in all the other cavalry, or dragoon regiments, quarter-masters are only warrant-officers.

THE average height of the men is five feet ten inches and a half.

THE uniform of the officers is blue, faced with scarlet, gold lace, buff lining; of the privates, blue, with plain red lappets, very broad buff cross-belts, and gloves of the same colour. The troopers' horses are black, with long tails.

THE corps consists of nine troops, and to each troop belong four commissioned officers, five non-commissioned officers, and fifty-four private men. There are, besides, the colonel, one lieutenant-colonel, one major, an adjutant, a regimental surgeon and assistant, and a veterinary surgeon.

THE present colonel is Field-marshal the Duke of Richmond, &c.

### *The Royal Regiment of Artillery.*

THE establishment of a royal regiment of artillery took place early in the present century; and we have been informed, that the first commission of colonel was issued in the first year of the reign of

George II. In a short time the number of companies was augmented from four to eight; the uniform was blue, turned up with red; and waistcoats and breeches of the colour of the facings were then worn by the officers.

THREE companies served with great credit under the Duke of Cumberland in Flanders, in the war of 1744. The duke, on the rebellion breaking out in 1745, had a detachment from these companies, which did wonderful service at the battle of Culloden. While the artillery of the highland army was of little use, that under the command of his royal highness was served with much skill and promptitude, and contributed not a little to the triumph of that memorable day.

NEARLY about the same time we find a detachment sent for the defence of the garrison of Ostend; a larger body serving with the park on the continent, and a small corps employed on a secret expedition to the coast of France. Such now were the acknowledged advantages resulting from this establishment, that no enterprize of any consequence was projected without artillery.

AN event occurred, soon after the battle of Culloden, as we have been informed, which contributed much to the appearance of that corps. This was the introduction of a fine body of disbanded troopers, and from that period the privates have been, in a great measure, picked men. Indeed the many advantages enjoyed by this corps, in respect to pay, quarters, cloathing, &c. contribute to make the situation of a private in it a desirable object to persons of a certain rank in life.

DURING the last war in Germany, a large detachment of the royal regiment of artillery, then formed into two battalions, was sent to the continent. We find that the regiment then consisted of thirty companies.

THE service of the artillery appearing every day more useful, the battalions were augmented, first to three, then to four, and at last to five, besides a battalion of invalids.

THE artillery take the right of foot on all parades, and likewise of dragoons, when dismounted.



EACH battalion consists of one colonel commandant, one ditto ensecond, one first lieutenant-colonel, two second lieutenant-colonels, one major, ten captains, ten captain-lieutenants, thirty lieutenants, one adjutant, one quarter-master, one surgeon, and one assistant surgeon. The present establishment of each company is one hundred and twenty rank and file.

DURING the time that the late Field-marshal Conway was at the head of the ordnance, as master-general, extensive barracks were built at Woolwich, which are the head-quarters and grand depot of the artillery. From the warren and laboratory, guns, stores, &c. are sent wherever occasion requires.

THE standard height of the men is five feet nine inches and upwards.

THE uniform of the officers is blue faced with scarlet, gold epaulets, no lace, white waistcoat and breeches, boots, yellow breast-plate on a white buff shoulder-belt.

THE uniform of the privates is blue, with red cuffs and collar, no facings, yellow lace, and buttons impressed with the ordnance arms. The serjeants wear frogged gold lace. The arms of the officers and serjeants are yellow-hilted swords; of the corporals, bombardiers, and privates, carbine and bayonet. The horse artillery have swords and pistols.

THE commissions are not purchased; the officers rise in a regular gradation by seniority.

#### *First, or Royal Regiment of Foot.*

THIS corps lays claim to a high degree of antiquity. It is certain, that it is the oldest regiment in our service. It is said to have been the body guard of the Scottish kings, whence it has derived its name of the royal Scots, and to have been put upon the English establishment in 1633.

ON enquiring into the succession of colonels, we find the first to have been nominated during the reign of Charles I.; but on the fatal

issue of the civil wars to that monarch, this corps seems to have been disbanded.

AT the restoration of Charles II., the first, or royal regiment of foot, was re-established; and we find that soon after the arrival of William III. the colonelcy of it was conferred on one of his favourites, the Duke of Schomberg.

IT must be supposed, from the antiquity of this corps, that it has often have been called into service. It was first sent to France, in the reign of Charles II., as a part of his auxiliary force to be furnished to the French monarch. During the German wars it served in Flanders; and in the contest with France, which terminated with the peace of Paris, both battalions were employed on the American continent.

DURING the present war the first battalion served in the West Indies, and is now in Ireland. The second attended General O'Hara, in 1793, to the occupation of Toulon, and suffered considerably in the inconclusive sortie that was made from that place.

THE remains of this battalion, after the evacuation of Toulon, formed part of the body of troops that were sent to wrest Corsica from the French republicans, and had a considerable share in the services done there. It is now in Portugal.

THIS regiment, which originally formed one large body, now consists of two battalions, both of which are commanded by the same colonel; in every other respect they are considered as separate corps.

THE uniform of the officers is scarlet, faced with blue, gold lace embroidered; that of the private soldiers red, faced with blue, and white lace.

THE present colonel is General Lord Adam Gordon.

#### *Second, or Queen's Royal Regiment of Foot.*

THIS regiment was raised in the year 1661, and the command of it was given to Henry, Earl of Peterborough. It served in King William's wars, and distinguished itself on more than one occasion.

THIS regiment, with another of the confederate army, were made

prisoners at Tongeren, May 10, 1703, by a large force under the French marshals Villeroy and Bouffleur. Though taken, it was not surprized, but defended itself for twenty-eight hours, thereby enabling the confederates to draw together near Maeftricht.

IN the same war this regiment served under the Earl of Peterborough in Spain, and was at the unfortunate battle of Almanza, under the Earl of Galway.

IN the seven years' war we find it mentioned with great credit, in the annals of that period, under its active commandant the Honourable General J. Fitzwilliam, ancestor of the present earl.

BEFORE the late regulations brought all regiments to the same standard, the queen's was generally considered as a pattern corps. Its present colonel is Lieutenant-general James Coates.

THE regiment being royal, the facings for the whole are blue; the lace for the privates white, with a blue stripe.

#### *The third Regiment of Foot, called the Buffs.*

THIS regiment was put on the regular establishment of the army in the year 1665. It was denominated the *buffs*, from being the first whose accoutrements were made of leather prepared from the buffalo, after the manner of shamois. The waistcoats, breeches, and facings of the coat, were afterwards directed to be made of a corresponding colour. When other regiments assumed this part of their appointments, the third acquired the name of the *Old Buffs*. This regiment has the privilege (and we believe exclusively) of marching through the city of London by beat of drum. We cannot however learn whence it has derived this privilege, whether from having exerted itself in the protection of the city, or from having, as has been vaguely reported, been at first composed of men who belonged to the train bands.

THIS regiment served in the Duke of Marlborough's wars, and was at the battle of Ramillies. In 1708 it was in the covering army at the siege of Lifle.

DURING the rebellion of 1745, this regiment was in the battle of Falkirk; but though unsuccessful here, it contributed to the entire defeat of the rebel army at the battle of Culloden.

DURING the two last wars, and the present, it has been actively employed in America and the West Indies.

UNIFORM, red, with buff facings; buff waistcoats and breeches. The 31st regiment, which has the same uniform, is commonly called the Young Buffs.

*Fourth, or King's own Regiment of Foot.*

THE fourth regiment of foot was raised in the year 1680 by Thomas Earl of Plymouth.

SOON after the regiment was completed, it was sent to reinforce the garrison of Tangier, which was ceded to Charles II.; but Charles growing weary of the expence of defending the place against the frequent attacks of the Moors, he ordered the works to be blown up and destroyed; and in 1684 the troops returned to England. This regiment was the first that joined King William on his landing at Torbay. His majesty was pleased on this occasion to honour it with the title of *the king's own regiment*; and directed to be borne in their colours the lion of England, which still continues the badge of the regiment, and is worn on the breast-plate, buttons, cap, and pouch.

No regiment has been employed more on active service than this. It was at the gallant taking of Gibraltar in 1704, under Sir George Rooke; and of Barcelona by the Earl of Peterborough. The battle of Almanza was as fatal to it as to the rest of the British forces, commanded then by Lord Galway. Afterwards it served, during the same war, under the Duke of Marlborough in the Low-countries.

THIS regiment covered the retreat at Falkirk, and at Culloden was conspicuous for its determined conduct. In the following war it served with great credit in different parts of the West Indies.

It was among the first employed in the American war, at Lexington; and afterwards was in the principal engagements in the provinces

of New York and Philadelphia. At St. Lucia, in 1779, it was concerned in the gallant defence of the Morne Fortunée.

IN the commencement of the present war it was employed in the reduction of the islands of St. Pierre and Miquelon. On its return from Quebec to England, it had the misfortune to be captured by the French; but being afterwards exchanged, and greatly reinforced by drafts of the militia, so as to form three battalions, it constituted a part of the Duke of York's army in the expedition against Holland.

THE uniform of the regiment, at the beginning of this century, was red, faced with blue velvet, and large velvet cuffs, richly embroidered with gold. The present uniform is red, with plain blue facings, silver buttons and epaulet, white waistcoat and breeches. On the epaulet, buttons, and breast-plate, are the crown and garter, and round the latter, "*The King's own Infantry.*" In the centre is the lion of England, and under it the number IV. in small Roman figures.

#### *Fifth Regiment of Foot.*

THIS regiment was raised by James II., but it followed the fortunes of the Prince of Orange.

THE fifth was concerned in the taking of Gibraltar, and had the honour of covering the retreat of the British troops at the battle of Almanza.

THROUGHOUT the whole of our unfortunate contest with America, it was the lot of the fifth regiment to stand principally engaged. In no instance was it more conspicuous for gallantry, than in the action at the heights of Charlestown, commonly called Bunker's-hill. During that unfortunate, but well-fought day, the late conqueror of the Mysore, General Harris, was severely wounded on the head, whilst he led on the grenadiers. On that occasion Lord Rawdon, now Earl of Moira, who was lieutenant of the company, kept up the spirit of intrepidity that had been displayed by his disabled captain, and retired with the remnant of his brave followers, after having received two shots through his cap.

It cannot be thought superfluous to make an observation relative to the apparent contradiction which is manifested between the actual situation in the line of the fifth regiment, with regard to the sixth; the latter, from the date of its establishment, appearing to be an older regiment. The same singular circumstance attends the fourth, or king's own, which, in point of original formation, is junior to the fifth. These seeming contradictions are accounted for in the following manner.

WHEN the regiments in question were first raised, they were not placed upon the British establishment, but sent by James II. for the service of the States General. On the abdication of that monarch, and the subsequent election of William, Prince of Orange, the fourth, fifth, and sixth, were numbered and taken into the line, according to the periods at which they landed from Holland. Thus, for instance, the fourth, which had originally been raised after the fifth, arrived in England before that corps, and took precedence; the sixth, which had been levied before the fifth, returned to its native country at a later period than either, and was consequently placed according to that date.

THE fifth regiment has been augmented to two battalions by drafts from the militia.

UNIFORM, gossling green facings. The twenty-fourth, fifty-fourth, and sixty-ninth regiments are also faced with light green.

#### *The sixth Regiment of Foot.*

THIS regiment derives its origin from the seven years' war, in the course of which the United Provinces of Holland threw off their subjection to Spain. Its regular establishment did not take place until the year 1673; but it had previously served under the three first princes of Orange. This was one of the three regiments intended, on their formation, to serve in Holland; therefore it was paid by the Dutch Republic. It came over to this country with King William at the revolution in 1688, and was incorporated in our military establishment, numbering as the sixth in the British line.

THIS regiment did King William much service in Ireland. It afterwards served in Spain, and was at the unfortunate battle of Almanza. In the war of 1739 it suffered in common with the others sent to the unsuccessful attack of Carthage, under Admiral Vernon and General Wentworth. It was actively employed in the rebellion of 1745.

DURING the first four years of the seven years' war, the sixth was not put upon any service to distinguish itself, being almost the whole of that time in garrison and camp duty at home. Early, however, in 1761, it was ordered into service, and assisted in the reduction of Bellisle.

DURING the troubles in America, the sixth regiment was in that quarter of the globe; where its strength might be said to be wasted by skirmishes, and by the climate, rather than by any signal conflict with the enemy.

IN the present war the sixth was engaged in the successful campaign in the West-Indies, under Sir Charles Grey, when Martinique, Guadaloupe, and St. Lucia, were taken from the French.

UNIFORM, deep yellow facings, white lace, with yellow and red stripes.

THE ninth, tenth, twelfth, thirteenth, fifteenth, sixteenth, twentieth, twenty-fifth, twenty-sixth, twenty-eighth, twenty-ninth, thirtieth, thirty-fourth, thirty-fifth, thirty-seventh, thirty-eighth, forty-fourth, forty-sixth, fifty-seventh, sixty-second, and sixty-seventh regiments have also yellow facings and white lace, and are distinguished from each other by the variations of the stripes, the tinge of the colour, &c.

*The seventh Regiment of Foot, or Royal Fusileers.*

THIS regiment was raised with nine others of infantry, and eight of cavalry, under James II. in the year 1685, three years before the abdication of that unfortunate monarch. Levies so considerable for that period, might well have flattered such a prince's weakness, that they would be able to support his tottering throne. There is no question, but as much reliance was placed on this as on any of the

new corps, as was indeed manifested by the privileges annexed to it. The command of it was conferred on General Lord Dartmouth, whose professions to James had been marked for their zeal and loyalty.

As a fusileer regiment the men wear caps, similar to those of the grenadiers, though something shorter. In all other respects they are dressed and appointed as the soldiers of other battalions. Three years after this, another regiment was raised, under the denomination of *Royal Welsh Fusileers*: this partiality for cap regiments is said to have been caused by the celebrity of the British grenadiers, who were easily distinguished by their caps\*.

THE officers in these regiments never carried spontoons, as the others did, till the late change, but had fusils like the officers of the flank companies throughout the army. The other regiments of fusileers have second-lieutenants, instead of ensigns; this regiment is peculiar in having none but first lieutenants, under the field-officers and captains.

THE uniform is royal, blue facings, with white lace, and a blue stripe.

THE eighth, eighteenth, twenty-first, twenty-third, forty-second, and sixtieth regiments, have also blue, or royal facings, but different lace.

HIS Royal Highness the Duke of Kent, the king's fourth son, is the present colonel of this regiment.

*The first, or King's Regiment of Dragoon Guards.*

THIS corps was raised and entered on the establishment the 6th of June, 1685.

IN every war, except the late American, this regiment has largely participated, especially in the seven years' war in Germany.

---

\* By a recent regulation of the present year (1800), all the regiments of the line, as well as the guards, are to wear a kind of caps. See Appendix, Number XIII.



SOON after Prince Ferdinand had gained the victory of Crevelt, and that Duffeldorp had surrendered to his arms, it was thought advisable, for the united interests of the allies, to send over a reinforcement of troops to maintain his Highness in that commanding station. This was one of the regiments sent over for that purpose.

It was better known at that time by the appellation of Bland's dragoons, from the name of the intelligent officer who was at the head of it. Except at the affair of Minden, this regiment was never an idle spectator of a combat.

IN the battle of Corbach on the 9th of July, 1760, when the impetuosity of the hereditary prince had brought on an engagement with the French, under Monf. St. Germain, with very superior numbers, and before he could be sustained by his uncle, Prince Ferdinand, it was owing to the intrepidity of a squadron of this regiment, at the head of which, and Howard's dragoons, the hereditary prince put himself, that the British battalions did not suffer very materially. They charged the enemy so furiously, as to enable the infantry to make a safe retreat.

It was in the hottest part of the engagement, which took place at Kempen, in the month of October following, when Lieutenant-colonel Pitt, its present commander, and Lord Down, were wounded and taken prisoners.

IN the present war this regiment made part of the forces under his Royal Highness the Duke of York, acting in conjunction with the army of the Prince of Coburg.

THE establishment of this regiment at present is ten troops, each consisting of one captain, one lieutenant, one cornet, one quartermaster, four serjeants, four corporals, one trumpeter, and seventy-one rank and file. The average height of the men is five feet ten inches; of the horses fifteen hands one inch and a half.

UNIFORM of the officers, scarlet and gold lace, blue cuffs and collar; no facings on the ordinary uniform.

UNIFORM of the troopers, red jacket, faced half lappel, blue, white lace, buttons marked K. D. G. The serjeants wear gold lace.

	Prices of commissions *.	£.	s.	d.
Lieutenant-colonel,	- - - - -	4982	10	0
Major,	- - - - -	3882	10	0
Captain,	- - - - -	2782	10	0
Captain-lieutenant, with rank of captain,	-	1782	10	0
Lieutenant,	- - - - -	997	10	0
Cornet,	- - - - -	735	0	0

*Second, or Queen's Dragoon-Guards.*

THIS is one of the eight cavalry regiments raised in 1685, the second year after King James II.'s accession to the throne. Five of these remain on the English establishment, and three on the Irish: of the former five, three are distinguished as *Dragoon-guards*, the other two as *Dragoons*, the first of which is denominated "The king's own regiment."

IN the history of the second regiment of dragoon-guards, there is very little to distinguish it from that of the first. It has seen nearly the same service, and under the active bravery of its second colonel, during the seven years' war, was remarked for appointment and discipline.

IN the campaign of 1794, on the continent, this, like the first, was one of the regiments which composed the corps of cavalry under the immediate command of his Royal Highness the Duke of York.

UNIFORM of the officers, red, faced with black velvet and silver lace. Of the troopers, red jacket, black collar and cuffs, royal lace, white buttons, marked Q. D. G. The serjeants wear silver lace.

*The third, or Prince of Wales's Dragoon-Guards.*

THIS is the last of the three regiments distinguished as dragoon-guards upon the British establishment.

---

\* THE same in the other dragoon regiments.

THIS regiment has never been inactive in any of the reigns since its establishment. It acquired considerable celebrity in Queen Anne's war, under the Duke of Marlborough.

THE first signal battle in which it was engaged was that fought at Schellenberge, near Donawert, on the 2d of July, 1704. It distinguished itself still more in the famous battle of Hochstadt, or Blenheim, fought on the 13th of August in the same year.

DURING the seven years' war it was sent into Germany, under the command of Sir George Howard, and was then generally distinguished by the name of *Howard's Dragoons*.

IN the present war it has also been on the continent, and though some animadversions were made on the tardiness of General Mansell's movements in the engagement near Cateau, it maintained its former reputation in the action of the following day, when the general himself was killed, charging at the head of his regiment.

THE uniform is scarlet, faced with white, and yellow buttons.

*Fourth, or Royal Irish Regiment of Dragoon-Guards.*

THIS regiment, with seven others of the cavalry, was raised in 1685, soon after James II. ascended the throne, and the command of it was given to the Duke of Hamilton. This regiment was originally called *The Prince of Wales's, or First Regiment of Horse*; and with the other three of horse upon the same establishment it was, in the year 1788, put upon a new one, and called *Dragoon-guards*, numbering on to seven; so that the fourth of horse, formerly so called, is now the seventh Dragoon-guards.

*Present Strength of the Regiment.*

THE colonel, with a troop.

Two lieutenant-colonels; the first with a troop.

Two majors; one with a troop.

Six captains, with a troop each.

One captain-lieutenant.

Eight lieutenants.  
 Nine cornets.  
 One paymaster.  
 One adjutant.  
 One fergeon.  
 Two affistant-fergeons.  
 One veterinary fergeon.

Each troop confists of,	Quarter-master,	-	-	-	-	1
	Serjeants,	-	-	-	-	4
	Corporals,	-	-	-	-	4
	Trumpeter,	-	-	-	-	1
	Privates,	-	-	-	-	75
						<hr/>
	Total	-	-	-	-	85

THE uniform is royal, with filver lace.

*The fifth Regiment of Dragoon-Guards, commonly called the Green-Horfe.*

THE fifth regiment of dragoon-guards, originally the fecond of horfe, was raifed in England in the reign of King James II., in the month of July, 1685. It was at that time put on the regular British eftablifhment.

IT went over with King William to Ireland in 1689, and remained more than one hundred years upon the Irifh eftablifhment.

IN the year 1793, on the breaking out of the war with France, it was one of the regiments ordered to the continent, where it ferved in 1793, 1794, and 1795, under the Duke of York. It was engaged in the battles of the 17th of April, 1794, near the Ville de Premont, on the investment of Landrecies; on the 26th of April near Cateau Cambrefis; on the 10th of May near Tournay; on the 17th and 18th of May, when the army advanced into the French frontiers; and on the 22d of May on the banks of the Scheld, near Tournay.

THE regiment returned from the continent with the rest of the British troops in December, 1795, and remained in England till October, 1796, when it was again ordered to Ireland, symptoms of disturbances and insurrections beginning to manifest themselves in that kingdom. After its arrival in Ireland, it was one of the regiments which marched in December, 1796, to Bantry, to oppose the landing of the French General Hoche. During the subsequent rebellion it was stationed in Dublin.

THIS regiment is now on the English establishment; it consists of nine troops, of the same strength with those of the fourth regiment of dragoon-guards.

THE uniform of the regiment is, green facings with gold lace for the officers; and yellow for the private men. The height of these is in general from five feet eight inches to six feet.

*First, or Royal Regiment of Dragoons.*

THIS regiment was raised for the service of Charles II. by John Lord Churchill (afterwards Duke of Marlborough), in 1683.

THEIR services in every war, since their first establishment, have been so various, that it would be tedious to recapitulate them. During the American war only the services of the first regiment of dragoons were confined to England and Ireland.

THEIR badge is a horse-shoe, inclosing 1st D., encircled with a wreath of laurels; the regiment consists of nine troops, of the usual number. The colour of the horses is black.

*Second, or Royal North British Dragoons, called the Scots Greys.*

THE Royal North British Dragoons were raised in Scotland, during the reign of James II.

THIS regiment frequently distinguished itself in the wars of King William and Queen Anne; nor was it less active in the rebellion of 1715. In the battles of Dettingen and Fontenoy, the cool intrepid courage of this corps was eminently conspicuous.

THE Greys were among the troops sent to Germany, under Prince Ferdinand of Brunfwick, in 1758, at which time the Duke of Argyle commanded the regiment. They were also on the continent under the Duke of York in 1793, 1794, and 1795.

THE uniform is red, with gold lace, no facings, but blue collar and cuff. The horses are of an iron-grey colour, except those of the officers and trumpeters, which are of a light grey, approaching to white.

*Account of the (late) Fifth, or Royal Irish Regiment of Dragoons; with some Particulars relative to the late Rebellion in Ireland.*

THIS regiment was raised in or about the year 1688, and served under the Duke of Marlborough during the whole of his wars.

IN consequence of the good behaviour of this regiment at the battle of Hochstet, in August, 1704, three additional troops were put upon the establishment, making its strength consist of nine troops. The kettle-drums, which were taken from the French at this memorable engagement, were directed by the Duke of Marlborough to be carried at the head of the royal dragoons of Ireland.

AT the battle of Ramillies, in 1706, the Royal Irish Dragoons gathered fresh laurels. In consequence of this regiment, assisted by the Scots Greys, making prisoners of two battalions of the regiment of Picardie, and cutting a third to pieces, before it could secure a retreat behind a line of horse that were galloping to bring it off, both corps were distinguished from other cavalry regiments, by being permitted to wear grenadier caps.

THE honours which were thus earned by the Royal Irish, were not only established and confirmed, but continued to be uninterruptedly acknowledged, through four reigns, without suffering the least diminution during near a century; and the permanency of the nine troops was secured by an order, dated in 1798.

PREVIOUSLY to the date of this order, and consequently before the regiment could have excited the displeasure of government, some part of it was detached towards the south of Ireland. Disturbances that

bore a very serious complexion had risen to so formidable a height, in this quarter of the kingdom, that it became necessary to reinforce the military strength, by an augmentation of steady and confidential troops.

ON the 23d of May, 1798, a general rising in mass was intended by the rebels, throughout the disaffected parts of Ireland; and there is reason to presume, that it might have been attended with the most serious consequences if some fortunate discoveries had not disconcerted their plan of general insurrection. However, on the day appointed, a partial rising took place throughout the whole of the county of Wexford, and in part of Waterford, Wicklow, Kildare, and other counties. On this occasion the rebels seized on the town of Gorey, Inniscorthy, and the day following they obtained possession of Wexford, the county town; intercepting almost all the respectable families then residing in the country, who were endeavouring to make their escape from a scene of universal outrage, pillage, and devastation.

AT this critical and alarming period, the fifth regiment of Irish dragoons was ordered to march, with all possible expedition, to be contiguous to the capital, and took up its quarters at Lehaunstown-huts, a position within seven miles of Dublin.

Two troops having been stationed at Tallow, in the county of Waterford, did not move with the main body of the regiment, but followed as a rear division in the line of march. On their arrival, however, at Kilkenny, they were countermanded by Sir Charles Asgill, and were prevented from accompanying the regiment to its destination at Lehaunstown, in consequence of intelligence having been received by the general, that the rebels were preparing in great force to make a vigorous attack upon New Ross, a town situate on the River Barrow, about seventeen miles to the westward of Wexford. The two troops were ordered not to halt, but with all possible expedition to advance towards that place, and to reinforce Major General Johnson, who had assembled what troops he could collect, for the purpose of defeating this desperate enterprize of the rebels. They accordingly arrived at Ross on the 2d day of June. At this time the rebels, nearly

eighteen thousand strong, were collected about four miles to the south-east of Ross, under the command of Bagnal Harvey, father Roach, and another catholic priest called Murphy. The latter strove to persuade the infatuated mob that, in a cause like theirs, they had nothing to fear from the king's troops, as they would be invulnerable. The force of the insurgents was rendered very formidable, independently of the blind enthusiasm with which they were actuated, by the circumstance of their being in possession of sixteen pieces of cannon of different sizes, and a considerable quantity of ammunition, which they had obtained at Wexford, and other places, from whence they had driven the king's troops by the superiority of their numbers.

ON the evening of the 4th of June, the rebels made a general movement from the heights of Carrick Burn, and for some time the declivity, from thence to Corbet Hill, appeared like an immense opaque body in motion. This was occasioned by a repeated succession of men, who had been for some days collecting behind the mountain. General Harvey and his staff took possession of a large house on the summit of Corbet Hill, somewhat less than a British mile from the town.

THE rebels passed the night in noisy merriment, which was distinctly heard by the inhabitants of the place, and was accompanied by a confused crash of discordant sounds issuing from fifes, bag-pipes, fiddles, and other instruments; but was occasionally interrupted by a general shout of *Erin go bra*, meaning, Ireland for ever. Several flags, or standards, were frequently distinguished by the light of surrounding bonfires.

IN the mean time General Johnson, who commanded the garrison of Ross, composed of near one thousand seven hundred men, reinforced his pickets, and made the best arrangements, in order with so small a force to withstand the attack of several thousands, provided with artillery, quantities of fire-arms, besides pikes and other offensive weapons.

ABOUT four o'clock in the morning of the 5th of June, the rebel general dispatched a courier to summon the garrison to surrender.



This messenger, unfortunately for him, was destined never to return, being shot dead by one of the centinels, who, from his shabby appearance, mistook the purport of his mission. An official letter, signed Bagnal Harvey, commanding the *army of Ireland*, and addressed to the officer commanding the *King of England's* forces at Ross, was found upon his person; also a proclamation, signed in the manner already specified. Finding that no attention had been paid to the summons, the rebels, about an hour after, moved down against the town in three columns; one of which with violent impetuosity commenced the attack by setting fire to the suburbs, and by forcing a number of horned cattle before them through the smoke. This manœuvre was practised in order to break their enemy's fire, and create confusion among the ranks, with the view of taking advantage of those circumstances, to avail themselves of superior numbers, by rushing upon and disarming the soldiers. More effectually to forward their design, and to draw off the attention of the troops from that point, a strong column of their best-disciplined musket-men, with some light artillery, advanced on the eastern side of the town, by the great road from Wexford to Ross, and after a sharp contest beat in our picket, consisting of a few companies of light infantry. At this critical moment the county of Dublin militia, led on by the gallant Lord Mountjoy, and supported by the Clare regiment, endeavoured for a long time to stem the torrent of superior force, that rushed into action, urged on by intoxication, and rendered insensible to danger by the assurances given to them by their priests of eternal salvation. The contest about this time became extremely doubtful. The number of the rebels was too great for discipline effectually to resist. Lord Mountjoy fell at the head of his regiment.

THE rebels having by this time made such an impression upon the handful of king's troops, as to render it impossible to check their progress, had in one quarter forced their passage into the town of Ross, whilst a column of pike-men penetrated at another extremity, and threw the garrison into confusion. From the continual influx of fresh insurgents, it became utterly impracticable for the king's troops to keep their ground, and a retreat became absolutely necessary.

BEFORE this action commenced, the commanding officer of the fifth, or Royal Irish Dragoons, collected about sixty effective men belonging to the two troops already mentioned, and formed for action in the best manner possible. Soon after the death of Lord Mountjoy, at a time when the rebels had forced their way into the town on all sides, obliging the king's troops to retire in disorder, the fifth dragoons were ordered to charge, for the purpose of affording the infantry an opportunity of retreating with some regularity. This was a service replete with danger, as from the situation of the place, and the continual increase of a desperate enemy, a handful of men seemed precluded from every hope of escaping destruction. Notwithstanding, the order was instantly obeyed, and the detachment rode to meet bodies of insurgents advancing against them, armed with pikes from ten to twelve feet long. Nor were the rebels inexperienced in the practice of this formidable weapon. Their instructions were to pierce the horse in the flank, and thus obtain an easy conquest over the rider. In this conflict the heavy squadron was almost entirely cut to pieces, or disabled. The quarter-master of the fifth dragoons, on whom the command at last devolved, accompanied by only nine men, with difficulty made good his retreat to the opposite side of the river, whither the infantry had retired and formed. By this time General Johnson's force was diminished more than one half. Perceiving, however, that the rebels had neglected to follow up their advantage (being diverted from it by the natural consequences of insubordination, a spirit of habitual licentiousness, and a thirst for plunder), he exhorted his troops, in a well-timed speech, to recover their ground. The troops, and with them the small remnant of the detachment of the fifth dragoons, returned to the charge; Ross was retaken, and an immense carnage ensued of the rebels. By this important action the rapid and alarming strides of rebellion were so effectually checked, that in the course of a few days the whole of the insurrection was finally subdued, at the decisive battle fought on Vinegar-hill.

SOME time after the fifth dragoons had arrived at Lehaunstown-huts, as already mentioned, an order was received that the strength of the regiment should forthwith march for Dublin. It was, however,

directed, that a few men from each troop should be left behind to take charge of the baggage, &c. The officers, who commanded them, were instructed to receive eligible recruits. Many fine-looking fellows were accordingly enlisted, and sent to head-quarters. Almost all of them, as the event afterwards evinced, were rebel partisans, and had insinuated themselves into the fifth dragoons to co-operate in a preconcerted plan for surprizing Lehaunstown; to which place all the recruits and men unfit for immediate service had been transmitted. These entered into conspiracy with the rebels in the adjoining mountains. The design was, that on a certain night an attack should be made on the garrison, whose whole effective strength consisted of about seventy dragoons, many of them invalids, and somewhat more than an equal number of the king's county militia. The recruits, to a man, were concerned in this plot; and the massacre of every officer and loyal soldier was prevented only an hour before the scheme was proposed to take place. The conspirators were seized, and suffered according to their deserts. The regiment, however, had the mortification to find it announced in the publick papers, that several privates belonging to the fifth, or Royal Irish Dragoons, had been found guilty, by a general-court martial, of joining the rebels.

IN consequence of this the regiment was, on the 10th of April following, disbanded by an order from his majesty; of which, as it is rather singular in the occurrences of the army, we hereunto annex a copy.

*Order for Disbanding the fifth Regiment of Dragoons.*

HORSE-GUARDS, APRIL 8, 1799.

HIS MAJESTY has taken into his most serious consideration, the representation which has been made by his Excellency the Lord Lieutenant of Ireland, of the conduct of the Fifth, or Royal Irish Regiment of Dragoons; and is of opinion, that the insubordination, and the departure from discipline, and principles which have ever distinguished the British army, therein exhibited, require, especially in these times of warfare and exertion, that they should be marked by a punishment that may be severely felt, and be long remembered by those misguided persons who have been guilty of the atrocious acts of disobedience, which have brought this indelible stigma upon the corps; and may serve as an example to all others of  
the

the consequences of such seditious and outrageous proceedings, and of his majesty's firm determination to maintain subordination and discipline in his army, and to support the authority of his officers in the execution of their duty.

It is on these grounds his majesty's determination that the Fifth, or Royal Irish regiment of Dragoons, shall be forthwith disbanded.

At the same time that the king judges it requisite, for the good of the service, to make this severe example, his majesty has graciously condescended to direct, that General Lord Rossmore shall be assured, that his majesty is persuaded of the concern which, as a soldier, his lordship would feel at such a circumstance occurring in any part of the army, and is sensible of the particular mortification he must feel in the present instance; from the event of which, however, his lordship cannot, in the smallest degree, suffer in his majesty's estimation.

His majesty is graciously pleased farther to express his persuasion, that there are many valuable officers in the regiment, who have used their best endeavours to restore the order, and to preserve the credit of the corps; and though in this measure of indispensable severity it was impossible to make any exceptions, the majority being clearly implicated in the misconduct for which the whole are suffering; yet his majesty will hereafter make the most pointed discrimination, and those of any rank, who are deserving of the royal favour, may rely on his majesty's disposition to attend to their merits, and to avail himself of their future services. In consideration of the expence to which the officers of the Fifth, or Royal Irish regiment of Dragoons, have been unavoidably exposed, his majesty has been graciously pleased to direct, that their full pay shall be continued to them till the 24th of December next, at which period they will be placed on half-pay.

(Signed)

HARRY CALVERT, Adjutant-General.

DESCRIPTION  
OF  
THE PLATES,  
IN  
THE MILITARY ANTIQUITIES.

---

*The Military Exercise of Different Kinds occupies Twenty-three Plates.*

**T**HE EXERCISE OF THE PIKE, plates 1, 2, 3, 4.

DOUBLE-ARMED MAN, or bow and pike, plate 1 and 2. *Note*, the two bottom figures in this plate are taken from Prince Maurice de Nassau's Exercise of the Target and Roundel, which he attempted to bring again into use.

MATCHLOCK, MUSKET, AND HALBERT EXERCISE, plates 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, and 7, the first from Hexham, the latter from Hogarth, engraved for Mr. Blackwell's Account of the Artillery Company.

THE SALUTE, plates 1, 2, 3, marching and standing, by the same artist for the same work.

THE HORSE EXERCISE, in plates 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6; from Capt. Cruso's Instructions for the Cavallerie.

*The Machines for Projecting Stones and Darts, Eight Plates.*

PLATE 1. The scorpion. 2. The catapulta. 3. The balista. 4. Machine and method for stringing the balista. All from Mr. Newton's Designs for Vitruvius. 5. The onager, constructed by Mr. Wenlow under the direction of Lieutenant General Melville. 6. Another view of the same. 7. An engraving of a trebuchet from an ancient carving in ivory.

PLATE 8. Machines for throwing darts and stones, from Lipsius and others, constructed on the principle of the counterpoise; one of them is double, as CC, by that fall it discharges a sling B, fixed near its point A.

THE machines impelled by human force, and those for covering the approaches of besiegers, are contained in the two following plates.

*Battering Machines.*

PLATE 1. In the uppermost part of the plate, there is a representation of the ram, and also of two different kinds of borers for piercing a wall.

AT the bottom a kind of ram with a sharp point, supported by a triangle, and another on the shoulders of the men who work it: this plate was partly taken from Lidius.

*Machines used in Antient Sieges.*

PLATE 2. The vinea and pluteus of the antients, with the moveable tower; the different modes of defending the walls from the strokes of the ram.

*Artillery used with Gunpowder, Nine Plates.*

PLATE 1. Several antient guns from Valturinus, Uffano, and others. That marked 3, is called an elbow-piece, and probably existed only in imagination. Fig. 8. A bombard for throwing bombs. 10. Is a bomb on a larger scale to shew its construction. 11 and 12. A perrier chamber.

PLATE 2. An antient gun, the property of G. Weller Poley, Esq. of Boxted Hall, Suffolk. 2, 3, and 4. Pieces of antient perriers kept in a cellar at Peele in the Isle of Man. A Spanish gun, supposed to have belonged to the Armada; it is made of copper, lead, and iron. 6. A gun constructed with the same metals; it is with those shewn above, in the cellar at Peele.

PLATE 3. Entitled an antient bombard or gun, called Mons. Meg. Tradition says, a woman was got with child in it.

PLATE 4. Entitled extraordinary pieces of artillery, contains the view and section of a triple cannon, a twin cannon, the famous culverin of Nancy, and an ancient screw-piece. 5. The petard, with its form and manner of applying it. 6. The perrier. 7. The partridges, a mortar that threw thirteen grenadoes and one bomb at the same time; the bomb representing the old hen, and the grenadoes the young partridges. 8. An ancient gun-cart used at the siege of Bullogne, and represented in the Cowdry picture. 9. The infernal, with its section. Fig. 1. The following description answers to both figures. A. the delineation of the vessel; B. the hole filled with sand; C. the first deck filled with twenty thousand weight of powder, with a layer of masonry of a foot thick over it; D. second deck, furnished with 600 bombs and carcases filled with all kinds of military fireworks; E. the third deck, furnished with fifty iron-hooped barrels filled with all sorts of fireworks; F. channel or tube conducting the fire to the powder and primings of the fireworks; G. instruments of iron, to the number of fifty, filled with artificial fireworks for burning ships or houses; these falling on any wood by means of their points stuck fast on it: on the deck was stowed old guns and other heavy pieces of old iron.

*Fortification contains Five Plates.*

PLATE 1. Entitled Ancient Fortification, a castle with its different works.

PLATE 2. Fortification. The defects of ancient round and square towers, A. and Fig. 3; rectified in the bastion E. The plan, profile, and perspective views of a machicollation. Fig. 2. The section of an ancient wall.

PLATE 3. The entrance of a street defended by a chain which was let into grooves in the posts, and contained in a trough at the bottom of the street. In the adjoining building was the windlafs for drawing tort the chain. Fig. 4. An ancient machine for defending a pass against cavalry, somewhat similar to a cheval de frise.

PLATE 5. Carts of war, covered over, pierced with loop-holes, and

filled with musketeers, forming a kind of small moveable redoubt, the horses for drawing it being placed in safety under it. In the bottom figure the covering is taken off to shew the construction. These carts were placed in the centre of square battalions of pikes and halberts, as appears in an antient drawing in the book before quoted. Augustus II. An ancient mantlet, taken also from the same book, is shewn in the middle figure.

*The antient Attack and Defence of Fortified Places, Four Plates.*

PLATE 1. Front of a fortified place attacked according to the antient manner.

PLATE 2. Antient manner of besieging towns: both from Mons. Joly de Maizeroy. These plates want no explanation.

PLATE 3. Pavifours and moveable tower. This plate shews the forming of the parapet, by means of a bridge let down from one of the upper stories of the belfrey or moveable tower. In the ditch are a number of archers attempting to drive the garrison from the defences, they are covered by large shields called pavoises, each borne by a young man called a pavifour.

PLATE 4. The lyonoise, a machine proposed for defending a breach, drawn from one at Chatham Lines made by order of Colonel Debeige.

RESPECTING the subject of Castrametation, there are thirteen plates, to be placed in the order here annexed; 1, 2, 3, 4, plates entitled Castrametation, engraved from the Harleian MS. No. 7364, and referred to in the letter-press.

ROYAL TENTS, plates 1, 2, 3; these are engraved from Drawings in the Cotton Collection, marked Augustus II. No. 1 and 2, are supposed to represent some of the tents pitched for the meeting of King Henry VIII. with the King of France, near Ardres, in 1520. The third plate is by mistake, entitled, Antient Tents and Huts, instead of a royal encampment, temp. Hen. VIII. It represents the royal quar-



ters of the camp, and that of the market-place, with the huts of the shopkeepers, butchers, &c.

*Modern Tents, Three Plates.*

PLATE 1. Fig. 1. The tent poles of a private tent. 2. A private tent. 3 and 4. Fly tents. 5. An officer's marquis. 6. One of a very modern construction, chiefly calculated for subalterns; the door by being placed in the centre of the side, leaves an area between the beds which are placed at each end. 7. A captain's tent or marquis with a chimney. A captain's marquis shewn in a different point of view. 9. A field officer's marquis. 10. His servant's tent in the rear. 11. Tent or tents of a colonel of militia.

PLATE 2. Fig. 1. A horse for supporting the firelocks. 2. The manner in which the notches for receiving them are cut. 3. The side of one of the supporters. 4. Manner in which the arms are placed. 5. Laboratory tents belonging to the artillery. 6. A field-officer's tent or marquis. *Note*, the word marquis and tent are promiscuously used, though, strictly speaking, they are different things; the internal part of the marquis was commonly made of ticking, the external covering, canvas.

PLATE 3. Called bell-tents, colour-stand, and camp-kitchen. Fig. 1. A bell-tent viewed in the front. 2. The same seen in the rear. 3. The centre pole with the cross for supporting the arms. 4. The stand for the drums, colours, and officers' esponsions. 5. A camp kitchen with a woman cooking.

*Three Plans of Encampments, in the Present Form.*

PLATE 1. Plan of the encampment of a battalion of foot of nine companies, each consisting of seventy private men.

PLATE 2. Ditto of nine companies, of one hundred private men each.

PLATE 3. Plan of the encampment of a regiment of dragoons, consisting of six troops, forming three squadrons, with the light troop on the right.

## DESCRIPTION OF THE PLATES.

*N. B.* The lodging of the ruyters, which belongs to this subject, is engraved on the same plate as the trebuchet, the proper place for which would be among the antient artillery.

*The Instruments of Military Musick*

ARE comprised in one plate, containing, fig. 1. An ancient Danish trumpet, found in cleaning the bed of the river Witham, in Lincolnshire; it is now in the collection of Sir Joseph Banks, Bart. President of the Royal Society. 2. An antient horn or trumpet, in the collection of Mr. Rawle. 3. A common trumpet used in the cavalry. 4. An Asiatick kettle-drum, called, a Naccaire. 5. A common kettle-drum. 6. A fife. 7. A fide-drum, such as is now used by the infantry. 8. An Asiatick drum.

*Military Rewards and Punishments.*

OF this there are two plates. First, Chelsea College, as originally begun by King James I. Second, entitled, Military Punishments. This plate shews the whirligig, and wooden-horse.

## NUMBER XXI.

*Of the Volunteers, and Yeomanry Cavalry.*

WHEN the French in 1782 threatened an invasion of this country, the Earl of Shelburne, then secretary of state, proposed a plan for arming the people at large, with some restrictions, for the general defence. The project, however, being immediately followed by negotiation, which terminated in a peace, was not put in execution. In similar circumstances of preparations on the part of the enemy, and menaces of a descent, Mr. Dundas, in the beginning of 1797, invited the people to form themselves into volunteer corps for their own protection. In every part of the kingdom the proposal was accepted with the utmost alacrity and zeal; and in a very few months a new army of citizens was enrolled and mustered, in appearance equal to the regular and militia forces, and in the discipline of the parade very little inferior.

PREVIOUSLY to this, from the very commencement of the war, volunteer companies had been raised in different parts of England among the resident inhabitants, particularly in the towns contiguous to the sea-coast. At the same time troops of horse were levied among the gentlemen and yeomen of the country, upon the same principle with the volunteer companies. These were called the yeomanry cavalry.

OF these volunteer corps, both of horse and foot, some served without any pay from government; others received pay and allowances, under certain regulations.

THESE were chiefly as follows:

THE officers of the volunteer infantry corps were to receive subsistence, at the same rate as those of the regular forces, for the days only on which they met to exercise, and this was not to exceed two

days in the week. Constant pay, however, was allowed to one officer per company, not exceeding the rank of lieutenant, provided he was taken from the half-pay.

THE non-commissioned officers and private men were to have the same rate of pay, viz. one shilling each for every day's exercise of six hours, or an equivalent number of hours on different days, so as not to exceed two whole days in the week.

ONE drill-serjeant in each company was to have constant full pay, with such allowances as are made to the serjeants of the regular infantry.

THE mode of arming the men varied according to situation. Those in the interior towns were armed altogether with firelocks. Those on the coast too were often supplied wholly with musketry; but if they had the means of being trained to the great guns, then one third only were to be allowed fire-arms, and the rest exercised at the artillery\*.

THEY were also to be allowed their cloathing; viz. a coat, waist-coat, and breeches, round hat and cockade, for which the following was the allowance:

	£.	s.	d.
To a serjeant	-	-	3 3 9
To a corporal	-	-	1 11 3
To a drummer	-	-	2 3 6
To a private	-	-	1 9 3

THE accoutrements were to consist of a belt, pouch, and sling, for those provided with small arms. These were to be supplied by the office of ordnance; or if any corps wished to find their own arms and accoutrements, they might receive, as an equivalent, the following allowances:

---

\* BESIDES these, there were formed corps of sea-fencibles to man the batteries, &c. from among the sea-faring men along the coast. This excellent plan, which added materially to the strength of the country, with very little expence to government, was suggested by Captain John Schank, of the Navy, and one of the commissioners of the Transport-board.

	£.	s.	d.
For a musket, bayonet, and scabbard - - -	1	16	0
A halbert - - - - -	0	9	6
A drum and sticks - - - - -	0	19	0
A cartridge-box - - - - -	0	2	6
A tanned leather sling - - - - -	0	1	4

THE YEOMANRY CAVALRY were to be allowed pay when called out on actual service, and each corps was liable to be put upon duty within its district; all contingent expences properly and unavoidably incurred, were to be reimbursed after an investigation at the war-office.

ONE serjeant and a trumpeter per troop to have constant pay, with the same allowances as serjeants and trumpeters of regular cavalry.

TWELVE carbines were to be allowed to each troop: besides which, the appointments of each man were a pistol, broad-sword, sword-belt, cartouch-box, and strap, a waist-belt and holsters. These were either to be furnished by the ordnance, or an equivalent in money to be given in lieu of them, and 14s. 2d. per man for holsters.

THE VOLUNTEER CORPS that were established throughout the country, in consequence of Mr. Dundas's circular letter in 1797, receive only their arms from government. Both officers and men not only serve without pay, but even find their own cloathing. In some parishes indeed a subscription was made for this purpose; and it seemed but just that those who cannot from age, infirmity, or other causes, come forward in person, should, by a pecuniary aid, contribute to the general defence.

THE uniforms of these corps were various, according to the taste of their respective officers and commanders. In general they were blue or scarlet, with facings of different colours. Some chose to wear coats and hats; others jackets and caps, with the appointments of the fusileer regiments.

WE cannot ascertain the number of men that thus voluntarily

turned out for the defence of the kingdom ; but some general notion may be formed of it from the returns of those in the metropolis and its vicinity, who were first reviewed by his majesty on the 4th of June, 1799.

At this memorable review \* the right wing, under the command of Lord Heathfield, consisted of *twelve squadrons of cavalry*, extending from the east end of the river to Hyde-park-corner. The centre, commanded by Major-general Ludlow, formed a body of *twenty-nine corps of infantry*, occupying the ground between Hyde-park-corner and Cumberland-gate. In the left wing, under Major General D'Oyley, were *twenty-five corps of infantry*, extending along the north side of the Park to the west, as far as the Serpentine river. The whole line consisted of near *twelve thousand men*, commanded by the Earl of Harrington, the general in chief of the district.

---

\* THE corps were reviewed again on the 4th of June, 1800, when they mustered eleven thousand two hundred and nine officers and men.





SCIPIO RECEIVING THE KEYS OF CARTHAGE.

*The Property of Gustavus Brander Esq.*



A  
TREATISE  
ON  
ANCIENT ARMOUR  
AND  
WEAPONS,

ILLUSTRATED BY

Plates taken from the ORIGINAL ARMOUR in the Tower of London,  
and other Arsenals, Museums, and Cabinets.

---

By FRANCIS GROSE, Esq. F. R. S.





# P R E F A C E

*T O T H E S E C O N D E D I T I O N .*

---

**T**HIS Treatise, by the same Author, was published separately from the Military History, in numbers, a very short time before the latter was ready for the press. The publisher of the present edition has thought it best to incorporate them together; for although they are distinct works, their object and tendency is the same; and together they will form a more complete body of military antiquities.

WE are informed by the Author, in his Preface, that the chief sources from which he took his models, were the armour and weapons themselves, preserved either in the publick arsenals, or private cabinets; but as several specimens were wanting in those repositories, he had, to supply the deficiency, occasionally availed himself of the assistance of sepulchral monuments, the great seals of our kings and antient barons, and figures on painted glass: but these as sparingly and cautiously as possible, and only where the first were deficient. For the historical part he consulted a variety of glossaries, military books, and antient manuscript inventories of armour, both in publick libraries and those of his friends.

IN this Work, though the Author confines himself chiefly to the consideration of English armour, worn from the Conquest to the time of its difuse; yet he occasionally digresses so far, as to give a few plates of such pieces of antient or foreign armour as he thought curious and authentic, and which had not before been published.

THE following is the plan and arrangement of the Work. In order the more clearly to investigate his subject, the Author, in imitation of mathematical writers, first defines and describes every article of armour, piece by piece, its construction and use; he afterwards gives a general history of armour and arms, shewing their original forms and materials, with their successive improvements, and the different laws and regulations made respecting them, together with their prices. He lastly takes a view of the alterations in defensive armour, caused by the use of gun-powder; the armour directed by our statutes to be worn and kept by the several ranks of people; and its gradual and final difuse.

THE plates, we are told by the Author, were etched by Mr. JOHN HAMILTON, vice-president of the Society of Artists of Great-Britain.

A

# TREATISE

ON

## ANTIEN<sup>T</sup> ARMOUR, &c.

---

### DEFENSIVE ARMOUR.

#### THE HELMET.

THE head was defended by a piece of armour, known by the general denominations of Head-piece, Casque and Helmet. Helmets were antiently formed of various materials, but chiefly of skins of beasts, brass and iron.

A HELMET is either open or close; an open helmet covers only the head, ears, and neck, leaving the face unguarded (a). Some, deemed open helmets, have a bar or bars from the forehead to the chin, to guard against the transverse cut of a broad sword, but this affords little or no defence against the point of a lance or sword (b).

A CLOSE helmet entirely covers the head, face and neck, having on the front perforations for the admission of air, and slits through which

---

(a) As fig. 5, plate 7.

(b) For specimens of bar helmets, see plate 5, fig. 2 and 4.

the wearer may see the objects around him ; this part, which is stiled the visor (c), lifts up by means of a pivot over each ear.

SOME close helmets have a farther improvement called a (d) bever ; the bever when closed covers the mouth and chin, and either lifts up by revolving on the same pivots as the visor, or lets down by means of two or more pivots on each side near the jaws, in which case the bever consists of several laminae or plates, one shutting over the other.

HELMETS with bevers to let down, are less common than those whose bevers lift up : the use of the bever was to enable the wearer to eat or drink, more commodiously than could be done in a helmet with a visor only.

THE bars placed before the faces of the open helmets, were also contrived to lift up and let down by means of pivots placed as for the visor (e).

THE helmets of the Greeks and Romans were mostly if not always open ; some of the latter were much like scull caps, not long since worn by our dragoons (f). Montfaucon says he never saw an antient helmet with a visor to raise or let down, but is nevertheless of opinion, that they had those contrivances ; it seems as if the Romans, at least those of which Pompey's army was composed at Pharsalia, had open helmets, as Cæsar directed his soldiers to strike them in the face : an order he would not have given had their faces been covered.

Two Grecian Helmets (g) in the British Museum have a kind of contrivance to cover the nose, somewhat in effect resembling the bar.

(c) VISOR, from the French word *vifer*, to take aim.

(d) BEVER, from *beveur*, drinker ; or from the Italian, *bere*, to drink.

(e) FIG. 2, plate 4, shews a helmet, with the visor and bever closed up, the flits cut through the visor for the benefit of sight. Fig. 1, in the same plate, represents the same helmet, with the visor lifted up, the bever remaining close. Fig. 5, plate 5, a helmet with both visor and bever up. And fig. 3, 5, and 6, plate 4, a helmet whose bever lets down. Fig. 2 and 4, plate 5, two helmets with the bars down. And fig. 1 and 3, the same helmets with the bars lifted up.

(f) SEE plate 2. fig. 2.

(g) SEE different views of these helmets in plate 1.

OVER the top of the helmet rose an elevated ridge called the crest (h), which both strengthened it against a blow, and afforded a place for decoration and distinction.

HELMETS are again divided into different species, distinguished by the appellation of *chapelle de fer*, the *burgonet*, *bacinet*, *falet*, *scull*, or *hufken*, *castle*, *pot* and *morion*.

THE CHAPELLE DE FER.

THE *chapelle de fer* is, literally translated, the iron hat, or *chapellet*; but according to Father Daniel (i), the term *chapelle* was anciently used to express every sort of covering for the head. The *chapelle de fer* occurs in the statute of Winchester (k), among the different kinds of armour therein directed to be kept; but by some unaccountable mistake in Ruffhead's edition of the Statutes at large, is there repeatedly translated a breast-plate (l). Under the denomination of the *chapelle de fer* may be ranged those conical and cylindrical head-pieces, expressed on the great seals of our early kings, and ancient great barons (m).

THE *chapelle de fer* is frequently mentioned by Froissart, and was then the head-piece worn by the light horse, and foot soldiers. Fa-

(h) ALL the helmets, plate 5, have crests; sometimes the crests represented lions, dragons, or other devices, tending to make the warrior appear taller and more terrible. Crests also served to point out kings and generals to their followers. (1) The points that made the specific differences between helmets, that is, which constituted one a *bacinet*, another a *falet*, &c. are not so exactly defined as could be wished. In some degree to ascertain this matter is here nevertheless attempted.

(i) HISTOIRE de la Milice Francois, vol. I. p. 389.

(k) THIS statute was enacted at Winchester, 13 Edward I. cap. 6. whence it derived its name; it was also called the assize of arms, because therein were directed the different kinds of arms to be kept by every rank and degree of persons, according to their estates, or personal property.

(l) By this error, defensive armour for the head is totally omitted, for though there was a hood of mail to the hawberk, there was none to the haubergeon.

(m) SEE plate 9.

ther Daniel fays (n), it was a light helmet, without visor or gorget, like those since called bacinets; perhaps a kind of iron cap attached to, or worn over a hood of mail. This iron hat is called also in French, armet, and was occasionally put on by knights, when they retired from the Melee of the battle, to rest themselves and take breath.

#### THE BOURGUINOTE, OR BURGONET.

THIS kind of head-piece probably succeeded the cylindric and conical casques beforementioned; that celebrated French antiquary, Monsieur Fauchet (o), fays, "when helmets better represented the human head, they were called bourguinotes, possibly from being invented by the Burgundians." The helmet, fig. 2 of plate 3, and fig. 1 and 2 of plate 8, seem to answer this definition of the burgonet, for not only the figure of the human head is preserved, but also the shapes or outlines of the features.

#### THE BACINET.

BACINETS were light helmets, so called from their resemblance to a bafon, and were generally without vizors, though from divers quotations cited by Du Cange (p), they appear occasionally to have had them. Fauchet supposes them to have been a lighter sort of helmet, that did not cover the face, and fays, he finds that the knights often exchanged their helmets for bassinets, when much fatigued, and wishing to ease and refresh themselves; at a time when they could not, with propriety, go quite unarmed.

BASSINETS were worn in the reigns of Edward II. and III. and

(n) HIST. Mil. tom. 1. p. 389.

(o) DE lordonnance, armes & instrumens, desquels les Francois ont usé en leurs guerres, l. 2. p. 42. He there also fays, that the burgonets were by the Italians called armets, falades, or celates.

(p) GUIL. Guiart. An. 1270.

An. 1304.

Et Clers Bacinez a Visieres.

Hauberjons, & tacles Entieres

Efcus, Bacinez a Visieres.



Richard II. by most of the English Infantry, as may be repeatedly seen in the Rolls of Parliament, and other public records

THE SALADE, SALET, OR CELATE.

FATHER DANIEL (q) defines a falet to be a sort of light casque, without a crest, sometimes having a visor, and being sometimes without one.

IN a manuscript (r) inventory of the royal stores and habiliments of war in the different arsenals and garrisons, taken 1st of Edward VI., there are entries of the following articles. At Hampton-court, fallets for archers on horseback, fallets with grates, and old fallets with vizards: at Windsor, falettes and skulls: at Calais, faletts with vyfars and bevers, and falets with bevers. These authorities prove, that falets were of various constructions.

THE SCULL

Is a head-piece, without visor or bever, resembling a bowl or bason, such as was worn by our cavalry, within twenty or thirty years.

THE HUFKEN.

THIS seems to be a light head-piece worn by archers; it is mentioned in a manuscript treatise of martial discipline by Ralph Smith, dedicated to Sir Christopher Hatton, then vice-chamberlain to Queen Elizabeth: its particular form or construction is not described.

THE CASTLE.

THE castle was perhaps a figurative name for a close head-piece, deduced from its enclosing and defending the head, as a castle did the whole body; or a corruption from the old French word casquetel, a small or light helmet.

(q) Hist. Milice Francoise.

(r) THIS very curious manuscript is the property of Gustavus Brander, Esq. of Christ Church, Hampshire.

## THE MORION.

THE morion is a kind of open helmet, without visor or beaver, somewhat resembling a hat; it (s) was commonly worn by the harquebussiers and musqueteers.

## THE POT.

THE pot is an iron hat with broad brims: there are many under this denomination in the Tower, said to have been taken from the French; one of them is represented in plate 7, fig. 1 and 2.

THE names of the chief pieces particularly appropriated to the defence of the breast and body, were the coat of mail, or haubergeon, the shirt of mail, the jazerant, the aketon, the jack, the vambasium, the cuirass, the hallicret, and the brigandine.

THESE pieces were of different forms and various materials (t), besides brass and iron, such as leather, horn, soft linen, hemp, cotton, and wool. The hawkberk, almaine ryvetts, and corselet, were terms signifying complete suits.

OF mail there are two sorts, viz. chain and plate mail. Chain mail (u) is formed by a number of iron rings, each ring having four

(s) LE bacinet, le cabasset, le pot de fer, le chapeau de fer, la salade, le morion, étoient des espèces de casques assez semblables, excepté que la salade avoit quelquefois une visière, & que le morion étoit propre de l'infanterie; ces casques se lioient ordinairement, sous le menton avec des courroies & des boucles; la bourgoignote paroît avoir été plus massive & a visière, puisque le Président Fauchet, comme on la vû ci-dessus, en parle comme d'un espèce de heaume. P. Daniel Hist. de la Milice Fr. tom. 1. p. 400. Fig. 1, in plate 3, représente a morion.

(t) THE earliest armour was undoubtedly made of the skins of beasts slain in the chase, and afterwards of jacked leather: most of the armour of the ancients were of those materials. The lorica was originally composed of leather, and derives its name from *lorum*, a thong, as does the cuirassé, from the French word cuir, leather.

(u) FROM *macula*, Lat. or *mascle*, French, a term in heraldry originally meant to express the mesh of a net. Richlet says, *mailler* is used as a verb neuter, to express the act of netting. It also means an ancient piece of small money, according to some, of a square figure, which agrees pretty well with the plate mail. Some derive it from the Irish word

*mala*,

others inserted into it, the whole exhibiting a kind of net work, with circular meshes, every ring separately rivetted; this kind of mail answers to that worn on the antient breast plates, whence they were denominated *loricæ hammataë*, from the rings being hooked together (x).

PLATE mail consisted of a number of small laminæ of metal, commonly iron, laid one over the other like the scales of fish (y), and sewed down to strong linen or leathern jacket, by thread passing through a small hole in each plate; this was exactly the form of the antient *lorica squammosa* (z).

THE hauberk was a complete covering of mail from head to foot. It consisted (a) of a hood joined to a jacket with sleeves, breeches, stockings and shoes of double chain mail, to which were added gaunt-

*mala*, said to signify armour; or the word *mael*, which in Welch properly means steel, and metaphorically hardness and armour; see Rowland's *Mona Antiqua*. Boyer, in his French Dictionary, translates the word *maille*, a little iron ring.

(x) *LORICAM confertam hamis, auroque triliticem.* Virgil *Æneid*, lib. iii. v. 67.

(y) *RUTULUM thoraca indutus ahenis,*  
Horrebat *Squammis.*—Lib. xi. v. 487.

ISIDORUS. *Squamma est lorica ex laminis æreis vel ferreis concatenata, in modum Squammarum piscis.*

(z) SIMILAR to this is the Sarmatian cuirasse, described by Pausanias as quoted by Lipsius and Montfaucon.—They take the hoofs of their horses, which they cleanse and polish, and then cut in little pieces like dragons' scales, which done they bore the scales, and afterwards sew them with the sinews of an ox or horse: if any of my readers have not seen dragons' scales, he will better comprehend the thing when he is told that they resemble the divisions in a pine apple when it is green. Thus they make their cuirasses, which for beauty and strength are not inferior to those of the Greeks, for they very well sustain both distant and close blows, whereas the cuirasses of linen are not so sure, nor proof against iron. The linen ones are indeed commodious for hunters, as being what lions and leopards cannot enter with their teeth.

(a) SEE the description given by the president Fauchet. *Quant aux hommes de cheval, ils chauffoient des chauffés de mailles, des eperons a mollettes aussi large que la paume de la main, car cest un vieux mot que le chevalier, commence à farmer par les chauffés puis endoffert un Gobisson, . . . . . cetoit un vetement long jusques sur les cuisses & contrepointe.*

lets of the same construction. Some of these hauberks opened before like a modern coat, others were closed like a shirt.

IN France only persons possessed of a certain estate, called un fief de hauber, were permitted to wear a hauberck, which was the armour of a knight; esquires might only wear a simple coat of mail, without the hood and hose.

THE haubergeon was a coat composed either of plate or chain mail without sleeves: the shirt of mail was much in the form of the shirts now worn, except that it had no sleeves; it was always of chain mail.

THE jazerant (b) is, according to Du Cange, a sort of military vestment. A jazerant of double mail, occurs in many antient romances. But what was the specific distinction of a jazerant seems at present uncertain.

THE aketon (c), gambeson (d), vambasium (e), and jack (f), were

(b) JASERAN, Jean le Maire livre 1. chap. 4. & avoit pour ceux, six cottes de Maille jadis appelées Jasserans: toutes de fin or. Nicot. On appelle Jasseran aussi la chainne d'or ou d'argent, qui est de grosses mailles couchée & ferrées, dont les femmes font fort souvent des bracelets.

JAZERANTS of steel and iron are mentioned in an inventory of the armour of Louis the Great of France, anno 1316, quoted by Du Cange. Item 3 coleretes Pizaines de Jazeran d'Acier, & item une couverture de Jazeran de fer.

(c) AKETON, Acton, Sagum, Militare, quod alias Gambezonom vocant, ex Gallico, Hoqueton aut Hauqueton, seu potius ex Cambrico-Brittanico Actuum, Lorica dupla, duplodes. Du Cange.

Si tu veuil un Acqueton  
Né L'empli mie de Coton  
Mais d'Oevres de Misericorde,  
Afin que le Diable ne te morde.

Le Roman du Riche & du Ladre, MS.

(d) GAMBESON, Cento, Centunculas, Thoracomachus, Vestimentum, coactile ex coactile lana confectum seu vestimenti Genus quod de coactili, ad mensuram & tutelam pectoris humani conficitur de Mollibus lanis, ut hoc inducta primum lorica vel clibanus, aut similia fragilitatem, corporis ponderis asperitate non Læderent. Du Cange. Statuta, MS.

CE Gobeson ou Gambeson dont on vient de parler, etoit une espèce de pourpoint fort long

military vestments, calculated for the defence of the body, differing little from each other except in their names, their materials and construction were nearly the same; the authorities quoted in the notes

long, de Taffetas ou de Cuir & bourre de laine, ou d'etoupes, ou de Crin, pour rompre L'effort de la Lance, qui bien qu' elle ne penetrât pas la cuirasse auroit meurtri la corps en enfoncant les mailles de fer, dont la cuirasse étoit composée.—P. Daniel Hist. de la Mil. Fr. tom. 1. p. 387.

(e) WANBASIUM, vocis etymon a veteri Germanico quidam accerferunt Wan-bon, Venter, vel Wamba, ut habet Willeramus in cantica; vel a Saxonica, Wambe, unde Angli Wombe acceperunt, ita ut Wambasium fuit Ventrile, vel ventrile, Ventris & Pectoris tegmen, quod Germani Wambeys vocant, vide Cento. Thoromachus & notas ad Vellharduinum, p. 294, & ad Joinvillam, p. 74. & de Casseneuve in Etymol. Gall. Phillipus Cluverius, lib. 1. Germ. Antiq. cap. 16. ad Strabonis locum, ubi Belgos ait, &c. &c. hic quid aliud interpretis—ad inguina & nates usque demissos nisi eam vestium partem, quam vulgus nunc Latinorum Thoracem appellat, patria vero lingua Wammes, & inferioris Germaniæ dialectus Wambeis, Danica Wames, Hispani, Jubon, Itali Guiponæ, Galli Pourpoint, Angli & Leodicenses, ad Mofam Annem, DOBLET.

CHRONICON Colmariense, an. 1298, Armati reputabantur, qui galeas ferreas in capitibus habebant & qui Wambasia, id est tunicam spissam, ex lino & stuppa, vel veteribus pannis confutam & desuper camisiam ferream, &c.

(f) THE Jack. Le Jaque, ou La Jaque, étoit une espece de Justau-Corps, qui venoit au moins jusqu'aux genous. Nicot le definit ainsi, Jaque, habillement de Guerre renflé de Cotton; & Coquillart dans son livre des Droits nouveaux le décrit ainsi en quatre Vers,

Cétoit un pourpoint de chamois,  
Farci de boure fus & fous  
Un grand Vilain Jaque d'Anglois  
Qui lui pendoit jusqu'aux genous.

DE Jaque est venu le mot de Jaquette, encore usité en notre langue, pour signifier l'Habillement des enfans qui ne portent point encore de haut de Chauffes. Ces Jaques étoient bourez entre les toiles ou l'etoffe dont ils étoient composez. Cétoit non seulement pour empêcher que la lance ou l'épee ne percât mais encore pour empêcher les contusions, que l'effort de la lance ou de l'épee pouvoient faire. Autrefois pour la même raison, les Chevaliers avoient de ces Jaques bourrez sous leur Haubert de Mailles. C'étoient ces especes de Jaques qu'on appelloit du nom de Gobiffon, de Gombifon & de Gambefon.

LE Jaque dont il s'agit dans le Memoire, que je vais rapporter, étoit d'un cuir de cerf, doublé de vingt cinq ou de trente toiles usées & mediocrement déliées. L'Auteur du Memoire dit que ces Jaques étoient a l'épreve, & qu'on avoit vu rarement des soldatz tuez dans cette armure.

shew they were all composed of many folds of linen, stuffed with cotton, wool, or hair quilted, and commonly covered with leather made of buck or doe skin. The aketon was long the sole defensive armour for the body worn by the English infantry; as it not only covered the breast, but also the belly, it was by the Germans called wambasiam, or the belly-piece; the jack gave name to its diminutive the jacket.

ALTHOUGH the gambeson was chiefly worn under the coat of mail to protect the body from being bruised by the strokes of the sword or lance, a circumstance that might happen without a division of the mail, the verses quoted in the note from the Poem of the Siege of

MEMOIRE de ce que le Roy (Louis XI.) veut que les Francs—Archiers de son Royaume soient habillez en Jacques d'icy en avant, et pour ce a chargé au Bailly de Mante en faire un projet. Et semble au dit Bailly de Mante que L'Habillement de Jacques leur feroient bon, prouffitabie & avantageux pour faire la guerre, veu que sont gens de pié, & que en ayant les brigandines, il leur fault porter beaucoup de choses que ung homme seul & a pié ne peut faire.

ET premicrement leur fault des dits Jacques de 30 toiles, ou de 25 : & ung cuir de cerf, fa tout le moins; et si sont de 30 & ung cuir de cerf, ils sont des bons. Les toils usées & deliées moyennement sont les meilleures, & doivent estre les Jacques a quatre quartiers, & faut que les manches soient fortes comme le corps, reservé le cuir; & doit estre l'affiète des manches grande, & que l'affiète preigne près du collet, non pas sur l'os de l'espaule, qui soit large dessous l'aisselle, & plantureux dessous le bras, assez faulce & large sur les costez bas. Le colet soit comme le demourant du Jacques, & que le colet ne soit pas trop hault derriere pour l'amour de la falade. Et faut que le dit Jacques soit lassé devant, & que il ait dessous une porte piece de la force du dit Jacques. Ainsi fera seul le dit Jacques & aisé: moyennent qu'il ait un pourpoint sans manches ne colet, de deux toiles seulement, qui n'aura que quatre doys de large sur l'espaule. Auquel pourpoint il attachera ses chausses. Ainsi flotera dedans son Jacques, & fera a son aise. Car on ne vit oncques tuer de coups de main ne de fleche dedans les dits Jacques six hommes: & se y fouloient les gens bien combattre. J'observerai ici en passant que cette armure & cette espee de cuirasse de linge n'estoit point une invention nouvelle, & qu'elle avoit été en usage chez quelques nations, dans les tems les plus éloignez, & que Xenophon en fait mention.—P. Daniel, tom. 1. p. 242 & 243.

In the MS. Inventory of Armour, &c. 1 Edward VI. before quoted, there occurs in the charge of Hans Hunter, armourer, Westminster, item one Northerne Jacke, covered with lynnec.

Karleverok (g), shew that it was sometimes worn as a fur coat, and ornamented with rich decorations. So other authorities (h) point out that the acketon was occasionally put on under the jazerant, or coat of mail.

THE cuirafs covered the body before and behind; it consisted of two parts, a breast and back piece of iron, fastened together by means of straps and buckles, or other like contrivances. They were originally, as the name imports, made of leather, but afterwards of metal both brass and iron (i). Father Daniel says he has seen cuirasses of various constructions, in the cabinet of arms at Chantilly (k).

(g) MEINTE heaume et meint chapeau burni  
 Meint. riche Gamboison Guarni  
 De Soie et Cadas et Coton  
 En lour venue veist on.

Seize of Karleverok, MSS. Bib. Cotton, Caligula, A. xviii.

(h) CHRONICON Bert. Guesclini, MSS.  
 L'Escu li derompi & le bon Jazerant  
 Mais le *Haueton* fut fort, qui fut de bouquerant.  
 & Le Roman de Gaydon, MSS.  
 Sur L'Auqueton vest L'Auberc jazerant, et infra.  
 Sor L'Auqueton, qui dor fu pointurez  
 Vesti L'Auberc, qui fu fort & ferrez.

(i) SOMETIMES the part which covers the neck, and connects the helmet and cuirafs, is fixed to the former, sometimes it is separate, and is then called a gorget, of which see a representation in plate 26, fig. 4.

(k) J'AI vu dans le cabinet d'Armes de Chantilly, plus de quarante corps de cuirasse, dont plusieurs sont differentes les unes des autres. Il y en a une ouverte par devant, qui se fermoit avec trois crochets, & une autre qui se fermoit aussi par devant avec deux boutons; une autre qui se plioit en deux par devant, & qui n'empechoit point l'homme armé de se pancher: une autre qui se plioit par en haut & par en bas, c'est à dire que celleci etoit de trois pieces qui rentroient les unes dans les autres, & l'autre de deux pieces jointes de même; elles étoient plus commodes pour les mouvemens du corps: mais peut-être n'étoient elles pas si fures contre la lance. Hist. Mil. Fr. tom. 1. p. 400.

SEE Du Cange under the word Brigandine, and Froissart, vol. 1. chap. 128, 148, 160, and vol. 4. chap. 25.; also Monstrellet and others. The manner in which brigandines were constructed is well described in the new edition of Blount's Tenures, lately published. The

THE halecret was a kind of corcelet of two pieces, one before and one behind; it was lighter than the cuirafs.

THE brigandine takes its name from the troops by which it was first worn, who were called brigans; they were a kind of light armed irregular foot, much addicted to plunder, whence it is probable the appellation of brigands was given to other freebooters. Indeed this armour, which consisted of a number of small plates of iron, sewed upon quilted linen or leather, covered over with the same, was seemingly well calculated for robbers, as they were always armed ready for an attack, without its being observed, so as to alarm the persons whom they meant to rob.

THE brigadine is frequently confounded with the jack, and sometimes with the habergeon, or coat of plate mail.

IN Mr. Brander's Inventory of Armour in the Royal Arsenals, we find a variety of brigandines, some filed complete, having sleeves covered with crimson, or cloth of gold; others with blue sattin; some with fustian and white cloth, these were called millers' coats; some likewise are said to be covered with linen cloth, and to have long taces, i. e. skirts: the covering was in all likelihood according to the rank or fortune of the wearer.

THERE are several brigandines still remaining in the Tower, from one of which the coat given, plate 26, fig. 1, was drawn.

#### ALMAINE RYVETTS.

WHAT was the particular form or construction of the almaine ryvetts, I have not been able to discover, but conjecture they were

Hambergell was a coat composed of several folds of coarse linen or hempen cloth, in the midst of which was placed a sort of net-work of small ringlets of iron, about a quarter of an inch diameter interwoven very artificially together, and in others of thin iron plates about an inch from side to side, with a hole in the midst of each, the edges laid one over another, quilted through the cloth with small packthread, and bedded in paper covered with wool; parts of two such haubergells are now in the editor's possession, either of which would be sufficient to defend the body of a man from the stroke or point of a sword, if not from a musquet ball, and yet so pliable as to admit the person wearing them to use all his limbs, and move his joints without the least interruption.



denominated ryvetts from having the joints of the arms made flexible by means of rivets, a contrivance possibly invented or perfected in Germany, or perhaps that country might be famous for a manufactory of this kind of armour.

INDEED from several original contracts, preserved in the libraries of the curious, it appears they were chiefly purchased from foreigners; the substance of one in the possession of Thomas Astle, Esq. is given in the note below (1). King Henry VIII. in the 38th year of his reign, had almaine armourers in his pay, as we learn from the following entry in a book, preserved in the Remembrance Office, Westminster, containing an account of the royal expences of that year. "Item, for the wages of the almaine armourers at Greenwich," &c.

THE CORSELET, OR CORSET.

THIS was a suit of armour chiefly worn by pikemen, who were thence often denominated corselets. Strictly speaking, the word corselet meant only that part which covered the body (m), but was generally used to express the whole suit, under the terms of a corselet furnished or complete. This included the head-piece and gorgett, the back and breast, with skirts of iron called tassés or tassets covering the thighs, as may be seen in the figures representing the exercise of the pike, published anno 1622, by the title of the Military Art of Training; the same kind of armour was worn by the harquebusiers.

(1) AN indenture between Master Thomas Wooley and John Dance, Gent. in the 4th year of Henry VIII. of the one part, and Guydo Portavarii, merchant, of Florence, on the other part, whereby he covenants to furnish two thousand complete harnesses, called *Alemain Ryvetts*, accounting always among them a falet, a gorget, a breast-plate, a back-plate, and a payre of splyntes for every complete harness, for the price of sixteen shilling sterling.

(m) CORSELET, cuirasse pour un piquier. Richelet. Corselet or Corset, armour for a pikeman, to cover either the whole body or the trunk of it. Boyer derives it from corset, a French word signifying a woman's quilted boddice, lacing before. Richelet explains it by corps de iupe de Paifanne; some deduce it from the Latin words, cor, heart, and celator, a coverer. Mallet in the Travaux de Mars says, a corselet differs from a cuirass, in being only pistol proof, whereas the cuirass is musquet proof.

Plate 15 represents a corselet complete with morion and taffets, which are fastened to the cuirass by hooks, in the manner there shewn.

To the back-piece of the cuirass for the protection of the loins, was hooked on a piece of armour called *Garde des Reins*, or *Culettes*; and the breast-piece was occasionally strengthened by an additional plate called a *plaquet*. On some suits were screwed large iron cod-pieces; these, according to tradition, were intended to prevent the ill consequences of those violent shocks received in charging, either in battle, or at a tournament. Some say they were meant to contain sponges for receiving the water of knights, who in the heat of an engagement might not have any more convenient method of discharging it. But most probably they were rather constructed in conformity to a reigning fashion in the make of the breeches of those times (n). The armour of John of Gaunt and Henry VIII., represented in the plates 20 and 22, have these indecent appendages. Another, formerly belonging to that king, is preserved in the Tower; and divers others occur in the different lists of armour in our royal arsenals.

To the cuirass were buckled the armour for the shoulders and arms, the first called *pouldrons*, the second *brassarts*, *garde bras*, *les avant bras*, and corruptly in English, *vambraces*. The *vambraces* included all the defence for the arms from the *pouldrons* to the wrist. At the joint, or bending of the arm, the *vambraces* were cut obliquely; the vacancies on the inside, when the arms were strengthened, were covered by pieces of mail called *gouffets*, and afterwards by a contrivance of plates resembling hearts. *Cuirasses*, with entire sleeves of mail, are mentioned in divers military writers. A defence for the

---

(n) THESE monstrous cod-pieces were in fashion in the time of King Henry VIII. He himself is painted by Holbein with a pair of breeches of this fashion, in the picture representing him granting a charter to the barber-surgeons. In the old History of John Winchcombe, the famous clothier of Newbury, in the reign of Henry VIII., his dress, when he went to meet the king, is thus described: he had on a plain russet coat, a pair of kerse breeches, without welt or guard, and stockings of the same piece sewed to his slops, which had a great cod-piece, on which he stuck his pins.

arms, called (o) splints, constituted part of the suit denominated an *almaine ryvett*.

THE hands were defended by gauntlets; these were sometimes of chain mail, but oftener of small plates of iron rivetted together, in imitation of the lobster's tail, so as to yield to every motion of the hand; some gauntlets inclosed the whole hand, as in a box or case; others were divided into fingers, each finger consisting of eight or ten separate pieces, the inside gloved with buff leather; some of these reached no higher than the wrist, others to the elbow; the latter were stiled long armed gauntlets: many of them are to be seen in the Tower; for a representation of one of them, see plate 26, fig. 4.

THE thighs of the cavalry were defended by small strips of iron plate, laid horizontally over each other, and rivetted together, forming what were called *cuissearts*, or thigh-pieces; of these some entirely enclosed the thighs, and others only covered the front of them (p), the inside, next the horse, being unarmed. They were made flexible at the knees by joints like those in the tail of a lobster, and were called *genouillieres*, or knee-pieces. *Taffets*, or skirts, hooked on to the front of the cuirass, were, as has been before said, used by the infantry.

FOR the defence of the legs were worn a sort of iron boots, called *greeves* (q). Plates of iron covering the front of the leg were also frequently worn over the stockings of mail. The *greeves* commonly covered the whole leg, as in the armour of John of Gaunt, and that of Henry VIII.; with these they had broad toed iron shoes, with joints at the ankle; sometimes they had *fabatons* of mail. Boots of jacked leather, called *curboully* (*cuir bouille*), were also worn by horsemen; these are mentioned by Chaucer.

(o) SPLINTS, harness or armour for the arms.—Philips's *New World of Words*.

(p) SEE plate 16.

(q) SIR JAMES TURNER, in his *Essays on the Art of War*, entitled, *Pallas Armata*, chap. 3. page 169, calls *Greeves* armour for the arms.

## TILTING ARMOUR.

TILTING armour consisted in general of the same pieces as that worn in war, except that they were lighter and more ornamented; they had however the following peculiarities.

THE helmet was perforated only on the right side (r); the left side of the face, the left shoulder and breast were covered by a plate called a grand guard (s), which fastened on at the stomach. On each shoulder was also fixed a plate declining from the face like wings (t); these were intended to protect the eyes from the point of the lance, and were called pafs guards; also from the right side of the cuirass projected a contrivance like a moveable bracket, called a rest, for the purpose of supporting the lance.

THE last article of defensive armour was the shield, of which there was a great variety both in form and materials. The shields used by our Norman ancestors were the triangular or heater shield, the target or buckler, the roundel or rondache, and the pavais, pavache, or tallevas.

OF the triangular, or, as it is vulgarly called, the heater shield (u), no specimen has reached us, at least that I have been able to discover. We have nevertheless the united testimony of seals, monuments, painted glass, and antient tapestry, to prove that shields of that form were in use at the period above mentioned.

MOST of the monumental figures of cross-legged knights are armed with triangular shields, which are generally a little convex, or curved, in their breadth; their upper extremity terminated by a line parallel

(r) FIG. 3 and 4 in plate 10, a tilting helmet shewn in different positions: the perforations come on the left side instead of the right, from the drawing not having been reversed.

(s) PLATE 23 represents a suit of tilting armour with the grand guard and lance rest. Fig. 2 shews the grand guard on a larger scale, and in a different position.

(t) PLATE 25, the elevations or projections on the shoulders of the figure are the pafs guards.

(u) THEY were called heater shields from their resemblance to that instrument of housewifery, therefore probably a name of no very remote antiquity.

to the horizon, and their sides formed by the intersection of the segments of two circles; the same sort are mostly represented on antient seals and windows; sometimes, though not often, their surfaces are flat.

THE Norman shields represented on the curious tapistry at Bayeux, (x) have their upper extremities circular, their whole form much resembling a school-boy's kite.

ON the inside were two or more loops of leather, or wooden handles, through which the arm and hand were passed, when the shield was brafed, or prepared for use; at other times it was carried by a leathern thong worn round the neck.

THE target (y), or buckler (z), was carried by the heavy armed foot; it answered to the scutum of the Romans; its form was sometimes that of a rectangular parallelogram, but more commonly had its bottom rounded off; it was generally convex, being curved in its breadth. Targets were mostly made of wood, covered with many folds of bull's hide or jacked leather (a), and occasionally with plates of brass or iron; the extremities were always bound with metal, and frequently from the centre of the front projected a boss, or umbo, armed with a spike. On the inside were two handles. Men of family usually had their armorial bearings painted on their targets. After the invention of fire-arms, instead of the spike the centre of some targets were armed with one or more small gun-barrels, a grate or aperture being left in the target for the convenience of taking aim; several of these are mentioned in Mr. Brander's manuscript (b); one is still shewn in the Spanish armory in the Tower of London.

(x) ON this tapistry is wrought the History of William the Conqueror; it is engraved in Montfaucon's *Hist. de la Monarchie Francoise*.

(y) FROM *tergum*, a hide.

(z) JUNIUS derives the word *Bucler* from the German *Beucheler* or *Bocken-leer*, i. e. the skin of a goat.

(a) BY the laws of Ethelstan, any shield maker covering a shield with sheep skins, forfeited thirty shillings; a prodigious fine in those days. See the *Saxon Laws*.

(b) TARGETTS *steilde w. gonnes*, 35. *Targetts plaync without gonnes*, 7. *Targett with xx litle gonnes—oone*. *Target w. four gonnes—oone*. *A long tergett w. oone gonnc—oone*. *A target of the shell of a tortys—oone*, in the Tower.

THESE shields or targets were of different sizes; those of the ancients were so large as to cover almost the whole body, so that when a sentinel had set the base of his shield on the ground (c), he could rest his head on the upper margin. They were also large enough to convey the dead, or those dangerously wounded, from the field, as is evident from the well-known exhortation of the Lacedemonian women to their sons and husbands, "Bring this back, or come back upon it;" a circumstance that also marks the ignominy attending the loss of a shield. This was common to all nations; and at the close of the fourteenth century a knight, who had lost his shield, was said to want his coat armour, and could not sit at the table with the other knights until he had, by some honourable exploit, or feat of arms against the enemy, obliterated that disgrace; if before this was achieved he should attempt to place himself among them, it was the duty of the herald to tear his mantle; an example of this is mentioned in the note below (d).

THE roundel, or rondache, derived its name from its circular figure; it was made of oziars, boards of light wood, sinews or ropes, covered with leather, plates of metal, or stuck full of nails in concentric circles or other figures. The shields and roundels of metal, particularly those richly engraved or embossed, seem rather to have been insignia of dignity, antiently born before generals or great officers, than calculated for war, most of them being either too heavy for convenient use, or too slight to resist the violence of a stroke either from a sword or battle-axe.

ALTHOUGH most roundels are convex, yet we meet with many that are concave; but these have commonly an unbo; the reason for this

(c) AN iron spike was fixed to the bottom of the antient shields for the purpose of fixing them in the ground; these spikes were also useful in battle.

(d) Hujusque ritus præclarum habetur exemplum apud Willelmum Hedam in Fredrico Episcopo Ultrajectensi, sub ann. 1395, quippe narrat comiti Ostrevandiæ Willelmo, mensæ Regis Francorum assidenti cum alii principibus, Feccialem quem Heraldam vocant, lacerasse mantile sibi antepositum, objicientem indignum fore, quod aliquis interesset mensæ Regiæ, carens insignis armorum, innuentem insignia ipsius Willelmi apud Frifos orientales amissa.— Du Cange.

conſtruction is not very obvious, as the concave ſurface ſeems of all others the leaſt calculated for diverting a ſtroke. The handles are placed as in the ſhield and target; the roundel ſeems in many inſtances to reſemble the Roman parma.

THE pavais, pavache, or tallevas, was a large ſhield, or rather a portable mantlet, capable of covering a man from head to foot, and probably of ſufficient thickneſs to reſiſt the miſſive weapons then in uſe. Theſe were in ſieges carried by ſervants (e) whoſe buſineſs it was to cover their maſters with them, whilſt they with their bows and arrows ſhot at the enemy on the ramparts (f). As this muſt have been a ſervice of danger, it was that perhaps which made the office of ſcutifer, or ſhield-bearer honourable, as the mere carrying of a helmet or ſhield on a march, or in a proceſſion, partook more of the duty of a porter than that of a ſoldier. In the liſt of the army that accompanied King Edward III. to Calais, we find many pavifors; theſe were probably men trained to the uſe of the pavais, which muſt have required dexterity as well as courage. Pavaches were ſometimes ſupported by props; they were alſo uſed at ſea to defend the ſides of the veſſels, like the preſent netting of our ſhips of war; this defence was called a pavifade, and may be ſeen in the representation of antient ſhips. The pavais was rectangular at the top, the ſides conſequently parallel, but the angles rounded off at the bottom.

UNDER the protection of the pavaches, workmen alſo approached to the foot of the wall in order to ſap it, as may be ſeen by the extract from Froiſſart, in the note below (g).

(e) Tunc præcedebat cum Parma Garcio, ſub qua  
 Nil ſibi formidans obſeſſos damnificabat.  
 Aſſiduè poterat nec ab illis damnificari  
 Afferibus latis dum Parma protegit ipſum.—*Guill. Breton.*

(f) QUIDAM de obſidione conſueverat venire ad foſſas Parmâ prætentâ quam quidam Famulus ante ipſum portabat, non manuali quidem Parmâ ſed immenſâ, quales in obſidionibus deferri ſolent.—*Rigord, p. 215.*

(g) LORS paſſa le Comte d'Erbi outre et prit le chemin devers Aguillon, mais ainſoit qu'il y parvint, trouva le chaſtel de la Roche-Milon qui eſtoit bien pourvu de Sodoyers & d'Artillerie;

ALTHOUGH spurs cannot be considered as armour, either offensive or defensive, yet as they made an important part of the equipment of an antient knight, and were the insignia of his dignity, it seems necessary to say something of them.

Two sorts of spurs seem to have been in use about the time of the Conquest, one called a pryck, having only a single point like the gaffe of a fighting cock; the other consisting of a number of points of a considerable length, radiating from and revolving on a center, thence named the rouelle or wheel spur.

DELINEATIONS of the first occur in the seals of most of our kings and great barons, prior to the reign of Edward III. and also on the engraved and sculptured figures of cross-legged knights. The rouelle is sometimes found on figures of equal antiquity, there being instances of the same person being delineated with the pryck spur on one seal, and the rouelle on another. Some specimens of the pryck spur are still to be found in the cabinets of the curious (h).

HAVING thus described the different pieces of defensive armour used by our antient warriors, I shall proceed to explain and describe those worn by their horses.

d'Artillerie; ce non obstant ledit Comte d'Erbi commanda qu'il fût asprement assailli: lors s'avançoient Anglois & commencerent à assaillir: ceux de dedans jettoient banc & grands barreaux de fer, & pots pleins de chaux dont ils occirent & blefferent plusieurs Anglois qui montoient contremont & s'avançoient trop follement pour leur corps avanturer. Quand le Comte d'Erbi vit que ses gens se travailloient & se faisoient tuer pour neant, si les fit retraire. Le Lendemain fit acharier par les Villains du Pays grand foison de busches & falourdes & feurre & getter és fosséz avec grand planté de terre. Quand une partie des fosséz furent emplis tant qu'on pouvoit bien aller jusqu'au pied du mur du chastel, il fit arrouter & bien armer & mettre en bonne ordonnance trois cens Archers, & puis fit passer pardevant eux pour les émouvoir, deux cens Brigands Pavéschés qui tenoient grands pics & havets de fer, & tandis que ceux heurtoient & piquotoient au mur, les archers tiroient si fort, qu'à peine s'osoient ceux de dedans montrer à leur defence; & encet estat furent la plus grand partie du jour, tant que les picoteurs firent un trou au mur si grand, que dix hommes pouvoient entrer de front, lors s'ebahirent ceux du Chastel & de la Ville, & se jetterent par devers l'Eglise: & aucuns vindrent par derriere. Ainsi fut prise la fortreffe de la Roche Milon.

*Froissart, vol. I. c. 109.*

(h) CAPTAIN ROBSON, of Chelsea, has one of iron.



THE defensive armour with which the horses of the antient knights or men at arms were covered, or, to use the language of the time, barded (i), consisted of the following pieces made either of metal or jacked leather, the chanfron, chamfrein, or shaffron, the criniere or main facre, the poitrenal, poitral, or breast-plate, and the croupiere or buttock-piece. These are frequently, though improperly, stiled barbs (k). Horses covered all over from head to foot with mail occur in some antient writers; but this, father Daniel says, was not common, any more than a covering of quilted linen also mentioned (l).

THE chanfron, chamfrein, or shaffron, took its denomination from that part of the horse's head it covered (m), and was a kind of mask of iron, copper or brass, and sometimes of jacked leather, enclosing the face and ears; some of these chanfrons seem to have been so contrived as to hinder a horse from seeing right before him, perhaps to prevent his being intimidated by any object against which he might be directed, so as to cause him to start aside, or lessen the celerity of his charge. From the centre of the forehead there sometimes issued a spike or horn like that given by the heralds to the unicorn; but generally it was adorned with an escutcheon of armorial bearings; or other ornamental devices. In several of the French historians we read of chanfrons worn by their nobility, not only of gold, but also ornamented with precious stones. Chanfrons reaching only to the middle of the face are called demy chanfrons.

THE criniere, or manefaire, consisted of a number of small plates,

(i) BARDE. Armure qui couvre le cou, le Poitral, & la croup du Cheval. Richelet.

(k) ITEM, two hole Barbés of stele for horses, graven and eneled blue. *M. Brander's MSS.*

(l) CHRONIQUE de Colmor sous l'an 1298.

(m) THE chanfron is defined to be the fore part of the head, extending from under the ears along the interval between the eyebrows down to the nose. *Gentleman's Dictionary.* Perhaps from champ and frein, the field or space for the bridle. The reins were generally of iron chains covered over with leather. Among the horse armour in the keeping of Hans Hunter, armourer at Westminster, 1st Edward VI. there is the following item, Reynes for horses of iron xxvii. *Brander's MS.*

generally about twelve, hooked together and to the chanfron, so as to be moveable; their use was to guard the neck of the horse from the stroke of a cutting sword.

THE poitrinal, pectoral, or breast-plate, was formed of plates of metal rivetted together, which covered the breast and shoulders of the horse; it was commonly adorned with foliage, or other ornaments engraved or embossed (n).

THE croupiere, or buttock-piece, was also sometimes formed of plates of copper, brass or iron, though often of jacked leather, when the chanfron and poitrinal were of metal. It descended down to the hocks (o).

To the article of mail armour may be added, that the hauberk was frequently called le brugne (p), in all likelihood from its colour, when rusted by bad weather.

BESIDES the shields already mentioned, two other sorts sometimes occur in history and old romances, the first indeed is of greater antiquity than comes within the limits of this work, but as it is not generally known, I shall here describe it. This is the shoulder shield, which derives its name from being fixed to that part. Procopius in his History of the Persian wars, says this kind of shield was worn by

(n) IN tournaments, cavalcades and public entries the horses, instead of iron, were covered with filken or velvet bards embroidered with coats of arms or other devices.

ITEM, two harnesses for a horse being hed stall, reynes, croopers, and poytrelles of vellet, thone garnished with copper and passemayne of Venyce gold; thother with copper silvered with passemayne of silver—two. *Brander's MS.*

(o) THE arcons, bows, or saddle pieces, which were faced with metal, and rose up and covered the horsemen almost as high as the navel, might in some measure be considered as defensive armour, though not included in that denomination.

SEVERAL of these plated saddles occur in Mr. *Brander's MS.* In the king's armory at Westminster, in the custody of Hans Hunter: Item, in trees for saddles plated with stele, and parcel guilte and graven five paier. Item, in like trees plated with stele guilte wrought and laied upon vellvet nine paier. Item, in like trees plated with stele, vernished and guilte seven paier. Several of the figures of our kings in the horse armory are seated on these saddles.

(p) LE Hauber ou Brugne. Fauchet de l'origine des armes, &c. p. 40.

the Roman archers of his time (q); that it had no handle, but was fixed to the shoulder in order to guard the head and neck. This sort of shield was in use among the Saxons. Prince Æthelstan, in his will before quoted, bequeaths his target and shoulder shield.

THE other sort are the perforated shields; some of these were pierced on the top, towards the right hand, to make a passage for the lance. A curious specimen of them is represented on a bas-relievo, engraved by Mr. Carter, from the carvings on the seats in the choir at the cathedral of Worcester. Others were perforated in or near the centre, for sight, in order that the bearer might at the same time cover himself, and see the movements of his adversary. A specimen of this kind of shield is exhibited in plate 48, in the shield said to have belonged to Guy earl of Warwick.

I HAVE somewhere seen, I think in the Spanish armory in the Tower of London, a perforated shield, with a pistol projecting from its centre or umbo, and over it a small grated aperture for taking aim.

OF OFFENSIVE ARMS, OR WEAPONS.

THE first arms or weapons used by mankind were undoubtedly those with which Nature had furnished them, that is, their hands, nails, and teeth, assisted by stones, branches, roots of trees, and bones of dead animals. On the discovery of metals, weapons, first of brass, and afterwards of iron, were adopted (r).

(q) BUT our archers nowadays go into the field armed with habergeons and greaves that come up as high as their knees. They have besides their quiver of arrows on the right side, and a sword on their left, and some of them a javelin also fastened about them, and a kind of a short buckler, as it were, but without any handle, made fast to their shoulders, which serves to defend their head and neck. *History of Persian Wars*, book i. p. 2. translated by Sir Henry Holcroft, 1653.

(r) SEE the following lines of Lucretius:

Arma antiqua manus, ungues dentesque fuere  
 Et lapides, & item silvarum fragmina, rami.  
 Et flammæ atque ignes postquam sunt cognita primum.  
 Posterius ferri, vis est ærisque reperta.  
 Et prior æris erat quam ferri cognitus usus.

THE sword seems to have been the first artificial weapon made use of, probably even before the discovery of metals; fashioned, perhaps, of some heavy wood, hardened by fire; this conjecture is justified from similar weapons having been found by different travellers in the possession of divers savage tribes or nations.

BRAZEN, or rather copper swords seem to have been next introduced; these, in process of time, workmen learned to harden by the addition of some other metal or mineral, which rendered them almost equal in temper to iron. Several of these swords have been found in Ireland (s), and one delineated, plate 13, was taken out of the Severn, near Gloucester; they are all nearly of the same figure.

WHEN defensive armour came into general use, it was necessary to have swords of good temper, otherwise they would not only have been incapable of piercing or dividing the armour, but also liable to break. Hence the art of tempering steel became in great request, and the names of celebrated sword-smiths and armourers were thought worthy of being recorded in history; those of Luno, the Vulcan of the north, Galan, and the more modern Andrea Ferrara, have been transmitted to us.

SWORDS were in early ages of such value as to be kept in temples

(s) SOME of these swords are described in the *Archæologia*, vol. 3. p. 555, by Governor Pownall, who, that the Society might have a precise and philosophical description of the metal, applied to the master of the mint, and by his direction Mr. Alcorn, his majesty's assay-master, made an accurate assay of the metal, and made the following report: "It appears (says he) to be chiefly of copper, interspersed with particles of iron, and perhaps some zink, but without containing any gold or silver; it seems probable, that the metal was cast in its present state, and afterwards reduced to its proper figure by filing. The iron might either have been obtained with the copper from the ore, or added afterwards in the fusion to give the necessary rigidity of a weapon; but I confess myself unable to determine any thing with certainty." One of these swords is drawn and described by Colonel Vallancey, in the 13th number of his *Collectanea de Rebus Hibernicis*, from the original in his possession, measuring twenty-two inches long: he says, there is one in the College Museum about three inches longer. Many of these are found in our bogs; that from which this drawing was made was found, with about two hundred others of the same kind, in the bog of Cullen, in the county of Tipperary. The handles were of wood or bone, and were rotted away, the ryvets only remaining.

and sanctuaries (t), to be particularly bequeathed in the wills of princes and great warriors (u), and in the days of chivalry were distinguished by proper names, generally descriptive of their supposed qualities, or alluding to their destructive powers: this was borrowed from the Persians and Arabians, and was practised by Mahomet, whose bow, spear, and nine swords, had all proper names, such as the piercing, death, ruin, &c. (x).

SWORDS were also of various forms and denominations, some calculated for being used with one, and some with both hands. Some swords were also made solely to thrust, and some only to cut; others were equally adapted for both (y).

(t) DAVID took the sword of Goliath kept behind the ephod, *Samuel*, chap. 21. v. 9. the Pucelle of Orleans one from the tomb of a knight buried in the church of St. Catherine de Fierbois. (See Rapin.)

(u) IN the will of Prince Æthelstan, the eldest son of King Ethelred II. made between the years 1006 and 1008, in the collection of Thomas Astle, Esq. ten swords are there devised to different persons, one of whom is the Prince's sword cutler, named Elfnoth, whose art was then in such estimation, as to make him deemed fit company for the illustrious personages with whom he is named. Among the swords bequeathed are, the sword of King Offa, the sword with the fluted hilt, the sword with the cross, the sword which Ulfcytel owned, and that with the silver hilt which Wulfric made. He likewise bequeaths his mail, his drinking horn, target, shoulder shield, and a silver plated trumpet.

(x) THE following names of swords belonging to different valiant knights, occur in romances. Fusberta joyosa, the sword of Charlemagne; chrysaor, that belonging to Arthegal; afdalon to St George; tranchera to Agrican; balifarda to Rogero; durindana to Orlando; caliburn, mordure and margalay, to King Arthur. See a list of the names of weapons in Herbelot.

(y) MR. MALLET in the *Travaux de Mars*, describes and delineates the following different sorts of swords, from the cabinet of arms at Chantilly, in France. A braquemart or short sword, a French rencontre sword. The stoccado, or long sword; the espadon, or two handed sword; the Swifs, or basket hilted sword; a Spanish sword or toledo; a tuck enclosed in a walking stick; a poniard, dagger, sabre, and cymeter; to which may be added the shable, a broad sword with only one edge.

IN Mr. Brander's manuscript, so frequently mentioned, we have the following entries: first armynge swordes, with vellet skaberdes XI. Item, three-edged tockes, with vellet skaberdes II. Item, great Slaughe swordes, with lether skaberdes II. Item, bore spere swordes, with vellet skaberdes VI. Item, armynge swordes of Flaunders makinge CCCII. Item, one Slaughe sword, with iii gonnes at t'handle, and crosse with a skaberde of vellet.

THE swords used by the Roman legionary troops were extremely short and strong, their blade rarely exceeding nineteen inches in length, two edged, and made for either stabbing or cutting; these do not however seem to have been adopted by the Britons, whose swords called *spathæ*, are said to have been both large, long, and heavy, as were also those of the Saxons.

THE Norman swords appear to have been also long and heavy; those of the knights templars seem more to resemble the Roman legionary sword than any other; a drawing of one found at Sutton at Hone in Kent, is represented in plate 28. The different kinds of swords of more modern date are given in the note below. The sword was carried in a belt of buff or other leather girded round the body, or thrown over the right shoulder; these shoulder belts were called *baudricks*.

THE *pugio*, or dagger, was used by the Romans; a species of that weapon, called the hand-seax, was worn by the Saxons, with which they massacred the English on Salisbury Plain in 476.

THE dagger, under the title of *cultellum* and *misericorde*, has been the constant companion of the sword, at least from the days of Edward I., and is mentioned in the statute of Winchester. Its appellation of *misericorde* is derived by Fauchet, the French antiquary, either from its being used to put persons out of their pain, who were irrecoverably wounded, or, from the sight of it, causing those knights who were overthrown to cry out for quarter or mercy. After the invention of fire-arms, daggers were screwed into the muzzles of the muskets, to answer the present purpose of the bayonet. In a treatise, entitled, the Military Art of Training, published anno 1622, the dagger is recommended as a military weapon, in the following words (z):

“ AND because heere comes a controversie opportunely to be decided, I will, as near as I can, plainly and honestly answer the

---

(z) IN the sixteenth century, a mode of attack and defence was taught by the fencing masters of that time, wherein the sword and dagger were used in conjunction; the dagger was chiefly used for defence, the sword to offend.

“fame; and that is about the wearing of daggers; to which I an-  
 “swer directly, that it is the necessariefst weapon belongs to a soul-  
 “dier, and that for many reasons and uses. First, for ornament’s  
 “sake, being a handsome, short light dagger, it addeth to his comely  
 “carriage, and supplieth the nakedness of his girdle. Secondly, for  
 “necessities sake, in defence and offence, for such may be the  
 “thronging of the battaile or company, that when he cannot use his  
 “sword, he may doe good with his dagger. Thirdly, for advantage,  
 “if it should come to a private combat, or singling out of an adver-  
 “sary, a sword may breake, and many men have made their peace  
 “with a furious close, nay kept him aloofe by threatening to throwe  
 “it at him. Fourthly, for execution, if there should be necessity in  
 “the dispatch of the vanquished. Fifthly, for tying a horse to the  
 “ground in an open field, where there is neither bush nor hedge;  
 “and Nature compels a man to discharge the burthen of his belly:  
 “nay, you shall reade that the Jews had a paddle staff, and why may  
 “not a souldier’s dagger serve to dig a hole, and cover it with a  
 “turfte. Sixthly, and last of all, for the punishment of offenders:  
 “for a captain or an inferior officer, that only drawes a dagger,  
 “though he strike not at all, may appease a sedition, and sometimes  
 “rather breake a head than wound a man. As for the objections of  
 “the dangers of stabbing one another, or that a man cannot tell  
 “what he will do in his fury, it is not to be talk’d of in martiall dis-  
 “cipline, which is sometimes severe, and the disobedient souldier  
 “must be taught his duty with stripes.”

THE bow is a weapon of the most remote antiquity; we read of  
 bows in holy writ, as being in use in the very early ages of the  
 world. The Romans had few if any archers among their national  
 troops, for though some of their emperors introduced the use of the  
 bow among them, it was never generally adopted; most of their  
 archers were from among the auxiliaries, particularly Asiatics, among  
 whom it was much esteemed, and still continues a principal weapon.

Bows were of different forms, sometimes of two arches connected  
 in the middle by a straight piece, and sometimes forming one uniform

curve like the English bows of the present time. They were chiefly made of wood, of which yew was deemed the best: ash, elm, and witch-hazel were also used.

THE French under Clovis, who died anno 514, made no use of the bow (a); but about the time of Charlemagne, who flourished in the beginning of the eighth century, bows were undoubtedly in use, as in an article of the capitularies of that king, a count, who was to conduct foldiers to the army, is directed to see they have their proper arms, that is, a lance, a buckler, a bow, two firings, and twelve arrows.

ACCORDING to some of our antient chronicles, the bow was introduced into England by the Normans, who therewith chiefly gained the battle of Hastings; it is not to be supposed that the bow was totally unknown to the Saxons: indeed, we have many evidences to the contrary, but only that they did not generally use it in war. After its introduction into this kingdom, it became the favourite weapon of the people, and by constant practice the English were allowed to be the best archers in Europe, and from time to time divers acts of parliament have been made to enforce the practice of archery; to procure a supply of bow-staves from foreign countries, to oblige the arrow head makers to a careful finishing and tempering the arrow heads, and to furnish the distant counties with bowyers, fletchers, and arrow head makers.

To enforce the first, every man under the age of sixty, not labouring under some bodily or other lawful impediment (ecclesiastics and

(a) L'AI dit, sur le temoinage de Procope & d'Agathias confirmé par celui de Corneille-Tacite, que l'usage des cuirasses & des casques fons le commencement de la premiere Race, étoit fort rare parmi les François; & que celui de l'arc & des flèches n'étoit point non plus d'abord dans leurs Armées. Or ces usages se trouvent non-seulement introduits, mais encore commandez sous la seconde race.

Tout cela paroît distinctement dans un article des Capitulaires de Charlemagne, en ces termes. " Que le comte ait soin que les armes ne manquent point aux foldats qu'il doit conduire a l'armée, c'est a dire, qu'ils aient une lance, un bouchier, un arc & deux cordes & douze flèches . . . qu'ils aient des cuirasses, ou des casques. P. Daniel.



judges excepted), was directed to exercise the art of shooting in the long bow, and fathers, governors, and masters to bring up their children under their care, in the use thereof; every man having a boy or boys in his house, was to provide for each of them above the age of seven, and under that of seventeen years, a bow and two shafts; if servants, the cost of the bow and arrows might be deducted out of their wages; after that age they were to provide bows and four arrows for themselves (b).

To give them an accurate eye and strength of arm, none under twenty-four years of age might shoot at any standing mark, except it was for a rover, and then he was to change his mark at every shot (c); and no person above that age might shoot at any mark whose distance was less than eleven score yards (d). The inhabitants of all cities and towns were ordered to make butts, and to keep them in repair, under a penalty of twenty shillings per month, and to exercise themselves in shooting at them on holidays.

To secure a proper supply of bow-staves, merchants trading from places whence bow-staves were commonly brought, were obliged to import four bow-staves for every ton of merchandize, and that in the same ship in which the goods were loaded (e). They were also to bring in ten bow-staves of good and able stuff for every ton of Malmsey, or of Tyre (f) wine. To encourage the voluntary importation, bow-staves of six feet and a half long, or more, were ex-

(b) PERSONS offending against these laws were liable to the following penalties; any parent or master having a youth or youths under seventeen years of age, who suffered him or them to be without a bow and two arrows for one month together, for every such neglect to forfeit 6s. 8d.; and every male servant receiving wages, above the age of seventeen, and under that of sixty, neglecting to furnish himself as above directed, for every default to forfeit 6s. 8d. 33d Henry VIII.

(c) UNDER penalty of 4d. for each shot.

(d) 6s. 8d. for each shot. 33 Hen. VIII.

(e) 12 Edward IV. under penalty of 6s. 8d. to the king for each bow-stave deficient.

(f) 1st Richard III. under penalty of 13s. 4d.

cused the payment of custom (g), the chief magistrates were to appoint proper and skilful persons at the different ports to examine the bow-staves imported, and to see they were good and sufficient.

To prevent a too great consumption of yew, bowyers were directed to make four bows of witch-hazel, ash, or elm, to one of yew; and no person under seventeen years of age, unless possessed of moveables worth forty marks, or the son of parents having an estate of ten pounds per annum might shoot in an yew bow, under a penalty of 6s. 8d.

IN order that distant countries should be furnished with bowyers, fletchers, string and arrow-head makers, any of those workmen, not being freemen of London, might be sent by the appointment of the king's council, the lord chancellor, lord privy seal, or one of them, to inhabit any city, borough, or town within the realm that was destitute of such artificers. Bowyers, &c. being duly warned, and neglecting to repair to the places directed, were liable to a penalty of 40s. a day for every day's neglect and contrary abode.

IN the reign of Edward III. the price of a painted bow was 1s. 6d. that of a white bow 1s.; a sheaf of arrows, if acerata, or sharpened, 1s. 2d. non acerata, or blunt, 1s.

THE prices of bows were occasionally regulated by acts of parliament; from whence we learn, that the price of bow-staves had increased from 2l. to 12l. the hundred, between the reigns of Edward III. and the eighth of Elizabeth, though this is said to have been partly effected by the confederacy of the Lombards.

IN the twenty-fourth of Edward IV. no bowyer might sell a yew bow to any of the king's subjects for more than 3s. 4d.; and in the thirty-eighth of Henry VIII. the price of a yew bow for any person between

(g) THIS seems to point out the length of our ancient bows to have been at least six feet, but a gentleman of the Archers' Club, who has made the properties of the long bow his study, says, that the best length for a bow is five feet eight inches from nock to nock; and that of an arrow two feet three inches. We however read of arrows a cloth ell long.

the ages of seven and fourteen years was not to exceed 1s.; the bowyer was besides to have by him inferior bows of all prices from 6d. to 1s.; the price of a yew bow of the tax called elk, to any of his majesty's subjects was limited to 3s. 4d. In the eighth of Elizabeth, bows of foreign yew were directed to be sold for 6s. 8d., the second sort at 3s. 4d., and the coarse sort, called livery bows, at a price not exceeding 2s. each, and the same for bows of English yew. A clause of a former act directing the bowyers of London and Westminster to make four bows of different wood for one of yew, was repealed on their representation that the citizens of London would use none but yew bows, and in its place they were ordered always to have by them at least fifty bows of elm, witch-hazel, or ash (h). Bow-strings were made of hemp, flax, and silk.

ARROWS were antiently made of reeds, afterwards of cornel wood, and occasionally of every species of wood: but according to Roger Ascham; ash was the best; arrows were reckoned by sheaves; a sheaf consisted of twenty-four arrows. Arrows were armed antiently with flint or metal heads, latterly with heads of iron (i); of these there were various forms and denominations (k).

By an act of parliament made the seventh of Henry IV. it was enacted, that for the future all the heads for arrows and quarrells should be well boiled or braised, and hardened at the points with steel, and that every arrow head or quarrel should have the mark of the

(h) THE bow was commonly kept in a case to keep it dry, and prevent it from warping. Shakspeare, in his dialogue between the Prince of Wales and Falstaff, makes the latter call the prince a bow case, in allusion to his slender make.

(i) A CURIOUS particular respecting arrow heads occurs in Swinden's History of Great Yarmouth, where the sheriff of Norfolk, 42 Edward III. being ordered to provide a certain number of garbs of arrows headed with steel for the king's use, for the heading of them is directed to seize all the flocks of anchors (*omnes alas ancaram*) necessary for that purpose.

(k) ROGER ASCHAM makes a distinction between arrow heads for war, and those for pricking, that is, shooting at a mark: of the latter he mentions the rigged, creased, or shouldered heads, or silver spoone heads, for a certain likeness that such heads have with the knob end of some silver spoons.

maker ; workmen disobeying this order, were to be fined and imprisoned at the king's will, and the arrow heads or quarrells to be forfeited to the crown.

ARROWS were carried in a quiver, called also an arrow-case, which served for the magazine ; arrows for immediate use were worn in the girdle.

THE range of a bow, according to Neade, was from six to eighteen and twenty score yards ; and he likewise says, an archer may shoot six arrows in the time of charging and discharging one musket.

IN antient times (l) phials of quick-lime, or other combustible matter for burning houses or ships, was fixed on the heads of arrows, and shot from long bowes (m) ; this has been also practised since the use of gunpowder. Neade says he has known, by experience, that an archer may shoot an ounce of fire-work upon an arrow twelve score yards. Arrows with wild-fire, and arrows for fire-works, are mentioned among the stores at Newhaven and Barwick, in the first of Edward VI (n).

THE force with which an arrow strikes an object at a moderate distance, may be conceived from the account given by King Edward VI. in his journal, wherein he says, that an hundred archers of his guard shot before him two arrows each, and afterwards all together, and that they shot at an inch-board, which some pierced quite through, and struck into the other board ; divers pierced it quite through with the heads of their arrows, the boards being well-seasoned timber ; their distance from the mark is not mentioned.

To prevent the bow-string from hanging on the left arm, it is covered with a piece of smooth leather, fastened on the outside of the

(l) USED by the Romans, and called *falarica*, and some *mallioli*.

(m) MATHEW PARIS mentions arrows headed with combustible matter, and shot from bows into towns or castles, and also arrows headed with phials full of quick-lime, p. 1090. *Misimus igitur super eos spicula ignita.* And p. 1091. *Et phialas plenas calce, arcubus per parva hastilia ad modum sagittarum super hostes jaculandas.*

(n) IN Mr. Brander's MS.

arm, this is called a bracer. And to guard the fingers from being cut by the bow-string, archers wear shooting gloves (o).

CHAUCER, in his prologue to the Canterbury Tales, thus describes an archer of his day :

- “ And he was cladde in cote and hode of grene,  
 “ A shefe of peacock arwes bright and kene,  
 “ Under his belt he bare ful thriftily ;  
 “ Wel coude he dresse his takel yewmanly,  
 “ His arwes drouped not with fetheres lowe,  
 “ And in his hand, he bare a mighty bowe,  
 “ A not-hed hadde he, with broune visage,  
 “ Of wood crafte coude he wel all the usage ;  
 “ Upon his arme he had a gai bracer,  
 “ And by his side a fwerd and a bokeler,  
 “ And on the other side a gaie daggere  
 “ Harneised wel, and sharp as pointe of spere ::  
 “ A cristofre on his brest of silver shene,  
 “ An horn he bare, the baudrik was of grene,  
 “ A forester was he sothely as I gefse.”

THE following description of an archer, his bow and accoutrements, is given in a MS. in my possession, written in the time of Queen Elizabeth. (p).

(o) A BRACER serveth for two causes, one to save his arme from the strype of the stringe, and his doublet from wearing, and the other is, that the stringe gliding sharplye and quicklye off the bracer, may make the sharper shot:—A shooting glove is chiefly to save a man's finger from hurting, that he may be able to bear the sharp stringe to the uttermost of his strength. *Roger Ascham.*

(p) ENTITLED, a Treatise of Martial Discipline, collected and gathered together out of the opynions of dyverse and fundry of the beste and moste approved souldiers, with certaine other additions thereunto by Ralphe Smithe, seperately dedicated to the Right Honourable the Lord Burrows, governor of the towne of Brille, in the lowe countries, and to the Right Honourable Sir Christopher Hatton, Knt. vice-chamberleine to her majestie, and of her highnes most honorable privy council.

## ARCHERS, OR LONG BOWS.

“ CAPTENS and officers should be skilfull of that most noble weapon, and to see that their soldiers, according to their draught and strength, have good bowes, well nocked, well strynged, everie stringe whippe in their nocke, and in the myddes rubbed with wax, brafer, and fluting glove, some spare stringes trymed as aforefaid, every man one shefe of arrowes, with a case of leather defensibile against the rayne, and in the same fower and twentie arrowes, whereof eight of them should be lighter than the residue, to gall or astoyne the enemye with the hailshot of light arrows, before they shall come within the danger of their harquebush shot. Let every man have a brigandine, or a little cote of plate, a skull or hufkyn, a mawle of leade, of five foot in lengthe, and a pike, and the same hanging by his girdle with a hook and a dagger; being thus furnished teach them by musters to march, shoote, and retire, keepinge their faces uppon the enemys. Sumtyme put them into great nowmbers, as to battell apperteyneth, and thus use them often times practised, till they be perfecte; ffor those men in battell, ne skimish can not be spared. None other weapon maye compare with the same noble weapon.”

THE long bow maintained its place in our armies long after the invention of fire-arms. Nor have there been wanting experienced soldiers who were advocates for its continuance, and who in many cases even preferred it to the harquebush or musket. King Charles I. twice granted special commissions under the great seal, for enforcing the use of the long bow, the first in the fourth year of his reign (q); but this was revoked by proclamation four years afterwards, on account of divers extortions and abuses committed under sanction thereof. The second anno 1633, in the ninth year of his reign, to William Neade and his son, also named William, wherein the former is styled an antient archer, who had presented to the king a warlike invention

---

(q) To Timothy Taylor, John Hubert, Henry Hubert, Gentlemen, and Jeffery le Neve, Esq.

for uniting the use of the pike and bow (r), seen and approved by him and his council of war; wherefore his majesty had granted them a commission to teach and exercise his loving subjects in the said invention, which he particularly recommended the chief officers of his trained bands to learn and practise; and the justices, and other chief magistrates throughout England, are therein enjoined to use every means in their power to assist Neade, his son, and all persons authorized by them in the furtherance, propagation, and practice of this useful invention; both the commissions and proclamation are printed at large in Rymer.

At the breaking out of the civil war the Earl of Essex issued a precept, dated in November, 1643, for stirring up all well affected people by benevolence, towards the raising of a company of archers for the service of the king and parliament.

To protect our archers from the attacks of the enemy's horse, they carried long stakes pointed at both ends; these they planted in the earth, sloping before them. In the first of Edward VI. three hundred and fifty of these were in the stores of the town of Berwick, under the article of archers stakes; there were also at the same time eight bundles of archers stakes in Pontefract Castle (s).

THE SLING.

THE sling (t) is also a weapon of great antiquity, formerly in high estimation among the antients. But as it does not appear from history

(r) PRINTED under the title of the Double Armed Man. The different motions are illustrated by wooden cuts, very well drawn.

(s) MR. BRANDER'S MS.

(t) THE Romans had companies of slingers in their armies; the inhabitants of the Balearic Islands, now called Majorca and Minorca, were peculiarly famous for their dexterity in the use of this weapon. Diodorus Siculus says, that they always carried three slings, one they bound round their heads, another they girded round their waists, and the third they held in their hands. In fight they threw large stones with such violence, that they seemed to be projected from some machine, inasmuch that no armour could resist their stroke. In besieging a town, they wounded and drove the garrison from the walls, throw-

to have been much used by the English, at least within the period to which this work is confined (u), it will be sufficient to say, that slings were constructed for throwing stones, leaden bullets, and clay balls, baked or hardened in the sun. That they were made of different materials, chiefly flax, hair, or leather, woven into bands, or cut into thongs, broadest in the centre, for the reception of the stone or ball, and tapering off gradually towards both ends: with one of these slings a good slinger would (it is said) throw a stone six hundred yards. An antient Islandic treatise, entitled, *Speculum Regale*, supposed to have been written about the twelfth century, mentions slings fixed to a staff.

UNDER the general appellation of spear, lance, and pike, may be included a great variety of weapons of the kind, antiently comprehended by the French under the term of bois (wood); spears or lances, particularly those used by the cavalry, are by many of our old writers called staves.

THE spear, or lance, is among the oldest weapons recorded in history, and is nearly coeval with the sword or bow, and even seems a much more obvious weapon than the latter, probably originating in

ing with such exactness, as rarely to miss their mark; this dexterity they acquired by constant exercise, being trained to it from their infancy, their mothers placing their daily food on the top of a pole, and giving them no more than they beat down with stones from their slings. This art is still, in some measure, preserved by the Minorquin Shepherds. Some writers have, though falsely, attributed the invention of the sling to the inhabitants of these islands.

(u) FROISSART, vol. I. chap. 85. p. 304. gives an instance in which slings were employed for the English, by the people of Brittany, in a battle fought in that province during the reign of Philip de Valois, between the troops of Walter de Mauni, an English knight, and Louis d'Espagne, who commanded six thousand men in behalf of Charles de Blois, then competitor with the Earl of Montfort, for the duchy of Brittany. Froissart says, that what made Louis lose that battle was, that during the engagement the people of the country came unexpectedly and assaulted his army with bullets and slings. According to the same author they were also used in naval combats. Slings were used in 1572, at the siege of Sancerre, by the Huguenots, in order to save their powder; D'Aubigné, who reports this fact, says they were thence called Sancerre harquebusses.



a pole or stake, sharpened at one or both ends, afterwards armed with a head of flint, and in process of time, on the discovery and use of metals, with copper, brass, or iron. Flint heads for both spears and arrows are frequently found in England, Scotland, and Ireland, as are also spear, javelin, and arrow heads of a metal nearly resembling brass (x).

THE spear, lance, javelin, darts of different kinds, and even the more modern pikes, all come under one common description, that is, a long staff, rod, or pole, armed with a pointed head of stone or metal at one or both ends, constructed for the purpose of piercing, or wounding with their points only, either by being pushed or thrown with the hand. But as the consideration of every species would greatly exceed the limits of the plan laid down for this work, I shall confine my enquiries to those spears, lances, and pikes used by our ancestors.

LONG spears and lances were used by the Saxons and Normans, both horse and foot, but particularly by the cavalry of the latter, who in charging rested the butt end of the lance against the arçon or bow of their saddle; the mail-armour not admitting the fixture of lance rests, as was afterwards practised on the cuirass (y).

It does not appear from history that there was ever any particular standard or regulation, respecting the length or thickness of the antient lances, or the size or form of their heads, but it rather seems that every military man had his lance, as well as his other arms, constructed of the dimensions that best accorded with his strength and

(x) GUSTAVUS BRANDER, Esq; has specimens in his collection of both flint and brass heads for spears and arrows; and many others are to be found in the different cabinets and collections of curiosities, both public and private. In the year 1782 a servant of Mr. Fuller's digging for turf, on Sullington Common, near Storrington, in Suffex, found very near the surface a great number of spear and dart, or arrow heads, pieces of sword-blades, and some celts, all of metal like brass; they are now in the possession of Thomas Astle, Esq. The spear and arrow heads greatly resemble some of the same metal found in Ireland, engravings and descriptions of which may be seen in the thirteenth number of Colonel Vallancy's Collectanea, where there is also a delineation of a spear head of flint.

(y) A LANCE rest was a kind of moveable iron bracket, fixed to the right side of the cuirass, for the purpose of supporting the lance; see a representation of one in the Miscellaneous Plate.

figure. It is however certain, that the heads of lances and spears were always made of the best tempered steel, and their staves of the foundest ash, of which wood they were so generally made, that the writers of Latin verse, frequently used the Latin word for the ash (*Fraxinus*), to express a lance or spear.

ALTHOUGH lances and spears were chiefly the weapons of horsemen, they were also used by the infantry, and dismounted knights, to keep off the cavalry; for this purpose they fixed the butts in the ground, their points sloping towards the breasts of the enemy's horses. Two instances of this occur in history; one is mentioned by Joinville, in the Life of St. Louis, the other by William Patin, in his account of the battle of Muffelborough, in Scotland, the first of Edward VI.; see both accounts in the note below (z). In tournaments, the knights sometimes fought on foot with their lances; in that case, Father Daniel says, it was customary to shorten them, by cutting off part of the staff.

TILTING lances differed from those used in war, both in their heads and staves, the heads of tilting lances being blunt, or occasionally fitted with a contrivance to prevent penetration, called a coronel or cronel (a), from its resemblance to a crown. The staves were thick

(z) AINCOIS nous fiz ariver devant un grosse bataille de Turs, la où il avoit bien, six mille homes a Cheval. Silost comme il nous virent á terre, il vindrent ferant des Esperons vers nous. Quant nous les veismes venir, nous fichames les pointes de nos escus ou Sablon, & le fust de nos lances ou fablon & les pointes vers eulz. Maintenant que il virent ainfi comme pour aler parmi les ventres, il tournerent ce devant darieres & sênfouérent. *Joinville*, p. 34.

“STANDING at defence, they (i. e. the Scots) thrust shoulders likewise so nie together, ye fore rankes wel nie to kneeling stoop lowe before, for their followers behynd holdyng their pykes in both handes, and thear with in their left, their bucklers, the one end of the pyke agaynste the right foot, tother against their enemye brest hyc, their followers crossing their pyke poyntes with them forewarde, and thus each with tother so nye as place and space will suffer, though the hole was so thick, that as easy shall a bare finger perce through the skyn of an angrie hedgehog, as any encounter the frunt of their pykes.”

(a) THE following description of the coronels, or coronets, is given by Guillim in his display of heraldry. These cronels, or coronets (for I find them called by both these names)

are

at the butt end, tapering off gradually to the point, and generally fluted; near the butt end they had a cavity for the reception of the hand. The front of it was defended by an iron-plate, called a vamplat, that is, an avant plat, and behind it was a broad iron ring, called a burr. These handles seem not confined to the tilting lance, but were made also on those designed for war. Fauchet says, they were not in use before the year 1300 (b).

LANCES were ornamented with a banderole near the point, which gave them a handsome appearance, these were also called pencells (c).

OF the pike, Father Daniel says, that although the name is modern, and not to be found in the histories of France before the time of Louis XI., it is nevertheless an antient weapon, much resembling the sarissa of the Macedonians, but not quite so long. It was introduced into France by the Switzers.

MARKHAM, in his Soldiers' Accidence (d) says, the pikemen should

are the iron heads of tilt-spears, or tilt-staffs, which usually have six or eight mourns (for so are those little piked things called, which are on the top or head of this coronel, or coronet), three of which appear in each of these; the other three which are not here seen, cannot be demonstrated by the art of cutting or painting; some have termed, or rather mis-termed these coronels, burrs, for the confutation of which error I have caused the true figure of a tilt-staff, or tilt-spear, to be here represented unto your view without the vamplet.—For this another delineation of a tilt-staff with the vamplet, see the plate 48. The family of Wiseman, bear fable, a chevron ermine, between three coronels of a tilt-spear, argent; this was meant as a pun on that name, signifying that a wife man never meddled with any other arms but such as were blunted, or prevented from doing mischief.

(b) A WEAPON, termed a launceguay, is mentioned in several statutes, made during the reign of King Richard II. Many of the commentators on our antient laws declare their inability to explain what kind of weapon it was. Perhaps it may not be a too far-fetched interpretation to suppose the term launceguay, a corruption of the French words lance aigue, a sharp or pointed lance; and if the intention of those acts is considered, it will, in some measure, justify this supposition, they being evidently framed to prevent those violent affrays that frequently arose among the gentry of that time, commonly attended by a numerous suite, who, if armed with mischievous weapons, might have spilt much blood. A lance fit for war was, perhaps, termed sharp, or pointed, in opposition to a blunt or tilting lance.

(c) IN an antient MS. mark l. 8, in the College of Arms, describing the field equipage necessary for a baron, banneret, or riche bachelor, is the following item: "pencells for your speers."

(d) PUBLISHED 1648.

have strong, straight, yet nimble pikes of ash-wood, well headed with steel, and armed with plates downward from the head, at least four feet, and the full size or length of every pike shall be fifteen feet, besides the head. The general length fixed for the pike, by most princes and states, was, according to Sir James Turner (e), eighteen feet, but he observes that few exceeded fifteen. In a small anonymous treatise, entitled, English Military Discipline (f), it is said, "All pikes now a dayes are of the same length, made of strong ashe, and very straight, about fourteen or fifteen foot long between the head and foot. The head is four inches long, and two and a half broad at the largest place, the iron bands at the head must be long and strong, otherwayes it would be an easie matter for the horse to cut off the ends of the pikes with their shables."

LORD ORRERY in his Treatise on the Art of War, complains that it was too common to have in one regiment pikes of different lengths, and recommends it to have all pikes sixteen feet and a half long, made of seasoned ash, armed at the points with lozenge heads, the cheek or side of the pikes to be of thin iron plates, four feet long, to prevent the head of the pike from being cut off by the swords of the cavalry.

IN a military work, titled the Art of Training (g), a kind of ornament for the pike, called an armin, is thus described. "You had then armings for your pikes, which have a graceful shew, for many of them were of velvet, embroidered with gold, and served for fastness when the hand sweat; now I see none, and some inconveniences are found by them."

THE London price of a pike as settled by the Lords Commissioners of the Council of War, anno 1631, the seventh of Charles II., was 4s. 6d., each article thus estimated, head 1s. 8d., staff 2s. 6d., socket and colouring 4d.

(e) PALLAS Armata, written in 1670 and 1671.

(f) PUBLISHED 1680.

(g) 12°. R. D. Published 1622, with a curious portrait of King Charles I. on horseback, whilst a boy, and also engravings of the exercise of the musquet and pike.

THE gifarme, called also gifaring, and, by Fleta, fifarmes, is likewise an antient weapon of the staff kind, but of what form seems doubtful. In the statute of Winchester, it is named among the weapons appropriated to the lower order of people (h), that is, such as were not possessed of forty shillings in land. An antient statute of William, king of Scotland, explains it to be a hand bill (i).

IT is mentioned in the poem of Flodden Field, in a manner that seems to shew it was a weapon for cutting, grinding being rather more applicable to an edged, than a pointed weapon.

●  
Some made a mell of maffey lead,  
Which iron all about did bind,  
Some made strong helmets for the head,  
And some their grisly gifarings grind.

THE Reverend Mr. Lamb, editor of this poem, has the following notes on this weapon. “ Gifarings, halberts, from the French guif-  
“ arme, a kind of offensive long handled and long headed weapon, or  
“ as the Spanish visarma, a staff that has within it two long pikes,  
“ which with a shoot or thrust forward, come forth.”

Every knight  
Two javelins, spears, or than gifarm staves.

GOWAN DUGLAS.

DU CANGE in his Glossary, renders this word by securis, and derives it from the geesum of the Gauls.

LA COMBE, in the supplement to his Dictionary of the Antient French, has the term gifarme, which he calls a sort of lance or pike; and Bailey defines gifarme to be a military weapon with two points or

(h) E QUE meins ad de quaurante souz de terre fait juré a fauchons, gifarmes e coutaux e autres menus armes.

(i) — DE Venientibus ad Guerram. Et qui minus habet quam quadraginta solidos terræ habeat gyfarum quod dicitur hand bill, arcum et sagittam. William began his reign, A.D. 1165.

piques. Strutt, I know not from what authority, has in his *Horda Angel-cynnan*, represented the gifarme like a battle-ax on a long staff, with a pike projecting from the back of the ax.

PERHAPS it may have been the weapon afterwards called the black, and sometimes the brown bill, the former name possibly derived from its being occasionally varnished over to preserve it from rain, like the black armour; the appellation of brown might arise from the rust carelessly wiped off, which would leave it of that colour. Bills were not only borne by soldiers, but also by sheriffs' officers at executions, watchmen, &c. with whom it was no uncommon practice to chalk the edges, which gave them the appearance of having been newly ground. A delineation of a black bill is given in the plate of halberts.

ANOTHER kind of pike, called a morris, that is, a Moorish pike (k), was much in fashion about the reigns of Henry VIII. and Elizabeth. Morris pikes were used both by land and at sea; what were their characteristic peculiarities I have not been able to find. From the following directions in Ralph Smith's manuscript, many of the motions, used in the exercise of them, greatly resembled those practised with the common pike.

#### MORRIS PIKES.

“ CAPTAINES and officers leadinge morris pikes, shoulde bee experienced in that stronge and warlike weapon. Teache the soldiers sometimes to pushe, traile, and order the same both for the bewtie of the battaile, and for the necessitie of the same, and to see them have white corseletts, which muste bee allwaies cleane kepte, ffor it is a bewtifull fight in the battell, and a great terror to the enemies. Suche men in the fronte of battailes in ould tymes, weare called men at armes; on foote these men foe armed and placed,

---

(k) THEN on the English part with speed  
The bills stept forth, and bows went back,  
The Moorish pikes and mells of lead  
Did deal there many a dreadful thwack.

“ bee in more jeapordie then other men bee, their armour bee  
 “ more costlie then other mens bee, wherefore they merite more  
 “ wages than other men have; those be chosen chieflye for the bat-  
 “ tell, with baces, long taces, vambraces, and morians. They muste  
 “ have swordes and daggers; their pikes of usuall length, sharpe  
 “ grounded and well nayled, cause them in tymes to lay their pikes  
 “ upon their shoulders, their thumbe under the same, the butte end  
 “ on the out side of their loades man. After this sorte to muster,  
 “ marche, retire, and embattell them as aforefaide: that noe souldier  
 “ of purpose or negligence doe cutt or breake his pike, for the  
 “ greater strengthe of the battaile consisteth in the same.”

HALBERTS differ very little from the bill, being, like them, constructed both for pushing and cutting: a halbert consists of three parts, the spear, or sometimes a kind of sword blade for pushing, an ax, or hatchet for striking and cutting, and a flook or hook for pulling down fascines, in the attack of trenches, or temporary fortifications. The halbert is said to have been originally invented by the Switzers. Halberts are of a variety of forms; they are commonly mounted on staves of seven feet long, with a pointed ferril at the end, for the purpose of sticking them in the ground.

THE mallet of arms seems to have been formerly a weapon much used by the English and Scots, as well as by the French (1). In the memorable combat recorded in the history of Bretagne, and fought in that province, anno 1315, between thirty champions on the part of the French, and the like number on that of the English, an English champion, named Billefort, was armed with a leaden Mallet weighing twenty-five pounds. Father Daniel quotes the manuscript Memoirs of the Marechal de Fleurange, in the king of France's library,

---

(1) Two Scotch earls of an antient race,  
 One Crawford call'd, the other Montros,  
 Who led ten thousand Scotchmen strong,  
 Who manfully met with their foes,  
 With leaden mells and lances long.

to prove that the English archers still used mallets in the time of Louis XII., who began his reign in the year 1515, and died 1524. In the antient poem on the battle of Floddon Field, leaden mallets are several times mentioned. Some of the verses have been quoted in the articles of gifarmes and morris pikes. Mr. Brander's curious manuscript so often referred to, among the different store-houses at Calais, there named, describes one by the title of the malle chambre, in which were then eight hundred and eighty leaden mallets. There is also an entry of two hundred mallets in a store-house at Berwick. A mawle of lead of five feet long, and a pike with the same hanging by a girdle with a hook, is recommended by Ralph Smith for the arms of an archer; it has been quoted at length under the article of the long bow.

THE mallet of arms, according to the representation of it given by Father Daniel, exactly resembles the wooden instrument of that name now in use, except in the length of the handle; it was like the hammer of arms, to be used with both hands (m); indeed it differed very little from that weapon in its form (n).

THE mallet was also common in France; for in a sedition of the Parisians, in the beginning of the reign of Charles VI. on account of

(m) IN the Manuscript Chronicle of Bertrand de Guefcelin, are these lines.

Olivier de Clicon dans la bataille va,  
Et tenoit un martel qu'a ses deux mains porta,  
Tout ainfi qu'un Boucher abbatit & verfa.

And a little lower :

Bertran de Glaiequin fu ou champ plenier,  
Ou il affaut Anglois au martel d'acier,  
Tout ainfi les abbat comme fait le boucher.

(n) LA difference qu'il y avoit entre le Mail ou Maillet & le Marteau D'Arme, est que le revers du maillet étoit quarré ou un peu arondi, par les deux bouts & que le Marteau D'Armes avoit un côté quarré & arrondi & l'autre en pointe ou tranchant. *P. Daniel*, vol. 1. p. 439.



some new taxes, the populace forced the arsenal, and took out so many mallets, that they were called mailliotins. Indeed, when we consider the intercourse between France and England, it seems probable that scarce any approved armour or weapon could be used in one kingdom, that would not be also adopted in the other.

THE mace is an antient weapon formerly much used by the cavalry of all nations, and likewise by ecclesiastics, who in consequence of their tenures frequently took the field, but were by a canon of the church forbidden to wield the sword. Of this we have an instance in Philip de Dreux, bishop of Beavais, who fought with a mace at the battle of Bovines, where he beat down Long Sword, Earl of Salisbury. Richard I., who instituted the corps of serjeants at arms, for the guard of his person, armed them with maces, bows, and arrows.

THE mace is commonly of iron; its figure much resembles a chocolate mill; many specimens may be seen in the Tower and other armouries (o). Several are mentioned in Mr. Brander's manuscript (p). Among some ancient armour formerly preserved at Pile Well, the seat of the Worfeleys, was a mace, with a dagg or pistol in the handle.

SIR JOHN SMITH, and several other writers before and of the last century, speak in favour of the mace; among them is Sir James Turner. The mace is, says he, an antient weapon for horsemen, neither was it out of use long after the invention of hand-guns, for we read of it used by most nations an hundred years ago, and certainly in a medley they may be more serviceable than swords, for when they are guided by a strong arm, we find the party struck with them was either felled from his horse, or having his head-piece beat

(o) MR. BRANDER has a very fine one; another much like it belongs to the Antiquarian Society; both of them have been gilt.

(p) IN the custody of Hans Hunter, armourer at Westminster. Item. A mace of damaskine work. Item. One white mace. Item. In mases guilte and faier wroughte, five of them having ringes and plates of fylke and gold xi. Hampton Court maces of steel 59, maces of steel receyved of William Damfell 26.

close to his head, was made to reel in his saddle, with his blood running plentifully out of his nose (q).

FATHER DANIEL has engraved two weapons, shewn in the abbey of Roncevaux, as the maces of those famous heroes of romance, Roland and Oliver, who are said to have lived in the time of Charlemagne. One is a large ball of iron, fastened with three chains to a strong truncheon, or staff, of about two feet long; the other is of mixed metal, in the form of a channelled melon, fastened also to a staff by a triple chain; these balls weigh eight pounds. At the end of both the staves are rings for holding cords or leathers to fasten them to the hand.

CONTRIVANCES like these, except that the balls were armed with spikes, were long carried by the pioneers of the trained bands, or city militia; they are generally called morning stars (r). One of this sort is also given by Father Daniel.

THE horseman's hammer is a lesser kind of hammer of arms, resembling it in its general form, but calculated to be used with one hand. It is commonly made of iron, both head and handle, the latter rarely exceeding two feet in length; some of these hammers are highly ornamented with sculpture and engraving. The equestrian figure of King Edward I., in the horse armoury in the tower of London, is armed with a hammer of this sort (s). Some horsemen's

(q) THIS kind of mace, which is the same as used by the Turks, some military writers improperly call the club of Hercules; the club given to that demi-god, by the Grecian statuaries, is a huge knotty limb of a tree.

IN the ancient MS. in the college of arms before quoted, among the necessaries for an esquire in taking the field, there occurs the following articles. Store of fure speere hedys. Item. An ax, or an halbert to walke with in the felde. Item. An armyng sword, a dagger, and hit were well doon to have a mase at the sadell pomell.

(r) MORGAN stern, or morning star, a weapon formerly used for the defence of trenches. It was a large staff banded about with iron, like the shaft of a halbert, having an iron ball at the end with cross iron spikes. *Monro.*

(s) IT may be agreeable to some of my readers to be informed, that many of the figures of our kings, shewn in the Tower of London, are the work of some of the best sculptors of the time in which they were set up. The kings, Charles I. and II., with their horses, were

hammers equipped with guns, and some having battle axes, occur in the inventory of armour and weapons in the royal armoury at Westminster, in the first of King Edward VI. (t)

OF weapons denominated axes, such as battle axes, pole axes, and the like, there are a great variety, many of them having very little resemblance to an ax, in any of their parts; this probably may in some measure be owing to modern alterations, as is the case with the weapons carried by the gentlemen pensioners, which are still called axes. In plate 34 are divers representations of battle axes: some richly ornamented are mentioned in Mr. Brander's manuscript (u).

THE Welch glaive is a kind of bill, sometimes reckoned among the pole axes. They were formerly much in use. In an abstract of the grants of the first of Richard III. among the Harleian manuscripts (x). In the British Museum there is an entry of a warrant, granted to Nicholas Spicer, authorising him to impress smiths for making two thousand Welch bills or glaives.

AND in the same book 18s. is charged for flaving and making

were executed by Grinlin Gibbons, in the year 1685 and 1686. Those of ten other kings, not named, with their horses, were done by the following artists, anno 1688. One by William Morgan, one by John Nost, one by Thomas Quillans, and two by Marmaduke Townson. In the year 1690, five not named, and their horses, by John Nost; and June 22d, 1702, the face of King William III. by — Alcock, probably fixed to one of the anonymous figures. These particulars were extracted from an authentick manuscript in the possession of a friend.

(t) ITEM, in horsemens hammers with gones viii. Item, in horsemens hammers with battle axes xiv. Brander's MS.

(u) ITEM, four battle axes partely gilt, with long small staves of brassell, garnished with velvet white and greene, and filke iv. in the armory at Westminster.

Poleaxes with gones in th'endes xxvii.

Poleaxes without gones ii.

Short poleaxes playne c.

Two hand poleaxes iv.

Hand pollaxes with a gonne and a case for the same oone,

Poliaxes gilte, the staves covered with cremysyne velvet,  
fringed with filke of golde iv.

} in the Tower.

(x) MARKED No. 443.

twenty-four billes, and 20s. 6d. for making and staving thirty glaives; these appear to have been made at Abergavenny and Llanlloved.

BESIDES the weapons of the staff kind already mentioned, there were divers others, whose names only are to be found in accounts of arsenals, and casually in the works of antient military writers, who do not describe their forms or dimensions; several such appear in the inventory so repeatedly quoted (y). These are javelins with broad heads, demy launces, boar spears, northern staves, and three grayned staves.

BUT the most singular kind of weapon or utensil there mentioned, and of which there appears to have been a great number in the Tower, is the holy water sprinckle (z), some of them having guns at their ends, and others at the top: what they were, or for what use, I have neither been able to find out, or even to form a probable conjecture.

THE antient cross-bow, which differed in many particulars from those of late times, is thus described by Father Daniël, who formed his description from one or more then before him.

(y) MR. Brander's MS., in which are the following entries in different store-houses.

ITEM, ten javelins with brode heddes, parteley guilt, with long brassell staves, garnished with vellet and taffels.

Northern staves with yrone heddes 340.

Demy launces 120.

Bore speares with ashen staves, trymed with cremyfyne velvet, and fringed with redde filke 291.

Bore speares knotted and leather'd 162.

Javelyns with staves, trymed with white, greene, and black filke, and fustanyne, of axes 209.

Partysans heddes without staves partie guilte 152.

Rancons with staves garnyshed with velvett and fringed 56.

(z) GREAT holly water sprinckles 118.

Holly water sprinckles, with gonnes in th'ende 7.

Holly water sprinckles, with thre gonnes in the topp one.

Little holly water sprinckles 392.

Item. one hatte of stele, and two staves, called holly water sprinckles.

Gaddes of steile 300.

THE cross-bow, called in Latin *arcus balistarius*, or *balista manualis*, was thus named to distinguish it from certain larger machines, called *balistæ* and *catapultæ*, which the antients used for battering the walls of towns with stones, and for lancing darts of an extraordinary magnitude. The cross-bow, I say, was an offensive weapon, which consisted of a bow fixed to the top of a sort of staff, or stock of wood, which the string of the bow when unbent, crossed at right angles.

THE handle or bed, which was called the stock of the cross-bow, had towards the middle a small opening or slit, of the length of two fingers, in which was a little moveable wheel of solid steel; through the centre of it passed a screw that served for an axis; this wheel projected a little beyond the surface of the stock, and had a notch, or catch, which stopped and held the string of the bow when bent. In the opposite side of the circumference was a much smaller notch, by the means of which the spring of the trigger kept the wheel firm, and in its place; this wheel is called the nut of the cross-bow. Under the stock, near the handle, was the key of the trigger, like that of the serpentine of a musquet; by pressing this key with the hand, to the handle of the cross-bow, the spring released the wheel that held the string, and the string by its motion drove forward the dart.

UPON the stock below the little wheel was a small plate of copper, which lifted up and shut down, and was fixed by its two legs, with two screws to the two sides of the stock; this was a sight; it was pierced above by two little holes, one over the other, and when the plate was raised, these two holes answered to a globule, which was a small bead no bigger than that of a chaplet, that was suspended at the end of the cross-bow by a fine wire, and fastened to two small perpendicular columns of iron, one on the right, the other on the left, and this little globule, answering to the holes in the plate, served to direct the aim, whether for shooting horizontally, upwards, or downwards.

THE cord or string of the bow was double, each string separated by two little cylinders of iron, equidistant from the extremities of the

bow and the centre; to these two strings in the middle was fixed a ring of cord, which served to confine it in the notch I have mentioned when the bow was bent. Between the two cords in the centre of the string, and immediately before the ring, was a little square of cord, against which was placed the extremity of the arrow or dart, to be pushed forwards by the cord.

SUCH was the antient cross-bow, on which I formed this description, and I believe they were all much alike in their internal parts. The smaller cross-bows were bent with the hand, by the means of a small steel lever, called the goat's foot, from its being forked on the side that rested on the cross-bow and the cord; the larger were bent with one or both feet, by putting them into a kind of stirrup. According to this verse of William le Breton,

*Ballista duplici tenfa pede missa sagitta.*

They were also bent with a moulinet and with a pulley.

THESE cross-bows were either of wood, horn, or steel, which must be understood of the bow only, it not being likely the whole body of the cross-bow should be of steel.

CROSS-BOWS not only shot arrows, but also darts called quarrels, or carreaux, from their heads, which were square pyramids of iron, some of them feathered (as the term was) with wood. They also shot stones or leaden balls.

THERE were two sorts of English cross-bows, one called latches, the other prodds (a).

ACCORDING to Sir John Smith, in his instructions and observations,

(a) THE crosse bowe chamber at Calais. Crosse bowes, called prodds, 418. Crosse bowes, called latches, winlasses for them 120. Benders to bend small crosse bowes 14. Quarrells headed and fethered with woode 2300. Quarrells unheaded and fetherede with woode 2300.

CROSSE bowes of fundry making, with four paier of windelaifes being broken. Crosse bowes to shoot stoonne oone, rack to bend a crosse bowe oone. Quayver for pricke arrows for crosse bowes oone.

&c. p. 204, a cros-bow will kill point blank between forty and sixty yards, and if elevated six, seven, or eight score yards, or farther (b).

A RECORD printed in Rymer's *Fœdera*, of the third of Edward II., recites that cros-bows, bauders, and quarrells, were purchased for the garrison of Sherborne Castle, each cros-bow at 3s. 8d. each, baulder at 1s. 6d., and every hundred of quarrells, at 1s. 6d.

FATHER DANIEL says, that cros-bows were of different sizes; there were some at Chantilly a foot and a half, two, and three feet in length, and others still longer, furnished with their goats' feet, their moulinets, and their pullies.

THE excellency of the cros-bow was the great exactness of its shot, cros-bow men being much more certain of hitting their mark, than archers with the long-bow, but on the other hand it would not carry to so great a distance, neither could it be so often discharged in the same time.

(b) MONSIEUR William de Bellay in his instructions for the wars, translated by Paul Ive, gent. and published anno 1589, gives the cros-bow a still greater range; "and were it  
 " so, that the archers and crosse-bow men could carry about them their provision for their  
 " bowes and crosse-bowes, as easily as ye harquebufiers may do theirs for their harquebuffe,  
 " I would commend them before the harquebuffe, as well for their readinesse in shootinge,  
 " which is much more quicker, as also for the sureness of their shot, which is almost never  
 " in vayne. And although the harquebufier may shoote further, notwithstanding the archer  
 " and crosse-bowe man will kill at C. or CC. pases off, as well as the best harquebufier:  
 " and sometime the harnesse, except it be the better, cannot holde out: at the uttermost  
 " the remedy is, that they should be brought as neare before they do shoote as possibly they  
 " may, and if it were so handled, there would be more slain by their shot, than by twice  
 " as many harquebufiers, and this I will prove by one crosse-bow man that was at Thurin,  
 " when as the Lord Marshall of Annibault was governor there, wlio, as I have understood,  
 " in five or six skirmishes did kill or hurt more of our enemies, than five or six of the best  
 " harquebufiers did during the whole time of the siege."

## FIRE-ARMS.

THE first guns fired in hand, were called hand-cannons, coulou-verines, and hand-guns. The hand-gun used in England was a short piece, as appears from the statute of the 33d of Henry VIII. whereby it was enacted, that no hand-gun should be used of less dimensions than one yard in length, gun and stock included.

THE haquebut, or hag but, was a still shorter piece; by the statute above mentioned, it might not be under three quarters of a yard long, gun and stock as before included. This piece is by some writers supposed to have been called a haquebutt, from its butt end being hooked or bent like those now used, the stock of the hand-gun being nearly straight; there were also guns called demi-haques, either from their being less in size, or from having their butts less curved. Fauchet says, the haquebut was in his time called a harquebuz: a sort of pistol called a dag, was also used about the same time as hand-guns and haquebuts. Mr. Brander's manuscript records a variety of antient fire arms, which see in the note below (c).

## GREENWICH.

(c) ITEM. one chamber pece blacke, the stocke of redde woode set with bone worke, with a fier locke in a case of crymsen vellet. Item. one longe white pece with a fier locke. Item. one longe pece graven and guilte, with a stocke of redde woode set with white bone with a fier locke in a case of lether. Item. two chamber peces guilt and graven, with a fier locke in a stocke of yellow. Item. one guilte chamber pece parcell guilt, with a redde stocke, with a fier locke in a case of purple vellet. Item. one lytle shorte pece, for a horse-man, of damaskine worke, the stocke of woode and bone, set with a chamber. Item. one dagge with two peces in one stock. Item. two backe swordes in a case of lether, and two letle dagges garnished with silver, parcell guilte and emaled, with knyves and bodkyns. Item. c. Italion peces, and everie one hys moulde, flaske, touche boxe, and matche. Item. one horne for gonne powder, garnished with silver. Item. iii. grete flaskes covered with vellet, and thre lytle touche boxes. Item. ii. longe small cofers for gannes. Item. a white tacke with a fier locke graven, and all the stock white bone; a great flaske varnished and painted, a touche box of iron graven and gilded. Item. ii. tacks after the fashion of a dagger,



THE first introduction of hand-guns into this kingdom was in the year 1471, when King Edward IV. landing at Ravenspurgh in Yorkshire, brought with him, among other forces, three hundred Flemings, armed with "Hange-gunnes." This is an earlier date than has generally been assigned for that event. Among the Rev. Mr. Lamb's notes on the battle of Flodden is the following: "It is said, that the first time muskets were used in Britain was at the siege of Berwick, anno 1521, when they were called hand-cannon;" but for this report or tradition he cites no authority. Mr. Anderson, in his History of Commerce, gives the same date for that introduction.

THE harquebuss is by Fauchet derived from the Italian *arca bouza*, or the bow with a hole (d). It does not appear that harquebusses were originally of any particular length or bore; the harquebuss, as well as the hand-gun, hackbutt and dag, were at first fired with a match, and afterwards some of them with the wheel lock. The former, by a spring, let down a burning match upon the priming in the pan, and the latter was a contrivance for exciting sparks of fire, by the friction of a notched wheel of steel, which grated against a flint; these wheels were wound up with an instrument called a spanner (e).

dagger, with fier lockes vernished, with redde stockes, shethes covered with blacke vellet, garnished with silver, and guilt, with purses, flasks and touch boxes of black vellet garnished with iron guilt. Item. ii. tackses hafted like a knyff with fier locks, and doble lockes a pece, th'one graven parcell guilt, and tother vernished with two purses, two flasks, and two touch boxes of black vellet, th'one garnished with iron and guilt.

TOWN of BERWICK. Demy hackes stocked 50. Hand gomes unstocked 80. Hornes with purses, and without purses 20. Moulds for said hackes 100.

ALNWICK CASTLE. Hagbuttes of croke of yrone 2. Hagbuttes well stocked 20.

(d) CET instrument s'appella depuis haquebute, & maintenant a pris le nom de harquebuz: que ceux qui pensent le nom estre Italien luy ont donné: comme qui déroit Arc à trou, que les Italiens appellent *Bouzo*, finalement ces bastons ont esté reduits a un pied & moins de longueur: & lors ils sont nommez pistolles & pistolets, pour avoir premierement esté faits a Pistoie. *Livre de L'Origine des Armes, &c.* p. 57.

(e) FATHER DANIEL, vol. 1. p. 465. has the following description of a wheel lock. Les arquebuses & les pistolets a rouet sont oujourd'hui des armes fort inconnues, & l'on n'en

trouve

THE balls were carried in a bag or purse, the powder in a horn or flask, and the priming, which was of a finer sort of mealed powder, in a touch-box; this powder was called serpentine powder, from the part of the match lock that held the match, denominated the serpentine.

THE petronel, or poitrinal, according to Fauchet, was the medium between the harquebuzs and the pistol. Nicot defines it in his dictionary, as a species of harquebuzs shorter than the musquet, but of a greater calibre, which, on account of its great weight, was carried on a large bauldrick, worn cross the shoulders like a sash, and when fired was rested on the breast of the person who used it.

IN the estimate of an army made in 1620, before mentioned, petronells with firelocks, flasks, touch-boxes, and cases, are charged at 1l. 8s. each.

THE musquet was a heavier kind of harquebuzs, carrying also a larger ball. Sir Thomas Kellie, in his Art Militaire, published anno 1621, says, the barril of a musquet should be four feet in length, the bore capable of receiving bullets, twelve whereof weigh a pound (f). Musquets were so heavy as to require a fork, called a rest (g), to

trove guères que dans les arseneaux & dans les cabinets d'Armes où l'on en a conservé quelques uns par curiosité; ainsi je dois expliquer ce que c'étoit que ce rouet qui donnoit le mouvement à tous les ressorts.

C'ÉTOIT une petite roue solide d'acier qu'on appliquoit contre la platine de l'Arquebuse ou d'un pistolet: elle avoit un essieu qui la perçoit dans son centre. Au bout interieure de l'essieu qui entroit dans la platine étoit attachée une chainette qui s'entortilloit autour de cet essieu, quand on le faisoit tourner, & bandoit le ressort auquel elle tenoit. Pour bander le ressort ou se servoit d'une clef où lon enseroit le bout exterior de l'essieu. En tournant cette clef de gauche a droit, ou faisoit tourner le Rouet; & par ce mouvement une petite coulisse de cuivre qui couvroit le bassinet de l'amorce, se retiroit de dessus le bassinet. Par le même mouvement le chien armé d'une pierre de mine, comme le chien du fusil l'est d'une pierre a fusil, étoit on état d'être lâché dès que l'on tiroit avec le doigt la détente comme dans les pistolets ordinaires; alors le chien tombant sur le rouet d'acier faisoit feu, & le donnoit a l'amorce.

(f) SOME ancient musquets carried balls of ten to the pound.

(g) RESTS were of different lengths, according to the heights of the men who were to use

support them when presented in order to fire; sometimes these rests were armed with a contrivance called a swine's feather, which was a sort of sword blade, or tuck, that issued from the staff of the rest, at the head; this being placed before the musqueteers when loading, served, like the stakes placed before the archers, to keep off the cavalry: these preceded the use of the bayonet; the invention of which originated in the soldiers sticking the handles of their daggers into the muzzles of their pieces, when they had discharged all their ammunition. Musquets were fired with match locks; musqueteers of the reign of James and Charles I. carried their powder in little wooden, tin, or leather cylindric boxes, each containing one charge.

TWELVE of these, fixed to a belt worn over the left shoulder, were called bandileers; this contrivance seems to have been borrowed from the Dutch or Walloons (h). To prevent the matches from being

use them; they were shod with sharp iron ferrils, for sticking them into the ground, and were on the march, when the musquet was shouldered, carried in the right hand, or hung upon it by means of a string or loop tied under the head.

“MUSKET-RESTS were used a long time, and in some places are yet, to ease the musketeers in discharging their guns, and when they stood centinel; but in the late expeditions in most places of Christendom, they have been found more troublesome than helpful. A musketeer in any sudden occasion not being well able to do his duty with musket, sword, and rest, especially if you give him a Sweedish feather to manage with them. Bockler, the engineer, speaks of an instrument that might serve for both rest and feather, and such perhaps would be very useful and convenient; he would have it at the top as all rests are, like a fork on the one side, whereof he would have an iron of one foot and a half long sticking out sharply pointed; these planted in the van or flanks, where you expect the charge, as the Sweedish feathers used to be, will sufficiently palliade and defend a body of musketeers from horse, and upon them they may lean their muskets when they give fire.” *Turner's Pallas Armata*. p. 176.

THE Duke of Albemarle in his observations upon Military and Political Affairs, printed anno 1671, recommends the arming musqueteers and dragoons with musquets having swines' feathers, with the heads of rests fastened to them. A part of a rest that contained a swine's feather is shewn in the miscellaneous plate; it was formerly in the collection of the Rev. Mr. Gosling of Canterbury.

(h) “AND therefore those souldiers which in our time have beene for the most part levied in the lowe countries, especially those of Artoyes and Henault, called by the generall name  
“ of

seen in the night, small tubes of tin, or copper, pierced full of holes, were invented, it is said, by a Prince of Orange, probably Prince Maurice: they are described by Walhuyfen (i). It is necessary, says he, that every musqueteer knows how to carry his match dry in moist and rainy weather, that is, in his pocket; or in his hat, by putting the lighted match between his head and hat; or by some other means to guard it from the weather. The musqueteer should also have a little tin tube of about a foot long, big enough to admit a match, and pierced full of little holes, that he may not be discovered by his match when he stands sentinel, or goes on any expedition; this was the origin of the match-boxes, till lately worn by our grenadiers.

IN the estimate for a royal army in 1620, a musquet with bandeliers and rest is valued at 1l. 0s. 8d., and by the council of war in the 7th of Charles I. 18s. 10d., thus made out:

	s.	d.
For a new musquet with mould, worn, and scowrer -	15	6
For a musquet-rest - - - - -	0	10
For a new bandelier with twelve charges, a primer, a priming-wire, a bullet-bag, and a strap, or belt, of two inches in breadth - - - - -	2	6

“ of Wallownes, have used to hang about their neckes, upon a baudrick or border, or at their girdles, certain pipes which they call charges, of copper and tin made with covers, which they thinke in skirmish to bee the most readie way. But the Spaniard despising that order, doth altogether use his flaske.” *Davis’s Art of War*, p. 8.

“ To a musketier belongs also a bandilier of leather, at which he should have hanging eleven or twelve shot of powder, a bag for his ball, a primer, and a cleaner. But it is thirty years ago since I saw these laid aside in some German armies; for it is impossible for soldiers, especially wanting cloaks (and more want cloaks than have any), to keep these flashes, though well and strongly made, from snow and rain, which soon spoils them, and so makes the powder altogether useles: besides the noise of them betray those who carry them, in all surprizals, anslachts, and sudden enterprizes.” *Turner’s Pallas Armata*, p. 176.

(i) L’ART Militaire pour l’Infanterie, &c. par Jean Jaques de Walhaufen, principal capitaine des gardes, & capitaine de la lovable ville de Dantzic, &c. en folio, p. 136. Printed in 1615.

A MORE simple kind of lance-rest than those represented in plate 31 were in use in Germany and Italy. These were only formed by a hook, fastened to the right side of the breast-piece, into which the lance was laid. A rest of this kind is shewn in plate 43; but from the plate being reversed, appears on the left side instead of the right.

THE caliver was a lighter kind of musquet with a match-lock, and was made to be fired without a rest. It seems either to have acquired its name from being of a certain approved bore or calibre, emphatically stiled, by way of eminence, the calibre, according to that mode of expression, whereby we testify our approbation of any machine or contrivance, by saying it is *the thing*, or from the term "a piece of calibre," being restricted to those not under a certain bore; just as the appellation of a horse of size, is confined to a tall horse not less than fifteen hands high, although every other horse is undoubtedly a horse of size, either great or small. From calibre it was corrupted to caliver. That this was, in some measure, the case, we learn from Edmund York, an officer who had served in the Low-countries, and was employed by Queen Elizabeth to drill the militia of London, at the time these kingdoms were threatened with the Spanish Invasion. "I remember," says he, "when I was first brought up in Piemont, in the countie of Brisacks regiment of Old Bandes, we had our particular calibre of harquebuse to our regiment, both for that one bullet should serve all the harquebuses of our regiment, as for that our colonel should not be deceived of his arms; of which word calibre come first that unapt term we use to call a harquebuse a calliver, which is the height of the bullet and not of the piece. Before the battle of Moungunter, the princes of the religion caused several thousand harquebuses to be made, all of one calibre, which was called harquebuse de calibre de Monsieur le Prince; so I think some man, not understanding French, brought hither the name of the height of the bullet of the piece, which word calibre is yet continued with our good canoniers (k)." Sir John Smith (l) gives the

---

(k) MAITLAND'S History of London, vide Artillery.

(l) SIR JOHN SMITH'S Confutation of Captain Berwick, MSS. No. 4685. B. Museum.

following definition of a caliver, which seems rather to fall in with my second conjecture. His words are, "It is supposed by many that the weapon, called a caliver, is another thing than a harquebuse; whereas, in troth, it is not; but only a harquebuse; saviage, that it is of greater circuite, or bullet, than the other is of; wherefore the Frenchman doth call it a peece de calibre; which is as much as to saie, a peece of bigger circuite." From this it seems as if a caliver was a harquebuse of a certain calibre, or bore, larger than that of the common ones. That it was less and lighter than a musquet is evident, from its being fired without a rest (m), as is shewn in a military treatise, containing the exercise of the musquet, caliver, and pike; with figures finely engraved by J. de Gheyn. The explanations were originally in Dutch, but were translated into English, and printed with the same plates for the use of King Charles I.

PECKE, in his *Desiderata Curiosa*, has preserved the price of a caliver and its accoutrements, as paid in Queen Elizabeth's time by the sberiff of Lancashire, anno 1584, for the use of recruits raised for the Irish service; which was, the caliver furnished with flaske and touche box, laces and moulds, thirteen shillings and sixpence.

IN an estimate made 18th James I., anno 1620, of the expences of a royal army of thirty thousand men, intended to be sent into the Palatinate (n); a caliver with bandaleers is valued at fourteen shillings and ten pence.

A CURRIER was another kind of piece formerly used, chiefly I believe in sieges. Very little is said of it by military writers. It is once or twice mentioned in Lord Wentworth's Letter to Queen Mary, re-

(m) THIS is confirmed by a passage in Shakespeare, where Falstaff, reviewing his recruits, says of Wart, a poor weak undersized fellow, "Put me a caliver into Wart's hands," &c. meaning that, although Wart is unfit for a musketeer, yet if armed with a lighter piece he may do good service.

(n) THIS estimate was made by a committee consisting of the Earls of Oxenford, Effex and Leicester; Viscount Wilmot; Lords Danvers and Caufield; Sir Edward Cecil and Sir Richard Morrifon, Knts. and Captain John Bingham, which met at the Old Council Chamber, in Whitehall. Their report is in the British Museum among the Harleian MSS. marked 5109; the army proposed was to consist of 25,000 foot, 5,000 horse, and twenty pieces of artillery.

pecting the siege of Calais, among the state-papers, published by Lord Hardwick.

FROM the following passages in Sir John Smith's animadversions on the writings of Captain Berwick (o), it appears, that a currier was of the same calibre and strength as a harquebuss, but had a longer barrel. His words are—"but yet in one thinge his lack of confidence is to be noted, and that is, that he doth make no distinction nor difference betwixt a currier and a harquebuze, in the which he is greatly deceived; for in those there is as great or more difference betwixt a currier of warre and a harquebuze, in the length of cannon, and for shooting, as there is betwixt a harquebuze and a mousquet, which I perceive by his writing he doth not consider of, and therefore doe overpasse the same." And in another place—"so likewise, of a harquebuze and a currier, both reinforced backward as they ought to be, and of one caliver heighth of bullet; and the currier in respect of the greater lengthe, must have a greater advantage and quantitie of powder to appulse and impulse the bullet to his fardest object marke within point blanke; then the harquebuze to impulse his bullet to his furdest object marke; and all this in respect to the different lengthes of the pieces, being in the rest of one caliver and reinforced alike."

MARKHAM, in his *Souldiers Accidence*, published in 1648, p. 37, mentions a kind of piece I do not recollect to have met with elsewhere, which he calls a dragon; and, in his direction for arming the dragon, thus describes it: "And for offensive arms they have a fayre dragon fitted with an iron work to be carried in a belt of leather, which is buckled over the right shoulder, and under the left arm; having a turnell of iron with a ring through which the piece runneth up and downe, and these dragons are short pieces, of sixteen inches the barrell, and full musquet bore, with firelocks or snap-haunces (p)."

(o) HARLEIAN MSS. No. 4685.

(p) THE piece derived its name from the species of soldiers by whom it was carried, who

WITH this weapon I shall close the description of armour and arms, and next endeavour to point out the various changes they have undergone, whether occasioned by statutes, royal ordonnances, or other causes, with the dates when those changes happened. For the convenience of artists, I shall also describe the armour and weapons, with which the different kinds of soldiers should be represented at the three following periods, viz. about the time of Henry II., the reign of Henry VI., and that of Charles II.

ALTHOUGH the particular kinds of armour and weapons used by the English, about the time of the Norman invasion, is not described by any writer of that time; yet it is certain they were defensively armed, and even heavily, for which we have the testimony of Ingulphus; who relates, that in the year 1063 King Edward having sent an army, under the command of Harrold, Earl of the West Saxons, against the Welch, that General observing his men were unable from the weight of their armour to overtake the enemy, who having committed their depredations suddenly retired, caused them to use armour of boiled, or jacked leather, and other light defences. That the heavy armour here mentioned was of mail, there is every reason to believe. Mail was a contrivance of very great antiquity; it was known to the Saxons, and worn by their princes and great men (q); it was also used by the Danes, and considering the vicinity of the kingdoms of England and France, and the constant intercourse between them, might be imported, or the art of making it acquired by English workmen. The English had also helmets and shields; their offensive weapons were the spear, the sword, and the battle ax; the bowe was not then in general use.

THE defensive armour of a Norman knight, about this time, and

to this day are, in France, called and spelt dragons, and were from the celerity of their movements compared to the fabulous monster of that name. Dragons, or dragoons, were originally not considered as cavalry, but only as infantry mounted for the sake of being speedily transported from one place to another. The snaphaunce is the Dutch name for the present locks used to our pieces.

(q) MAIL is mentioned in the will of Prince Æthelstan, p. 263. *note (u)*.



long after the conquest, consisted of a helmet, a hawberk, or complete suit of mail, the gambeson, the plastron, and sur-coat of arms; this last was a loose garment of silk or fatten lined, and frequently embroidered, much in form resembling a carter's frock, but without sleeves, and reaching only to the middle of the thigh.

THE helmets then chiefly worn were either of a conical, or a pyramidal figure open before, the latter having a small plate, or nasal of iron or brass, projecting over the nose to defend it from the stroke of a broad sword. William the Conqueror is represented with the conical helmet, on two of his great seals published by Sandford (r). Many of the principal figures in the Bayeux tapestry have pyramidal helmets, with the nasals beforementioned. William, Earl of Mellent and Worcester, who lived in the middle of the twelfth century, is also represented in a pyramidal helmet and nasal (s); these, as well as most of the other helmets of that time, appear to be generally worn over hoods of mail, which guarded the neck (t).

ANOTHER kind of helmet seems shortly after to have been in fashion, both in England and France; its form was nearly that of a cylinder, and sometimes of a truncated cone, the base upwards; both were flat on the top. These flat helmets, Montfaucon says, were in use during the age of St. Louis (u), but being soon after left off were never revived (x). Indeed, as he justly observes, it was the worst form that could have been adopted, as a stroke of a sword or mace would fall with its full force on that flat surface, whereas on a conical or pyramidal helmet both those weapons would either glance off, or act

(r) SEE those helmets, fig. 1 and 2, plate 9, and several others here mentioned.

(s) SEE fig. 3, plate 9.

(t) WHEN the wearer of one of these pyramidal helmets had occasion to drink, or wished to uncover his face, to breathe freely or converse, it was effected by thrusting back the helmet, by which the nasal was raised up almost parallel with the horizon; an instance of this may be seen in the Bayeux tapestry.

(u) MONARCH. Franc.

(x) ST. LOUIS died 1270, he was contemporary with Henry III.; some of these flat helmets lasted in England till the reign of Edward II., at least are to be seen on tombs of that date.

obliquely. Many of our kings, great barons, and knights, are represented on their coins, seals and tombs with these cylindric head-pieces. On them kings wore their crowns, which originally were meant as distinguishing helmets, and great men different ornaments and devices; from behind them there sometimes hung a kind of streamer called a fouleret (y).

THE shields used at this period by the cavalry were large, triangular, and convex; their weapons were the sword, spear, and long bow.

THE horses of the knights when equipped for war, were barded with iron or jacked leather to defend them from wounds; for, as the laming or killing a horse would effectually render the knight unfit for service, that would undoubtedly be always attempted; but as on the contrary, at tournaments, it was against the laws of chivalry to strike a horse; they were on those occasions, and in solemn processions or entries, caparisoned or covered with silk or velvet bards, embroidered with armorial bearings or other ornaments.

THE infantry wore coats of mail, aketons, and open bacinets. They had shields, some round and some square, and made of hurdles covered with leather; some of the round shields were remarkably conical (z), and armed with a projecting spike: their weapons were swords, spears, clubs, battle-axes, and the long bow.

THE armour and weapons in use at the time of Edward I. may be collected from the statute of Winchester, made the 13th of that reign, where the particular species for every rank are specified.

By this statute, every man having lands of the value of fifteen

(y) ALTHOUGH the conical, pyramidal, and cylindric helmets were chiefly worn about the twelfth century; yet there were some of a different shape. John, son of Richard I., afterwards King John, is represented on his great seal in Sandford, with a round helmet, like those of more modern date; it is open before except the covering of a nasal. See it fig. 4. p. 9.

(z) SEVERAL specimens of these may be seen in the Bayeux tapestry; the round shields of later times were frequently concave.

pounds (a), and chattels of forty marks, was bound to keep a haubergeon, an iron head-piece called a chapel, a sword, a dagger, and a horse. Those possessing ten pounds in land, and twenty shillings in chattels, a haubergeon, chapel of iron, sword and dagger. Persons having an hundred shillings in land, were to keep a doublet (b), a chapel of iron, a sword and dagger. Such as had from forty shillings in land to any sum less than an hundred shillings, a sword (c), bow and arrows, and a dagger. Persons possessing less than forty shillings land, to keep faulchions, gifarmes, daggers, and other inferior weapons; those who had only chattels under the value of twenty marks, to have swords, daggers, and other inferior weapons. In this regulation there are two remarkable circumstances, one that the horseman is not armed with a lance, and the other that a shield is not mentioned, either for him, or those of the inferior degrees; these regulations were, it is true, made more with a view to the preservation of the internal peace of the kingdom against sudden commotions, than for the regular purposes of war; they were, however, occasionally to serve for both; the lance and shield were among the arms directed to be kept by the country people in France, as is shewn by the verses in the note below, quoted by Fauchet, from an antient poem witten about the time of St. Louis, called the furniture of a villain, or villager (d).

(a) THE statute does not explain whether the annual value is meant, or that of the fee simple.

(b) POURPOINT, a haqueton, or jacket of defence.

(c) THOSE who were to keep bows and arrows might have them out of the forest; a review of these arms to be made twice a year by two constables out of every hundred, who were to report the defaulters to the justices, and they to present them to the king.

(d) Si le convient armer  
 Por la terre garder  
 Cotereel & Haunet  
 Et Macue & Guibet,  
 Arc & lance enfumée  
 Qu'il nait foin de messée  
 Avec lui ait couchée  
 Lespee enrouille, &c.

Puis ait son viel Escu  
 A la parrois pendu.  
 A son col' le doit pendre,  
 Pour la terre deffendre  
 Quand il vient Ost banie.

THE hawberk and haubergeon long continued almost the sole defensive armour of this country; the first material change that happened respecting it was the introduction of plate-armour, that is, armour composed of plates of iron rivetted together; but as this change was not brought about by the mandate of the sovereign, or any publick ordonnance or regulation, it naturally took place but slowly, and by degrees; a striking proof of this may be gathered from an entry in our publick records, whence we learn that plate-armour was known in England two years (e) before the statute of Winchester was enacted; yet by that statute, the use of the haubergeon was directed, besides which, many monuments and seals shew that the general use of mail-armour continued long after that period, and that it was even used with the plate-armour (f).

Two reasons probably conspired to check the progress of this innovation, one, the great price of a suit of plate-armour, which therefore could be purchased only by men of fortune; the other, that attachment which most men have for their antient customs and fashions, and the great reluctance with which they exchange them for new inventions. Fauchet says, this change happened in the year 1330; father Daniel does not entirely subscribe to that opi-

(e) FROM an entry in the Escheat roll of the 11th of Edward I., quoted in Blount's Tenures, it appears that Painell de Chaworth was found seized of four hundred acres of land in East Gaveston, in the county of Berks, held by the service of finding a knight armed in plate armour in the king's army, when it should be in the territory of Kidwelly, in Wales.

IF the suit of armour shewn in the Tower (see plate 14.) was really what it is said to have been, that is, the armour of John de Courcy, Earl of Ulster in Ireland, brought with him to the Tower; it will prove that plate armour was in use as early as 1204, the date of his confinement; indeed, it is most probable, that plate armour was known and used by princes and great men from the time of the Romans; but not commonly adopted.

(f) MAIL was never entirely left off; sleeves and gussets of mail being worn long after the common use of plate armour. Many antient knights seem to have worn a shirt of mail under their cuirasses, as in their figures on monuments; it is seen both below their tassets and round their necks, serving in the place of a gorget. Mail is recommended by some military writers as late as the middle of the 16th century.

nion (g). Plate-armour was, however, completely introduced both here and in France about the middle of the fourteenth century.

It seems most likely that the exchange of the hawberk for plate-armour, was first occasioned by the insufferable heat and incumbrance of the former, and its appendages; for though the plate-armour was undoubtedly heavier than the hawberk (h), it was by no means so sweltering and cumbersome; the heat of the gambeson and fur-coat alone, without reckoning the plaffron and hawberk, were more than a man could well bear in the throng and dust of an engagement, particularly in summer; and indeed we read of more than one instance of knights being suffocated in their armour.

ANOTHER innovation of an inferior kind, but prior in its date, arose from the re-introduction or revival of the cross-bow, which had been for some time laid aside in obedience to a decree of the second Lateran council held in 1139 (i), afterwards confirmed by Pope Innocent III.

THIS weapon was again introduced into our armies by King Richard I., who being slain with a quarrel shot from one of them, at the siege of the castle of Chaluz in Normandy, it was considered as a judgment from Heaven inflicted upon him for his impiety (k).

(g) *TOUT ces faits prouvent que ce changement d'armure & du Hauber á quoi succeda l'armure fait de pur fer, commença au plutard sous Phillipe Le Bel; & il est vrai aussi que sous Phillipe de Valois l'armure de fer fut presque seul en usage. Froissart que je viens de citer, qui vivoit sous le Regne de ce prince, & qui a écrit l'histoire de ce tems la, ne fait guères mention de Haubers, & ne parle par tout que des armures de fer. P. Daniel Hist. de la Mil. Franc. vol. 1. p. 396.*

(h) *THE weight of a complete suit of proof armour is from sixty to seventy-five pounds; the weight of Mr. Green's hawberk, helmet included, is only thirty-five pounds. See plate 21.*

(i) *ARTEM illam mortiferam & Deo odibilem ballistariorum & sagittariorum adversus Christianos & Catholicos exerceri de cætero sub anathemate prohibemus. Can. 29.*

*THIS prohibition was observed under the reign of Louis the Young, and in the beginning of that of Philippe Auguste, but afterwards no regard was paid to it, neither in France nor in England, notwithstanding that Innocent III. had renewed it, and again recommended the observance of it.*

(k) *GUILLIAUME LE BRETON, relating the death of this king, puts the following into the mouth of Atropos one of the Parcæ. L. 5. Philipid.*

THE cross-bow is by some said to be of Sicilian origin; others ascribe the invention of it to the Cretans; it is supposed to have been introduced into France by some of the first crusaders. The cross-bow is mentioned by the Abbé Suger in the life of Louis le Gros, as being used by that prince in the beginning of his reign (1). Louis le Gros ascended the throne of France in the year 1108; he was contemporary with king Henry I.

VERSTEGAN seems to attribute the introduction of the cross-bow into England to the Saxons under Hengist and Horfa, but cites no authority to support that supposition. In a print representing the landing of those generals, the foremost of them is delineated with a cross-bow on his shoulder. Of this print the author says, “ And because these noble gentlemen were the first bringers in, and conductors of the ancestors of Englishmen into Britaine, from whence unto their posterity the possession of the countrey hath ensued, I thought fit here in pourtraiture to set down their first arrivall, therewithall to shewe the manner of the apparell which they wore, the weapons which they used, and the banner or ensign first by them there spread in the field (m).” Some writers say, William the Conqueror had cross-bows in his army at the battle of Hastings.

AFTER the revival of this weapon by Richard I. it was much used in our armies. In the list of forces raised by King Edward II. against the Scots, anno 1322, the cross-bow men make the second article in the enumeration of the different kinds of soldiers of which it consisted (n).

---

Hac volo, non alia Richardum morte perire  
 Ut qui Franci genis ballistæ primitus usum  
 Tradidit, ipse sui rem primitus experiatur,  
 Quamque alios docuit, in se vim sentiat artis.

(1) SEE Pere Daniel. Hist. de la Mil. Fr. vol. 1. p. 425.

(m) RESTITUTION of decayed Intelligence, p. 117.

(n) TITULUS de vadiis tam peditum, balistariorum, lanceatorum & sagittariorum Angliæ, Walliæ & Vafcon; quam quorundam hominum ad arma et hobelariorum, retentorum ad vadia

THE cross-bow was also considered as a royal weapon; Gerard de la Warre is recorded as being cross-bow bearer to Henry III.; and diverse manors, lands, and tenements were held by finding cross-bows, strings, or the materials for making them, for our different kings (o). King Henry VII. used frequently to exercise himself in shooting with a cross-bow for wagers; several sums lost by him to his courtiers are entered in the book belonging to the Remembrancer's office, before quoted. Notwithstanding which, a statute was made in the nineteenth year of that king's reign forbidding the use of cross-bows, as tending to lessen the practice of archery with the long bow (p).

THE cross-bow continued to be generally used in our armies, even so late as the year 1572, when Queen Elizabeth, in a treaty with King Charles IX. of France, engaged to furnish him with six thousand men, armed part with long-bows and part with cross-bows. And in the attack of the isle of Rhee by the English, anno 1627, some cross-bows were still said to be in that army (q).

THE cross-bow makers used to exercise themselves and try their weapons at the popinjoy or artificial parrot, in a field called Tassel-clofe, in London, from the number of thistles growing there; this was afterwards hired by the Artillery Company, and is called the

vadia domini Regis Edwardi, filii Regis Edwardi in Guerra Scotiæ & alibi, a primo die Maii, anno quinto decimo, usque Septimum diem Julii anno regni ejusdem, sexto decimo, finiente tempore. Rogeri de Waltham tunc custodis, et Roberti de Baldok tunc contrarotulatoris Garderobæ. MS. in the library of Thomas Astle, Esq.

(o) SEE Blount's Tenures, a new edition of which, with many curious illustrations, has been lately published by Mr. Josiah Beckwith.

(p) RASTELL'S Stat. 19 H. 7. c. 4.

(q) THE monthly wages of a cross bowe maker, a yeoman and groom of the cross bowes, are charged in the expences of Henry VIII. an. 38. in the curious MSS. in the Remembrancer's office, the first 10s. 4d., the second 20s. 8d., the third 10s. 4d. And in the history of the first fourteen years of King James I. among the artificers of the ordnance, is Rodger Choven, cross bowe maker, with a fallery of 4d. per diem.

Old Artillery Ground (r). Cross-bows were used by the fraternity of St. George (s).

SIR John Smith says (t) he saw many large cross-bows in the armoury of the grand master of Malta, and in those of many princes in Germany, such as no armour nor target could resist, although capable of turning a musket ball, shooting quarrels of such bigness with square tempered heads, some of them three inches long.

THE shield, although it was not entirely relinquished so long as the use of the long and cross-bows continued, seems to have undergone some alteration in its form, the triangular or heater shield gradually giving place to those of a circular or rectangular figure; shields were first left off by the cavalry; they were, however, used in the army of King Edward I. at the siege of Karlaverok in the year 1300 (u).

(r) SEE Maitland's History of London.

(s) THE king (i. e. Hen. VIII.) having restrained the annual custom of the city watch, owing to its great expence, endeavoured to preserve the manly exercise of shooting, by granting a charter to the company of Archers, who were called the fraternity of St. George, by which they had the power to use and exercise shooting at all manner of marks, as well in the city as suburbs, with long bows, cross bows, and hand guns, with these clauses, that in case any persons were shot or slain in these sports by an arrow shot by one of these archers, the shooter was not to be sued or molested, if he had immediately before the shot used the common word *fast*. The chieftain of these archers was called Prince Arthur, and the rest of them his knights; the principal place of exercising this sport was Mile End, where they were frequently honoured with the presence of the king himself. *Chamberlain's Hist of London, p. 192.*

(t) SIR John Smith's Confutation of Captain Barwick. MSS. No. 4685. Harl. Collect. British Museum.

(u) LORS i peust on revoir,  
 Aussi espes pieres chaoior;  
 Com si on en deust poudrer,  
 E chapeaus et heaumes offronder,  
 Ecus et targes depescier.

And in another place,  
 Car meinte targe freschement,  
 Peinte, et guarnie richement,



MR. PENNANT, in his Journey to Snowden, speaking of Wales in the time of Henry IV., says, as a proof of the high value of arms, and that we had few manufactures of that kind; a two-handed sword was valued at ten shillings, a one-handed at six shillings and eight-pence, and a steel buckler at two shillings and eight-pence: but what is very singular, a bow which themselves could make, was valued at sixteen pence, and an arrow at six-pence (x).

A SORT of shields were worn by the Scots at the battle of Muffelborough, the first of Edward VI., which Paton thus describes: “ Nye  
 “ this place of Onset, wher the Scottes at their runninge away had  
 “ let fall their weapons (as I sayd), thear found we befyde their  
 “ common manner of armour, certeyn nice instruments for war (as  
 “ we thought), and they were nue boardes endes cut of, being aboute  
 “ a foote in breadth and half a yarde in lengthe, havyng on the  
 “ infyde handels made very cunningly of two cordes endes; these,  
 “ a God’s name, wear their targettes againe the shot of our small  
 “ artillerie, for they wear not able to hold canon. And with these  
 “ found we great rattels swellyng bygger than the belly of a pottle  
 “ pot, covered with old parchment, or dooble papers, small stones  
 “ put into them to make noys, and set upon the ende of a staff of  
 “ more than two ells long, and this was their fyne devyse to fray  
 “ our horses, when our horsemen shoulde cum at them. Howbeit,  
 “ because the ryders were no babyes, nor the horses no colts: they  
 “ could neyther duddle the t’one, nor fray the toother, so that the  
 “ pollecey was as witles as their powr forceles.”

AMONG the artificers in the pay of Henry VIII., in the 38th year of his reign, is a buckler maker, Geffrey Bromfield, whose quarter’s

Meinte heaume et meint chapeau burni,  
 Meint riche gamboison guarni,  
 De foie et Cadas et cotoun  
 En lour venue veist on.

Siege of Karlaverok. MSS. Bib. Cotton Caligula A. XVIII.

(x) JOURNEY to Snowden, p. 86.

wages are there charged 15s. 2d. (y) Shields or bucklers seem to have been used in affrays and private quarrels by persons in the civil line, as late as the reigns of Elizabeth and King James I. Dugdale records an order made in the Temple in the first of Queen Elizabeth, that no fellow of that society should wear any sword or buckler, or cause either to be borne after him into the town under the penalty of three shillings and four-pence for the first time, six shillings and eight-pence for the second, and expulsion from the society for the third (z). George Silver mentioning an affray that happened between an English and an Italian fencing-master, says, the former was armed with a sword and buckler, the latter with a two-handed sword (a). The common appellation for a quarrelsome or fighting fellow about that period, was a swash-buckler, that is, a breaker or clasher of bucklers (b).

MAURICE, prince of Orange, was a great advocate for the shield, and even attempted to revive the use of it. His company of Dutch guards were armed with targets and roundels, and he formed a regular plan of exercise for them. A book in folio, containing all the motions for both, finely engraved, and accompanied with explanations in French, was published by his order, anno 1618 (c).

THE target and broad sword were the favourite arms of the Scotch highlanders as late as the year 1746, and even after; for I remember many private men of the old highland regiment in Flanders in the

(y) MSS. in the office of the Remembrancer of the Exchequer.

(z) DUGDALE's Origin. Jurid. p. 345.

(a) GEORGE SILVER's Paradoxes of Defence. N. B. The copy here quoted wants the title and date.

(b) PHILIPS in his New World of Words, defines, to swash, to make fly about; to clash, or make a noise with swords; and a swash-buckler, a vain glorious sword player or fencer, a meer braggadochoe, a vapouring fellow.

(c) LE Maniement d'Armes de Nassau avecq Rondelles, piques espees & targes, representez par figures selon le nouveau ordere du tres illustre prince Maurice de Nassau, &c. &c. par Adam van Breen, avec instruction par escript pour tous cappitaines & commandeurs nouvellement mis en lumiere, imprimé anno 1618.

years 1747 and 1748, armed with targets, which though no part of their uniform, they were permitted to carry.

SWORDS and bucklers were antiently borne before great military officers, as insignia of their dignity; those carried before King Edward III. in France, are shewn in Westminster-abbey. The shield borne before the commandant of the forces on board the Spanish Armada is preserved in the Tower, and a sword was borne before the bishop of Norwich as commander of the troops, with which he intended to serve King Richard II. (d). Most of the ornamented metal shields, and many of the very large swords, were designed for this use.

THE application of gunpowder to projectile engines at first caused little or no alteration in the article of defensive armour, since none could be made so strong as to resist a cannon ball, and the number of men who carried hand-guns, for a long time, bore a very small proportion to those armed with other weapons; that usual predilection for antient usages operating in this instance so strongly against the admission of these new weapons, that though artillery was, as it is said, used at the battle of Cressly, fought in the year 1346; the general introduction of small arms was not thoroughly established in England, at the time the kingdom was threatened with an invasion by the Spanish Armada in 1588; a period of more than two hundred and forty years (e).

(d) SEE the rolls of Parliament, 7 R. II.

(e) ALTHOUGH the invention of gunpowder and its application to artillery and small arms have been commonly supposed modern discoveries, there is great reason to believe they have both been very long known to, and used by the Chinese, and other eastern people. Artillery is mentioned in the Gentoo code of Laws, supposed of very high antiquity; and our countryman, Friar Bacon, who lived before Bartholdus Swartz, particularly recites the composition of gunpowder, and says he learned it from a Greek writer. This invention, although by Milton, and other poets and writers, ascribed to the devil, was, without doubt, a most fortunate discovery for mankind, and has greatly lessened the slaughter and miseries of war. Formerly when men engaged hand to hand, they were so intermingled that the only criterion of victory was the having no more of the enemy to kill; the duration of sieges has also been considerably shortened since the use of gunpowder and artillery, by which the lives of many millions have been saved, who would otherwise have perished by hardships or disease, commonly in sieges more fatal than the sword.

IN the 41st of Edward III., A. D. 1368, both plate and mail armour were worn, as may be gathered from the following instance recorded in Rymer. Thomas de Erkine, and James the heir of William Douglas, of Degliemont, being engaged to fight a duel, according to the laws of Scotland, obtained a licence from King Edward directed to all sheriffs, mayors, &c. to provide themselves with the following armour and weapons in London. Thomas de Erkine, a pair of plates (f), a bacinet, a pair of brasers (g), quissets (h) greeves, a chafron for a horse, a dagger, a long sword, a short sword, and a pair of iron gauntlets. James Douglas, a pair of plates, a haubergeon, a pair of steel gauntlets, a helmet, a pair of brasers, and long armour, and covering for two horses; two daggers, and the head of a lance, with other armour for the said duel (i).

THE common armour for the infantry was in this, as in the preceding reigns, the aketon and bassinet. Men thus equipped received a penny per diem more pay than those without defensive armour (k).

THE armour worn about the time of King Henry VII. by both barons and knights, is described in an antient manuscript in the college of arms already quoted (l), and as the camp equipage then deemed

(f) BREAST and back plates.

(g) BRASERS for the arms.

(h) QUISSETS for the thighs.

(i) As some statutes in the reign of Edward III. and Richard II. regard armour, an abstract of them is here given. By the 2d of Edward III., no person to ride armed, either by night or day in fairs, markets (nor in the presence of the justices or other ministers), upon pain to forfeit their armour to the king, and their bodies to prison at the king's pleasure.

SEVENTH of Richard II. chap. 13. None shall ride with harness, contra 2d Edward III., nor with *launcegayes*, "the which launcegayes be clerely put out within the said realm as a thing prohibited by our lord the king, upon pain of forfeiture of the said launcegayes, armour, and other harnesses."

TWENTY-FIRST of Richard II. a confirmation of this statute under the former penalties, with the additional ones of fine and imprisonment, excepting the king's officers and ministers in doing their offices. In this act is moreover added, that no lord, knight, nor other, little nor great, shall go nor ride by night nor day armed, nor bear fallet nor skull of iron.

(k) ROGER DE WALTHAM'S account of the army sent to Scotland, 1322.

(l) See note c. p. 277. this MS. is supposed to have been written about the time of Richard III. or Henry VII.

necessary for persons of those ranks is also there specified, it is here transcribed at length, serving to shew the monstrous quantity of baggage and number of servants of different denominations, with which our antient armies were encumbered.

*Extract from a MS. l. 8. fol. 85. in the College of Arms.*

TH' apparell for the feld for a baron in his souvereyn compeny, or for a baneret, or a ryche bachelor.

OON whyte harnesse complete w<sup>t</sup> 2 hed peces according.

ITEM, 2 peyre of lege harnesse.

ITEM, 2 peyre of gauntelets.

ITEM, a peyre of brygandyrons w<sup>t</sup> foldes and flanchardes and standards.

ITEM, 1 axe.

ITEM, 1 holebarte.

ITEM, 1 spere.

ITEM, a armyne swerde.

ITEM, a dager.

ITEM, 2 peyre of armyng spores.

ITEM, cayffis breches.

ITEM, a peyre of cofres for the harneys or gardeveynes.

ITEM, garnyshe for your fallat or elemet, w<sup>t</sup> your devyse for the crest.

ITEM, a sumpter hors for the armory.

ITEM, 2 or 3 courfers.

ITEM, a large amylyng hors to hymselffe armed byfydes an hake-ney or tweyne for to ryde at pleas<sup>r</sup>.

As for traper demy trapers of your armes, or of Seynt George, or of oder deyfe, or bardes peynted, hyt is more worshyppfull than necessary.

ITEM, to remember hors hernefs of velvet of ledd, or of goldsmethes werke.

Also change of sadell for your courfers, sum covered w<sup>t</sup> leder and

fum w<sup>t</sup> velvet ; item, for your hakeneyes w<sup>t</sup> harneffe according. Item, fluffe of harshoufes 12, and fursyngles 12, of twyne, store of gurthes, 12 tramelles, 12 par paffrons, 13 halters, horfcombes 6, mane-combes 6 w<sup>t</sup> sponges, wateryng brydells, canvaſs for duſtinge cloths, portmares, bodekyns, halter, reyngnes, ledeyng reyngnes ; ſtore of double ſterrop leders, ſtore of horſay, and horſe nayles, 1 pere gilt ſterops, ſterropis of blacke vernyſhe werke.

ITEM, foure ſterrop ledes for herynſmen.

ITEM, ſockets for ſtandards or baners.

ITEM, ſpores for heynſmen.

ITEM, a charyett ſtrongly made w<sup>t</sup> hors and draught harneys according w<sup>t</sup> byndyng and braying ropes. Supterclothe w<sup>t</sup> your armes or badge. Item, a hyd of whytleder, or at the left half a hyd for mendynd of your drawgharneys, fupterhorſe w<sup>t</sup> the ſadelles wanteyes and long ledyng reynes.

ITEM, a cart, or a charyet for your tentes and pavyllions.

SPERE ſhaftes, bowes, arrowes, bow ſtreyngeſ, bylles, and a cart to carry them.

M. a pavyllion for your ſelf.

ITEM, a hale for horſes.

ITEM, a hale for your ſervantes.

ITEM, cotes of your armes for yourſelf and for your pſuivant.

ITEM, a penon of your armes.

ITEM, ſtandardes of your devyſe.

ITEM, logyng ſtandard.

ITEM, logyng ſcotchyngs.

ITEM, pencells for your ſpeers.

ITEM, connoyfaunce betyn in oyle colour for your carriage.

OFFICERS neceſſaries—a chappeleyn, that to the maſſe belongeth, harberours, purveyours for your ſtable and for your vitayles, a barber, ſurgeon, a ſmythe w<sup>t</sup> his neceſſaries, a ſadeler, an armourer w<sup>t</sup> by-corn, and hys oder neceſſaries ; a truſty choſen man to bear the baner, anoder for the ſtandard, a yeoman for your tentes, byſides horſe-keepers, ſumptermen, carters.

FOR the wache.

FIRST, a jake, or a good doublet of fence.

ITEM, a hede-pece for the same.

ITEM, a large wachynge gowne.

ITEM, furred or lyned, butteaux.

TH' apparell for your bodye.

FIRST, 2 armynge doublets.

ITEM, 2 jaketts of leder under your harneys.

ITEM, store of dozen of armynge poyntes fum w<sup>t</sup> gylt naighletts.

ITEM, a jaket of white damask or fattin, cloth of gold, silver, or velvett, with a red crosse.

ITEM, a ryche journett or tweyn. Item, a bend of Saint George over your harneys.

ITEM, long gownes of filke both furred and lyned.

ITEM, demy gownes both of filke and clothe.

ITEM, rydyng gownes of filke, dowbletts, shirtes, hosen, poyntes, ribandes for laces or gurdyls.

BONETS, hatts, bottes, spores, burgegifes, shoes, and such things as shalbe necessary for apparell.

ITEM, a bed w<sup>t</sup> stuff accordinge, a table made light for cariage, flagons, piece, a low salt, table clothes, a basyn to washe in, towells, a piece of kannevas.

ITEM, a caudron or two to fete in mett.

ITEM, a spett, a gredyron, dyshes, a ladyll.

ITEM, a hatchett to make logyngs, and to hew wode to make fire.

ITEM, a short sithe to mow grafs.

ITEM, two or three hokeys to cut corne and fetches.

ITEM, a chappelyn w<sup>t</sup> the oornamentes, that ys to say, vestymentis, mafsbooke, chales, superaltare, a box with store of fyngyng bred, store of wax-candell, byfydes his portens.

AND a cooke w<sup>t</sup> a caudron, a gredyron, a ladill, dishes, a spit, a bage w<sup>t</sup> poudres, salt, a flagon, a bottell wythe vyneger and oyle olyve.

ITEM, store of dyverse spices as almands, &c.

Rembrans of the apparell for the felde belonging to a Knight, or a Esquire, of faire lande wiche hath a retinu.

IN prim. an whyt harneys cōplette, with two hede peces accordinge.

ITEM, 2 good horfes, at the left oon for hymself anod<sup>r</sup> for his page.

ITEM, a large amelyng hors to bere hymselfe armed to spare the courser.

ITEM, good strong sadels of warre w<sup>t</sup> harneys accordyng.

ITEM, harneys for hys amelyng hors.

ITEM, store of gurtheres and fursengles of twyne, of stirroppes and sterrop ledders both for hymselfe and hys page.

HALTERS, horse combes, mane combs, waterynge brydels, horfhoues, canvas for duftyng clothes, halter reynngnes, ledyng reynngnes, kafes of leder for the sadels.

ITEM, 2 pere of armyng spores.

ITEM, and he may have a barde for the courser hyt is commendable.

ITEM, to remember the garnyshe of oone hedpece at the left.

ITEM, store of sure speere hedys; item, an axe or an halbert to walke w<sup>t</sup> in the felde; item, an armyng sword, a dager, and hit were well doon to have a mase at the sadell pomell; item, a sumpter-horse harnysshed and w<sup>t</sup> coffers or gardeinans for his harnoys.

ITEM, a cote of armes for hymselfe.

ITEM a penon of his armes, and a baneret to have a baner of hys armes.

ITEM, a standard of his devyse.

ITEM, oone or 2 getours at the leest.

ITEM, pencells for his speere.

ITEM, cognyfaunces for his carriage.

ITEM, loging scochyngs both on bokeram in oyle and fum in paper, both in colour and metall.

FOR the wache.

A PAYRE of breygandyrons, or a strong doublett of feure, with a hede pece for the fame.



ITEM, a large wachynge gowne forred or lyned yet better lyned.

ITEM, good warme boteaulx or burgegyfes.

THE appareille for his bodye.

FIRST, ij armyng doubeletts.

ITEM, a jakett of leder under his harneis.

ITEM, store of armyng poyntes.

ITEM, a jakett of white damaske or faten with a red croffe.

ITEM, a bend of Seynt George above your harneys.

ITEM, gownnes both lang and demy sū of filke, and sū of clothe bothe furred and lyned.

ITEM, rydyng gownes of filke.

ITEM, doubelettes and fhertes.

ITEM, hofyn and poyntes.

ITEM, store of rybandes for laces and gurdells.

ITEM, store of bonettes, hattes, botes, spores, burgegefes, and shon for hymselfe and hys page.

ITEM, flagons and botayles peces or gobeletts.

ITEM, a good pelow to sleppe on.

FOR his botye felow and hym.

IN pmis, a pavylyon and an hale for their horses and fervantes, and yeff they ij may have a good strong chariatt w<sup>t</sup> stronge draught for ther tent hale and oder rayment and necessaries, hit wer well doon, for a cart is soon over throwyn, and may nott cary oon of your stuff. Item, a low salt.

ITEM, a barber w<sup>t</sup> his basyn, wiche may serve theym bothe w<sup>t</sup> store of towells, I meen to weshe in dayly as well as for shavyng.

ITEM, oon or ij hachettes to hew wod, and to make logynge for the yemen.

ITEM, a short fythe or ij to mow grafs of the medowe for ther horsfemen.

ITEM, iij or iiij hokys to cutt fechefs and corne. Item, and ther carters bey weell chofyn, they may bothe sett your tentes wythe of

oon or ij. of ther foottmen, and wythe ther cart-horfes to feche ther forage, and to make ther logyng.

As for cooke, every man can be cher w<sup>t</sup> help of vitalers, hit wer good to have store of falt, poudre and vynegar, and falet oyle and spyce.

THE statute of the 4<sup>th</sup> and 5<sup>th</sup> of Philip and Mary (repealing all other acts respecting keeping armour and horfes), shews the quantity and kind of armour and weapons that were to be kept at that time by persons of different estates.

ALL temporal persons having estates of a thousand pounds or upwards shall, from the 1<sup>st</sup> of May, 1588, keep six horfes or geldings fit for mounting demi launces, three of them at least to have sufficient harnes, steele saddles, and weapons requisite and appertaining to the said demy launces, horfes, or geldings; and ten light horfes or geldings with the weapons and harnes requisite for light horfemen. Also forty corselets furnished, forty almaine rivetts, or instead of the said forty almaine rivetts, forty coats of plate, corselets or brigandines furnished; forty pikes, thirty long bowes, thirty sheaf of arrowes, thirty steele cappes or sculles, twenty black bills or halberts, twenty haquebuts, and twenty morians or fallets.

TEMPORAL persons having estates to the value of a thousand marks and upwards, and under the clear yearly value of a thousand pounds, to maintain four horfes or geldings for demi launces, whereof two, at the least, to be horfes, with sufficient weapons, saddles, meete, and requisite to the said demi launces; six light horfes with furniture, &c. necessary for the same; thirty corcelets furnished, thirty almaine rivetts, or in lieu thereof, thirty coats of plate, corcelets, or brigandines furnished; thirty pikes, twenty long bows, twenty sheaf of arrowes, twenty steel caps or sculls, ten black bills or halberts, ten haquebuts, and ten morians or fallets.

EVERY temporal person having 400l. per annum, and under the clear yearly value of 1000 marks, to keep two horfes, or one horse and one gelding, for demi launces, furnished as above; four geldings

for light horfes, twenty corcelets furnished, twenty almaine rivetts furnished, or inftead thereof, twenty coats of plate, corcelets, or brigandines furnished; twenty pikes, fifteen long bowes, fifteen fheaves of arrowes, fifteen ftel caps or fculls, fix haquebutts and fix morians or falletts.

TEMPORAL perfons having clear 200l. per annum, and under 400l. per annum, one great horfe or gelding fit for a demi lance, with fufficient furniture and harnets, fteeled faddle, &c. two geldings for light horfe, with harnets and weapons as aforefaid: ten corcelets furnished, ten almaine rivetts, or inftead thereof, ten coats of plate, corcelets, or brigandines furnished, ten pikes, eight long bowes, eight fheafs of arrowes, eight ftel caps or fculls, three haquebutts, and three morians or falletts.

EVERY temporal perfon, &c. having 100l. or under 200l. per annum, two geldings and furniture, &c. for light horfemen, three corcelets furnished, three almaine rivetts, corcelets or brigandines furnished, three long pikes, three bowes, three fheaves of arrowes, three ftel caps or fculls, two haquebutts, and two morians or falletts.

TEMPORAL perfons having 100 marks and under 100l. per annum, one gelding and furniture for a light horfeman, two corcelets furnished, two almaine rivetts, coat of plate or brigandines furnished, two pikes, two long bowes, two fheafs of arrowes, two ftel caps or fculls, one haquebut, one morian or fallett.

TEMPORAL perfons having 40l. or under 100 marks per annum, two corcelets furnished, two almaine rivetts, corcelets or brigandines furnished; two pikes, one long bowe, one fheaf of arrowes, one ftel cap or fcull, two haquebutts, two morians or falletts.

PERSONS having 20l. and under 40l. per annum, one corcelet furnished, one pike, one haquebut, one morian or fallett, one long bowe, one fheaf of arrowes, and one ftel cap or fcull.

TEMPORAL perfons having 10l. and under 20l. per annum, one almaine rivett, a coat of plate or brigandine furnished, one haquebut, one morian or fallett, and one long bowe, one fheaf of arrowes, and one ftel cap or fcull.

TEMPORAL persons having 5*l.* and under 10*l.* per annum, one coat of plate furnished, one black bill or halbert, one long bowe and one sheaf of arrowes, one steel cap or scull.

TEMPORAL persons having goods and chattels to the amount of 1000 marks, one horse or gelding furnished for a demi lance, one gelding furnished for a light horseman, or eighteen corcelets furnished instead of the said horse and gelding, and furniture of the same, at their choice; two corcelets furnished, two almaine rivetts, or instead thereof two corcelets or two brigandines furnished, two pikes, four long bowes, four sheafs of arrowes, four steel caps or sculls, and three haquebuts, with three morians or fallets.

TEMPORAL persons having goods, &c. to the amount of 400*l.* and above, and under 1000 marks, one gelding for a light horseman, properly furnished, or instead thereof nine corcelets furnished at his choice, and one other corcelet furnished; one pike, two almaine rivetts, or plate coates, or brigandines furnished, one haquebut, two long bowes, two sheafs of arrowes, and two steel caps or sculls.

GOODS, &c. to the amount of 200*l.* and upwards, and under 400*l.* one corcelet furnished, one pike, two almaine rivetts, plate coates, or brigandines furnished; one haquebut, one morian or fallet, two long bowes, two sheafs of arrowes, and two sculls or steel caps.

GOODS, &c. to the amount of 100*l.* or above, and under 200*l.* one corcelet furnished, one pike, one pair of almaine rivetts, one plate coat, or pair of brigandines furnished, two long bowes, and two sheafs of arrowes and two sculls.

GOODS, &c. to the amount of 40*l.* and under 100*l.* two pair of almaine rivetts, or two coats of plate or brigandines furnished, one long bowe, one sheaf of arrowes, one steel cap or one scull, and one black bill or halbert.

GOODS, &c. to the amount of 20*l.* and upwards, and under 40*l.* one pair of almaine rivetts, or one coat of plate, or one pair of brigandines, two long bowes, two sheafs of arrowes, two sculls or steel caps, and one black bill or halbert.

GOODS, &c. to the amount of 10*l.* and above, and under 20*l.* one

long bowe, one sheaf of arrowes, with one steel cap or scull, and one black bill or halbert.

TEMPORAL persons not charged by this act, having annuities, copyholds, or estate of inheritance to the clear yearly value of 30l. or upwards, to be chargeable with furniture of war, according to the proportion appointed for goods and chattels.

AND every person who by the act of the 33d of King Henry VIII. cap. 5., was bound by reason, that his wife should wear such kind of apparell, or other thing, as in the same statute is mentioned and declared, to keepe or find one great stoned trotting horse, viz. Every person temporall whose wife (not being divorced nor willingly absenting herself from him) doth weare any gowne of silke, French hood, or bonet of velvet, with any habiliment, past, or edge of golde, pearle, or stone, or any chaine of golde about her necke, or in her partlet, or in any apparell of her body, except the sonnes and heires apparent of dukes, marqueses, earles, viconts, and barons, and others having heriditaments to the yearly value of 600 marks or above, during the life of their fathers; and wardes having heriditaments of the yearly value of 200l., and who are not by this act before charged, to have, maintaine, and keep any horse or gelding; shall from the said 1st of May, have, keep, and maintain, one gelding, able and meete for a light horseman, with sufficient harness and weapon for the same, in such manner and forme, as every person having lordships, houses, lands, &c. to the clear yearly value of 100 marks is appointed to have.

ANY person chargeable by this act, who for three whole months from the 1st of May shall lack or want the horses or armour, with which he is charged, shall forfeit for every horse or gelding, in which he is deficient, ten pounds; for every demi lance and furniture, three pounds; for every corcelet and furniture of the same forty shillings; and for every almaine rivett, coat of plate, or brigandine and furniture of the same, twenty shillings; and for every bow and sheaf of arrows, bill, halbert, hacquebut, steel cap, scull, morian, and fallet, ten shillings; one half of these forfeitures to the king and queen, the other half to the parties suing for the same.

THE inhabitants of all cities, burroughs, towns, parishes, &c. other than such as are specially charged before in this act, shall keep and maintain at their common charges, such harneis and weapons as shall be appointed by the commissioners of the king and queen, to be kept in such places as shall by the said commissioners be appointed.

INDENTURES to be made of the numbers and kinds thereof between two or more of the said commissioners, and twelve, eight, or four, of the principal inhabitants of every such city, borough, &c. &c. one part to remain with the chief officer of the said city, &c. and the other part with the clerk of the peace of the county.

AND if any of the inhabitants shall be deficient for three months in any of the articles directed to be found, they shall forfeit for every article according to the proportion before mentioned, to be applied and levied as there directed.

THE lord chancellor for the time being shall have full power to grant commissions under the great seal of England, to as many justices of every shire, or county, as he shall deem necessary for making this appointment of horses and armour. This act not to invalidate any covenant between a landlord and his tenant for finding of horses, armour, or weapons.

THE justices of every county are hereby authorized to make search and view from time to time of and for the horses, armour, &c. to be kept by persons possessed of 200l. per ann. and not above 400l. per ann., or to be found by persons chargeable on account of their goods, chattels, &c. as aforesaid, and to hear and determine at their quarter sessions every default committed or done, contrary to this act, within the county, and to level the penalties.

ANY foldier making sale of his horse, harneis, or weapon, or any of them, contrary to the form of the statute made in the said 2d and 3d year of the late king, i. e. the 2d and 3d of King Edward VI. (which see in Captains), shall incur the penalty of the said statute, and the sale shall be void, the purchaser knowing him to be a foldier.

ALL presentments and prosecutions to be within one year after the commission of the offence.

PERSONS prosecuted for deficiencies of armour may plead their in-

ability to procure it, on account of the want of it within the realm, which plea, if true, shall be a sufficient justification; if denied, issue to be joined, and the trial of such issue, only had by the certificate of the lord chancellor, lord treasurer, the lord president of the council, the lord steward of the king's and queen's most honourable household, the lord privie seal, the lord admiral, and the lord chamberlain of the said household, or by three of them, under their hands and seals, &c. &c. this act or any usage to the contrary notwithstanding. No persons to be charged both for lands and goods. This act not to repeal the act of the 33d Henry VIII. for having long bowes, and exercising archery.

PROVIDED any horses shall die, or be killed, or armour be lost or expended in the defence of the realm, the owner shall not be prosecuted for the deficiency within one year after such loss.

THE want of a gantlet or gantlets shall not be reckoned a deficiency for a corcelet.

THE servants of such persons as are bound to find a haquebut, may exercise themselves in shooting at such marks as are limited and appointed by the 33d of Henry VIII. (which see in cross-bows), so that they do not use such haquebut in any highway. This act not to extend to Wales, Lancaster, or Chester, nor to oblige any one to have or to find a haquebut, but that they may, at their will and pleasure, have and keep, instead of every haquebut charged in this act, one long bowe, and one sheaf of arrowes, over and above such other armour and munition, as is by the laws of the realm appointed (m).

THE lord chancellor or lord keeper of the great seal may from

(m) THIS clause plainly shews that the rulers of those times were not very solicitous to introduce the use of fire-arms into the nation, but considered a long bow, as equal to a haquebut.

IN a set of instructions for executing the commission for mustering and training all manner of persons, 15 Elizabeth, 1572, subscribed by the privy council. No. 6844, Harleian MS. In every hundred footmen, forty are directed to be harquebusiers, twenty archers, if so many can be procured, the remainder to be bill-men, halberdiers, or morris-pykes.

time to time, by virtue of the king's commission, appoint commissioners in every city, borough, &c. &c. as well in England as Wales, consisting of justices, with other persons joined with them, as he shall think meet, to take a view of armour, and to assign what harness, &c. they shall be bound to provide and keep.

BARDED horses continued to be used in our armies at least to the time of Queen Elizabeth; several contemporary writers mentioned them in the reigns of King Henry VIII. and Edward VI. Among them is Patin, who, in his description of the battle of Muffelborough, says, "because the Scottish mens pykes were as long or longer than their (i. e. the English horsemens') staves, as also that their horses wear all naked without BARBES, whereof though there were right many among us, yet not one put on, forasmuch as at our cumming forth in the morning we looked for nothing less than for battail that day."

IN the reign of Queen Elizabeth the antient armour seems to have fallen into disrepute, as in the fifteenth year of that queen, anno 1597, a motion was made in the house of commons by Mr. George Moor, complaining, that the subjects of this realm were compelled under great penalties, to have and keep fundry sorts of armour and weapons, at present altogether unnecessary and useless, besides being charged with the finding and providing of other such weapons and armour from time to time, as the captains who are appointed to this charge, upon any occasion of service will call for, and appoint at their own pleasure; wherefore he moved for a law to establish something certain on this head, on which a committee was appointed; what was their determination does not appear, it is however certain that defensive armour began to be laid aside about this time, of which Sir John Smith complains in the manuscript before quoted (n), saying, that captains embarking men for foreign service, ordered them to throw away their

---

(n) No. 4685, Harl.



poldrons, vambraces, and tasses, as being incumbrances without use (o).

IN the reign of King James I. no great alterations were made in the article of defensive armour, except that the buff coat or jerkin, which was originally worn under the cuirafs, now became frequently a substitute for it; it having been found, that a good buff leather would, of itself, resist the stroke of a sword; this, however, only occasionally took place among the light armed cavalry and infantry, compleat suits of armour being still worn by the heavy horse. Buff coats continued to be worn by the city trained bands, till within the memory of persons now living, so that defensive armour may in some measure be said to have terminated in the same materials with which it began, that is the skins of animals, or leather.

RESPECTING offensive arms, the chief difference of this period, was a gradual disuse of halberts, bills, morris pikes, and all the other weapons termed staves, except the common pike, together with a more general reception of fire arms, so that muskets, calivers, pikes, and swords, became the chief and almost the only weapons carried by the infantry; swords, carabines, and pistols, by the cavalry.

KING CHARLES I., soon after his accession to the crown, caused a survey to be made of all the armour, arms, and ammunition in the Tower of London, the several forts and castles throughout the kingdom, and also on board the different ships of war (p); and in the seventh year of his reign, appointed commissioners, consisting of a number of experienced armourers, gun, pike, and bandalier makers,

(o) THIS seems to shew that nothing like any uniform pattern of defensive armour was then adopted, but every soldier was permitted to wear and use such armour and weapons as they themselves could provide, for which in antient times they had an allowance made them in their pay. It is clearly pointed out by many articles in the code of military laws, enacted by Henry V. and others, that the horses, armour, and weapons of the private men, were their property, as divers offences were therein punished with forfeiture of horses, armour, and weapons.

(p) A. D. 1629, 5 Charles I. See Rymer in anno.

to travel throughout England and Wales, to survey, prove, repair, and put the armour and weapons of the militia into a state fit for service. He also took measures for bringing about an uniformity in the fashion of their armour and arms, a circumstance never before attended to; the want of which must have been productive of many inconveniencies.

He at the same time settled the prices for making and repairing the different pieces of a suit of armour, for both horse and foot; the rates to be charged for the several parts of a musket, pistol, or carbine, with those for a pike and bandaliers.

As this commission and schedule of the prices established contain many curious particulars respecting the arms and armour of those times, they are here given at length (q).

A SPECIAL commission for the surveying of the armours, arms, &c. of the trained bands, and for settling the rates and prices of the same.

CHARLES, by the Grace of God, &c. To our trusty and wel-beloved John Franklin, William Crouch, John Ashton, Thomas Stephens, Rowland Foster, Nicholas Marshall, William Coxe, and Edward Aynesley, workemen, armourers, and freemen of the company of armourers of our cittie of London; and Henry Rowland, Richard Burrowe, Thomas Addis, John Norcott, William Dawstin, John Watson, and William Graves, of our said cittie of London, gun makers; and John Edwards, Robert Tucker, and Bartholomew Ray, pike-makers of our cittie of London, and John Gate and William Beauchamp, bandalier makers of our cittie of London aforesaid; and to every of them, greeting.

WEE foreseeinge in our princely judgment, how necessary it is for the preservation of our selfe, and the subjects of our kingdome in generall, that the armours, gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers thereof, be from tyme to tyme repaired, amended, dressed, and stamped; and that they according to the just and full number charged by the muster

rolls in every severall county, be fully furnished and compleatly mayntayned, which now as we are credibly informed, are in many parts of this kingdom much decayed and neglected; and that expert and skilfull workmen may be trayned up, imployed, and maintayned, as well in tyme of peace as of warre, to the end wee may not be enforced in tyme of warre to seeke for armes, armours, gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers, in forraigne parts, as it hath been heretofore accustomed, and foe be eyther unprovided of them, or supplied at deare and uncertaine rates, at the pleasure of forraigne princes and states, when any unexpected occasion of imployment, or sudder service, for the safety and honour of our person and state shall require; and wee well weighing in our princely consideration, the dangerous consequence thereof, did, for our better information, refer the further consideration thereof to our counsell of warre, and other speciall committees; who upon mature deliberation have certified us, that the company of workmen, armourers, gun makers, pike makers, and bandalier makers of our cittie of London (being the skilfullest and prime workmen of this land), are most fit to be employed and encouraged in this service, that foe they having convenient employment in tyme of peace, wee may be assured of their true and effectuall service in the tymes of warre, and yett they to performe the said service at such rates and prices as shall not be left at their owne discretion, but shall be particularly agreed upon, and ordered herein; and they have also certified unto us, that they find it very behoofefull for our service, and for the strength and safety of this kingdom, and for the increasing of the number of skilfull and expert workemen of the severall trades and professions of armourers, gun makers, pike makers, and bandalier makers; that a commission should be awarded to the tenor and effect of these presents, and a proclamation thereupon made and published, to signifie what wee herein command or forbid, for the general good of this kingdome: and whereas the said armourers, gun makers, pike makers, and bandalier makers, are accordingly willing to accept of and undertake this service, and according to the said certificate, have given caution in our office of ordinance to be ready, when we shall

have occasion to sett them on worke, at seven dayes warning, and that the said armourers will deliver into our stores, for ready money, fifteen hundred armours every month, and the gun makers as many muskets and bastard muskets, (r), and small shot, upon the same warning; as also the pike makers, and bandalier makers, a proportionable number upon the like warning, for our service; and that the said armourers, gun makers, pike makers, and bandalier makers, will bring up apprentices from tyme to tyme, to be expert and skilfull in these severall occupations, which are soe necessary for the defence of this kingdome, soe as they may be employed in making, mending, dressing, stamping, and repaying of armours, guns, pikes, and bandaliers in the cittie and country, and have agreed and entred into bond as aforesaid, that they will not exceed the rates and prices in a schedule hereunto annexed, expressing the severall rates and prices which shall be allowed them respectively for the said worke, which are very reasonable, and not only without grievance, but very much for the ease and benefit of our subjects, who are or shall be thereby concerned in respect of their former trouble and charges in that kynde; and likewise will perform such other directions as wee shall from tyme to tyme prescribe unto them, for the better advancing of so necessary and publique a service as need shall require.

Know yee therefore that wee, by and with the advice of the lords and others our counsell of warre, and other committees to whom wee referred the considerations of this good worke for the better effectinge and advancing of the same: and reposing assured trust and confidence in the fidelity, experience, and diligence of you the said John Franklyn, William Crouch, John Ashton, Thomas Steevens, Rowland Foster, Nicholas Marshall, William Coxe, Edward Anesley, Henry Rowland, Richard Berrowe, Thomas Addis, John Norcott, William Dawstin, William Watfson, John Watfson, and William Graves, armourers and gun makers; and John Edwards, Robert Thacker, and Bartholomew

---

(r) PROBABLY calivers.

Raye, pike makers ; and John Gate and William Beachamp, bandalier makers of our citty of London, have authorifed, affigned, and appointed you to be our commiffioners, armourers, gun makers, pike makers, and bandalier makers : And we doe by thefe presents give unto you, or any one, two, three, or more of you, and to your deputies, affiftants, and affignees, and every of them, by you, or the greater part of you, lawfully authorifed, free libertie, licence, power, and authority, to travell or goe into any county, place, or places, within this our realme of England, and the dominion of Wales, as well within liberties as without ; and there with the approbation and affiftance of the lord lieutenant and deputy lieutenants where you fhall happen to come, or of any other to be by them deputed and appointed, to make diligent furvey of all armes, armours, gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers whatfoever, appoynted to be found and maynteyned at the common charge of every cittie, towne, or village, and of the trayned bands in every county, as well horfe as foot, throughout our faid realme of Englande and dominion of Wales ; and upon and after the faid furvey, to new make, alter, amend, drefs, repayre, prove, and ftampe (as need fhall require), all or any of the faid armour, gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers, and make them compleate and fit for fervice, as by the faid lord lieutenant and deputy lieutenants, or any other by them deputed and appoynted as aforefaid, fhall be appoynted and directed ; and that by the direction of the faid lord lieutenants, or the deputy lieutenants of the feverall countyes and divifions refpectively, the faid armour, gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers, once or twice every yeare or oftner (if need fhall be), be brought to fuch convenient place or places, upon the muffer days, or at fuch other convenient tyme or tymes as they fhall think fit, to the end that the fame may be then and there viewed and furveyed, and as occafion fhall require, be altered, amended, or renewed as aforefaid.

AND that you may the better performe this fervice, and informe us by the lords lieutenants and deputy lieutenants as aforefaid, as occafion fhall require, of all fuch defects and negligences as may happen from tyme to tyme, wee doe hereby give full power and au-

thority unto you, or any one, two, three, or more of you, your deputies, and assigns, by the direction of the lords lieutenants or deputy lieutenants as aforesaid (if they shall see think it fitt and behoofefull for our service), to require all ministers of musters, who have the records or keeping of the muster rolls of the said armours, forthwith to deliver unto you true copies of the said muster rolls, to the end that you may be truly informed who ought to be charged with the said armour, gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers, according to the just numbers and natures of them.

AND further our will and command is, that you our said commissioners, armourers, gun makers, pike makers, and bandalier makers, your deputies or assigns (upon your said survey), do observe what numbers of armes, armourers, gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers are wholly wanting as aforesaid, that are appointed and ought to be charged upon any person or persons in any place, and that you distinguish the utterly unserviceable, from such as by mending and repairing may be made serviceable; and that you set downe the numbers and natures of their defects, and that you may make up the survey in a booke to be certified under the hands of you our said commissioners, armourers, gun makers, pike makers, and bandalier makers, or any two, three, or more of you, to be signed and approved of by the lord lieutenant, or deputy lieutenants, or such as they in every place shall depute for that purpose to assist in the said survey; and likewise that, upon such your survey, you approve of all such armours of the said common armes and trayned band, as shall be found fit for service, and to prove and trye all sorts of gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers of the said common armes and trayned band, before they be used or exercised, and to approve of such as are serviceable for warres at the owners charge, and being proved, shall allow as fit for service; and allowing shall stamp the same with the "A and Crown," being the hall mark for the company of workmen armourers of London, which marke or stamp, our pleasure is, shall, with the consent of the lord lieutenant, or his deputy lieutenants, remaine in their custodye, who shall have the charge to be intrusted

with the execution of this service, wherein, and in this whole commission, they are further to follow such instructions as are and shall from tyme to tyme be given forth from us, or the lords of our privy councell, or councell of warre, in that behalf.

AND to the end noe abuse or deceit may be in the number of armes, armours, gunnes, pikes, or bandaliers borrowed one of another, wee doe hereby give power and authority to you, or the major part of you, to cause to be framed and made, and to you, or to any one, two, three, or more of you, your deputies or assignes, to use two other markes or stamps, to be first allowed by the lords lieutenants, or deputy lieutenants, or such as they shall depute for that purpose, the one to distinguish the county, the other the place or division where the said armes, armours, gunnes, pikes, or bandaliers are charged and be, which markes and stamps, our will and pleasure is, shall remayne in the custodie of you, our said commissioners, armourers, gun makers, pike makers, and bandalier makers, or some of you, your deputies or assignes, and shall be entred in the said booke of survey, to be signed as abovesaid; for the using and putting to, of which markes and stamps of the place or division aforesaid, wee hold it very fitting, that our lord lieutenants, or their deputy lieutenants, in every place and division, do appoint and set downe some competent allowance unto you the commissioners, armourers, gun makers, pike makers, bandalier makers, your deputies or assignes, for your labour and attendance upon our service herein.

AND further our will and pleasure is, that upon the intreaty, of you our said commissioners, or any one, two, three, or more of you, your deputies and assignes, according as the wants and defects of the said armour, gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers, shall appear upon the said booke of survey, signed as aforesaid, our said lords lieutenants, and their deputy lieutenants of the severall counties respectively in our name, doe commaund, and give order to the severall places and persons chargeable therewith, within a reasonable tyme, and at some convenient place to be prescribed, to supply such defects, either by

providing new armours, gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers, or by mending and repaying the old, as there shall be cause.

AND because divers cutlers, smyths, tynkers, and other botchers of armes, by their unskilfulness have utterly spoiled many armes, armours, gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers, which by a skilful workman might have been altered, dressed, amended, and made serviceable, and yet have required great rates of the country for the doing thereof; and diverse tradesmen of other trades and mysteries, do buy, barter, and sell armes, armours, gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers; which are badd and insufficient, to the great prejudice of our loving subjects: To the end these abuses and disorders may be from henceforth refrayned and wholly prevented, we doe hereby prohibit and absolutely forbid, that noe person or persons whatsoever, not having served seven years, or been brought up as an apprentice or apprentices in the trade and myserie of an armourer, gun maker, pike maker, and bandalier maker, and thereat served their full tyme of seven years as aforesaid, and be bound to do us service as aforesaid, when they shall be thereunto required, and have their name and dwelling thereunto entred by you or some of you, by your recommendation in our office of the ordinance as aforesaid, do make, mend, alter, change, dress, or repayr, prove, or stampe, any armes, armours, gunnes, pikes, or bandaliers of the common armes of trayned band whatsoever, or any others, or any of them, or any part of them, or intermeddle therein: Nevertheless, it is our pleasure and strict commaund, that you give encouragement and respect to all such skilfull and well-deserving workmen of all sortes of armes, as you shall find in every place within our kingdome and domynion aforesaid, to have them employed and set on worke; and it is our further will and pleasure, that if you or our said commissioners, armourers, gun makers, pike makers, and bandalier makers, shall not be present, either by yourselves, your servants, deputies, or assignes, in every county and place, when and where any defects in arms, gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers, at musters or any other such publique meetings, in each countye, shall be found; or if you, or any for or under you, being so present in each countye



and place, shall be unwilling and negligent to make, amend, dress, repayre, and stamp the said armes, armours, gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers, according to the intent of this our commission, then it shall be lawful in any such your negligence or default, at such tyme or tymes, and in such cases only, for the owners of armes to carry their armours, gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers unto such countrye workmen as heretofore have made or mended any of them, to make, amend, alter, and repayre them as heretofore they have done, without any trouble or interruption by you, or any for or under you, any thing in this our commission to the contrary notwithstanding: And we do absolutely forbid, that no ironmonger, cutler, chandler, or other person whatsoever, doe vent or sell any armours, gunnes, pikes, or bandaliers, or any part of them, except such as shall be proved and stamped with the said hall marke of the company of workemen, armourers aforesaid, being the prooffe marke; and also warranted by our said commissioners, armourers, gun makers, pike makers, and bandalier makers, or some of them, or such as they shall appoint thereunto, and be allowed by them to be sufficient, upon payne and penaltie of our high indignation and displeasure, and such other penalties and imprisonments as by the lawes of this realme, or by our prerogative royall, may be inflicted upon them.

AND to the end that by occasion of this restraynt, no excess of prices may either through necessity or ignorance be put upon the country for new armours, gunnes, pikes, or bandaliers, or for the dressing, repairing, proving, and stamping the old and serviceable, we doe hereby require and commaund, that no armourer, gun maker, pike maker, or bandalier maker, who shall be employed in this service doe demand, take, or receive for any new armours, gunnes, pikes, or bandaliers, or for dressinge, repayring, proveinge, or stamping the old or any part of them, above the rates and prices in the schedule hereunto annexed and expressed (which wee hold very much for the ease and benefit of our loving subjects, which now are or hereafter shall be charged with armes;) willing alsoe, requiring and commaunding all persons charged with armes, armours, gunnes, pikes, or bandaliers of the common armes, or the trained bands

as aforefaid, that fhall hereafter have of our faid commiffioners, armourers, gun makers, pike makers, or bandalier makers, their deputies or affignes, anie new armours, gunnes, pikes, or bandaliers, or upon their haveing of their armours, gunnes, pikes, or bandaliers, or any of them drefled, amended, altered, repayred, proved, or ftamped as aforefaid, fhall and will fatisfie, content, and pay our faid commiffioners, armourers, gun makers, pike makers, and bandalier makers, their deputies or affignes, or any of them for the fame, according to the rates and prices in the aforefaid fchedule annexed, expreffed, and fet down; and if any difference at any tyme hereafter fhall arife touching the natures or numbers of defects, between the armourers, gun makers, pike makers and bandalier makers, imployed for the faid new making, amending, drefling, repaying, and ftamping of any of the armours, gunnes, pikes, or bandaliers of the common armes or trayned bands aforefaid, and thofe in whofe cuftody the faid armours, gunnes, pikes and bandaliers, fhall be or remaine; then our pleafure is, that the fame fhall be ordered by the lords lieutenants, or deputy lieutenants, or any of them, or fuch as fhall be by them, or any one of them deputed, for the tyme being, who fhall make the furvey above mentioned.

AND becaufe we are credibly given to underftand that the often and continuall altering and changing of the fafhion of armes and armours, fome countrys and parts of this kingdome, haveing armours of one fafhion, and fome of another, do put many of our fubjects to a great and unneceffary charge, and more than need requireth: for the avoiding whereof, our will and pleafure is, and wee doe hereby appoint and command, that hereafter there fhall be but one uniform fafhion of armours, of the faid common and trayned bands, throughout our faid kingdome of ENGLAND, and domynion of WALES, when as any of the faid armours fhall be fupplied and new made, and that that form and fafhion of armour fhall be agreeable to the laft and modern fafhion lately fet downe and appoynted to be ufed, by the lords and others of our counsell of warre, (the patterns whereof are now and fhall remayn in the office of our ordinance from tyme to tyme, which is our pleafure likewife concerning gunnes, pikes and bandaliers, where-

of patterns are, and shall remayne from tyme to tyme in our said office) and our will and pleasure is, that for the better compleating of every of the muskettiers of our said trayned bands, and that they may be better fitted and appoynted for service, (if need requires) every muskettier of the sayd common and trayned bands, shall have and be from tyme to tyme furnished and provided of a headpeece agreeable to the modern fashion of the headpeeses of the footemans armour, whereof the pattern remayneth also in our aforesaid office of ordnance.

WILLING alsoe, requiring and commaunding all and singular our lieutenants, their deputye lieutenants, justices of the peace, majors, sberiffs, muster masters, captaines of bands, and their lieutenants, his constables, constables, headboroughs, and all other our officers, ministers, and loving subjects whomsoever, that they and every of them, be from tyme to tyme aydeing, helping and assisting unto you our commiffioners, armourers, gun-makers, pike-makers, and bandalier-makers, and every or any of you, your deputies, assistants, servants and assignes, and to all such others as shall be employed in the execution of this our commiffion, or the service thereby required and intended, in all things as shall be most meet, and to perform what to them or any of them shall respectively appertayne, according to our pleasure herein and hereby signified and declared.

AND our farther will and pleasure is, that if you our said commiffioners, or any of you, your deputyes, assistants or assignes or any of them, shall find that this our commiffion in any part be not executed with effect, according to the tenor and intent thereof, by reason of the opposition, contradiction, remisness or negligence of any person or persons whatsoever, that then you or some of you doe certifye the cause, with the names of the persons offending, unto the lords lieutenants and deputy lieutenants of each county, and in cases so requiring, to the lords of our privy councell, or councell of warre, by whom wee may be informed thereof, to the end the offenders may be punished according to their demerits.

AND wee doe likewise hereby command and require our saide lords lieutenants and their deputy lieutenants, within their countyes and

divisions, respectively from tyme to tyme to punish any of you, our said commissioners, armourers, gun-makers, pike-makers and bandalier-makers, their deputies, servants and assignes according to the quality of their faults, when they shall neglect the trust and duty committed unto them by this our commission.

AND lastly, our will and pleasure is, that this our commission shall stand in force, and that you our commissioners, armourers, gun-makers, pike-makers, and bandalier-makers, and every of you, your deputies, assistants and assignes, and every of them may proceed in the execution thereof, although the same be not from tyme to tyme continued by adjournment.

In witness, &c.

Witness our selfe at Westminster, Vicesimo nono die Junii,

Per Breve de Privato Sigillo.

Rymer, tom. xix. p. 314.

An. 7, C. 1.

A SCHEDULE containing the new Rates and Prices of the several Parts and whole Armes, both for Horfe and Foot, throughout the Kingdom of England and Dominion of Wales, set downe and established by the Right Honourable the Lords Committees of the Counsell of Warre, as every of the said Armes may be afforded at London, by the Armourers, Gun-makers, Pike-makers, and Bandler-makers, according to the intent of the Commiffion, herunto annexed, viz.

*The Prices of the several Parts and whole Armour of a Cuirassier ruffeted, viz.*

	£.	s.	d.
A breast of pistol prooffe	o	xi	o
A backe - - - -	o	vii	o
A close caske lyned -	o	xvii	o
A payre of pouldrons -	o	xii	o
A payre of vambraces	o	xii	o
A payre of guiffets -	o	xvii	o
A cullet or guarderine	o	vii	o
A gorget lyned - -	o	iii	vi
A gauntlett gloved -	o	iii	vi
Soe the price of the whole cuirassiers armour amounteth unto	iiii	x	o

*The Prices of the Parts and of the whole Corset or Footman's Armour ruffeted, viz.*

	£.	s.	d.
The breast - - - -	o	v	vi
The backe - - - -	o	iiii	vi
The taffets - - - -	o	v	o
The comb'd headpeece lyned - - - -	o	iiii	vi
The gorgett lyned - -	o	ii	vi
The totall of the footman's armour	i	ii	o

If the breast, back, and taffets, be lyned with red leather, the price will be } £. s. d.  
i iiiii o

*The Prices of the Parts and of the whole Armour for a Harquebuzier, on Horseback ruffeted, viz.*

	£.	s.	d.
A breast of pistoll prooffe	o	ix	o
A backe - - - - -	o	vii	o
A gorgett - - - - -	o	iiii	o
A headpeece with great cheeks, and a barr before the face - -	o	xi	o
The totall of the whole, and all the parts of a harquebuzier, or light horfeman's armour is			

£. s. d.

A comb'd headpeece for a muskettier ruffeted and lyned - - - } o v o

*Price of the Pike.*

	£.	s.	d.
The staffe - - - - -	o	ii	vi
The head - - - - -	o	i	viii
Socket and colouring -	o	o	iiii
Summe - - - - -	o	iiii	vi

*The Rates for repaying and dressing of a Horsemens Armour and Footmans Armour.*

	£.	s.	d.
For unstriking, new fyling, ruffetting, new nayling, leathering and lynyng of a cuirassiers armour - - -	i	iii	o
For yearly dressing and keeping clean a cuirassiers armour that needs not new ruffetting or setting - - -	o	iiii	o
For new ruffetting and lyneing the head peece, and setting a harquebuziers armour - - - - -	o	vi	viii
For yearly dressing and keeping clean a harquebuziers armour, that needs not new ruffetting or setting - -	o	ii	vi
For cutting and new fashioning a long bellied breast -	o	ii	vi
For new ruffetting of an ordinary corslet of the modern fashion - - - - -	o	iiii	o
For a furniture of joynts, viz. two shoulder joynts, and fower tasset joints, with hooke and pinnes, being all new sett - - - - -	o	ii	viii
For yearly dressing and keeping clean every ordinary corslet and pike that needs not new ruffetting - -	o	i	viii
For stamping every horsemens armour fit to be allowed - - - - -	o	o	o
For stamping every harquebuziers armour fit to be allowed - - - - -	o	o	o

THE GUN MAKERS RATES.

For a new musket with mould, worm and scowrer -	o	xv	vi
For new wolnut-tree stock for a musket plated at the butt end with iron - - - - -	o	ii	vi
For a musket stock of beech plated at the butt end with iron - - - - -	o	i	viii
For a match tricker-lock compleat - - - - -	o	i	o
For a whole worke consisting of the pan, the cover of the pan, the scutchion and the screw pyim - - -	o	i	o
For a stick, worm, sockett, scowrer and bone - - -	o	i	o

	ℓ.	s.	d.
For a handle or guard of a tricker - - - - -	o	o	vi
For a new cock fitted - - - - -	o	o	viii
For a new breech - - - - -	o	i	o
For furnishing and setting of a tricker lock in place of a feare lock, with a handle, tricker, and tricker pynnes	o	ii	vi
For a new touch-hole scrowed - - - - -	o	o	x
For a new barrell of a muskett, only forged and bored fower foote in length, the bore according to the bullet of ten in the pound standing, and twelve rowleing -	o	viii	o
For making clean and new ruffetting of a muskett - -	o	o	iiii
For a muskett rest - - - - -	o	o	x
For making clean a square fyled muskett white - -	o	i	viii
For the yearly dressing and keepeing clean a muskett that needs not new ruffetting, with the furniture and rest - - - - -	o	o	x
For powder and shot for proving every muskett - -	o	o	o
For stamping every muskett proved and allowed - -	o	o	o
For a new bandalier with twelve charges, a prymer, a pryming wyre, a bullet bag, and a strap or belt of two inches in breadth - - - - -	o	ii	vi
For a pair of firelock pistols, furnished with a key, mould, scowrer, worm, flask, and cafes of leather, of length and boar according to the allowance of the counfel of war - - - - -	iii	o	o
For a pair of horsemans pistols furnished with snap- hances, mouldes, worms, scowrer, flask, a charger and cafes - - - - -	ii	o	o
For a harque-buze with a firelock and belte, fwivell, flask, key, moulde, worme, and scowrer - - - -	i	xvi	o
For a carabine with a snaphance, belt, fwivell and flask, &c. as aforefaid - - - - -	i	o	o

THE armour and weapons directed to be worn by the militia after

the reftoration, are thus defcribed in the ftatute of the 13th and 14th of King Charles II.

“ THE arms offensive and defenfive, with the furniture for horfe, are to be as followeth: the defenfive arms, a back, breaft and pot, and the breaft and pot to be piftol proof; the offensive arms, a fword and a cafe of piftols, the barrells whereof are not to be under fourteen inches in length: the furniture for the horfe to be a great faddle or padd, with burrs and ftraps to affix the holfters unto, a bit and bridle with a pectoral and crupper. For the foot, a mufqueteer is to have a mufquet, (s) the barril whereof is not to be under three foot in length, and the gauge of the bore to be for twelve bullets to the pound, a collar of bandeleers with a fword. Provided that all mufter mafters fhall for the prefent admit and allow of any mufquets already made,

(s) As the mufquet reft is not here mentioned, it is probable refts were then laid afide; the price of a mufquet reft is given in the fchedule of rates for armour and weapons, fettled the 7th of Charles I. The ufe of the reft is alfo taught in a treatife published in the year 1634, called the Soldier's Practice, written by Thomas Fisher, an officer who had ferved twenty-fix years in the Low Countries, and was afterwards employed by Philip earl of Pembroke Lord Lieutenant of the county of Kent, to difcipline the militia of that county. We may, therefore, with great probability, date the difufe of the reft fome time about the commencement of the civil war under Charles I. when the weight and incumbrance of the mufquet and its apparatus might be found too great for the active fervice, infeparable from war carried on in fmall detachments. Mufquet refts were not only ufed by the infantry, but were alfo borne by the cavalry. Sir John Smith in the MS. before quoted, mentions a very particular kind of them: “ I myfelf (fays he) have feen mofquetteers on horfeback in two divers armies, and that in this forte, I have feen fquadrons of lances have in one only wing ten or twelve mufquetiers in one ranke, and fometimes in two winges, upon cold and quiet horfes, onely to carry them a marche, or a trot with the fquadron of launces, and the mofquetiers were armed with half breafths or cuyrats with long reafths of fteele ftrong and firmly fet in them, to put backward over their fhoulders, and when they lift to pull them forwardes, for the mofquetiers to lay their mofquets upon when they woulde difcharge them. Even fuch Sir William Pelham did caufe to be made at the Mynories, by one Henricke a Dutchman, before his laft going over into the Lowe Countries, which invention came not from his own devyce, but from that he had feene the like ufed by certen mufquetiers on horfeback in the warres of the Emperor Charles V.”



which will bear a bullet of fourteen to the pound, but no muskets which henceforth shall be made are to be allowed of, but such as are of the gauge of twelve bullets to the pound. A pikeman is to be armed with a pike made of ash, not under sixteen feet in length, the head and foot included, with a back, breast, headpiece and sword: provided that all muster masters shall for the present admit and allow of any pikes already made, that are not under fifteen foot in length, but no pikes which shall be hereafter made are to be allowed of, that are under sixteen feet in length.

IN the short reign of James II. the first step was taken towards the abolition of the use of pikes in England, by the introduction of the practice of sticking the dagger into the muzzle of the musquet, in order to protect the musquetteers from being charged by the horse immediately after they had fired. This practice, which was borrowed from the French, and confined to the grenadiers only, was the origin of the bayonet.

THE regular introduction of bayonets took place in France about the year 1671; the first corps armed with them was the regiment of fusileers raised that year, and since called the royal regiment of artillery (t); but although the adoption of the bayonet is so recent, the idea of it had long occurred to different officers, some of whom had occasionally put it in practice; among them was Monsieur de Puifegur in the district in Flanders where he commanded: "For my part," says he, in his Memoirs, "when I commanded in Bergue, in Ypres, Dixmude and Quenoque, all the parties I sent out passed the canals in this fort; it is true that the soldiers had no swords, but they had bayonets with handles of a foot long, the blades of the bayonets were as long as the handles, the ends of which were fitted for being put into the barrels of the fusils, to defend themselves if attacked after they had fired (u).

---

(t) P. DANIEL.

(u) MR. WILLIAM BARRIFFE, in his Treatise of Military Discipline, entitled the Young Artillery Man, the second edition of which was printed in 1639, describes and considers several

THE first time this contrivance occurs in any English military writer, at least that I have seen, is in a treatise published in the year 1686, where it is mentioned under the denomination of the dagger (x), but is confined to the grenadiers only, and in their

several contrivances invented in England, to protect the musketeer against Cavalry, after he had parted with his fire, and before he had reloaded. "Having often (says he) considered the *danger of the muskettier*, and how unable he is to resist the horse, after he hath *poured forth his shotte*, without he be *sheltered*, either by some *naturall or artificial defence*; and withall having knowledge that in severall parts of *Christendome*, divers *Captaines and Souldiers* have oft beene trying conclusions, to make the musketeer as well *defensive as offensive*. Some by *unscrewing the heads of their rests*, and then *screwing the staffe of their rests into the muzzle of the musket*, with the *arming of a pike at the lower end*, by which means they would use the musket and rest together, in the nature of a *whole pike*: but this proved so tedious and troublesome, that it fell without profit. Another sort had made *rests* with the one end of the *forke* (or head) being like a *spike*, about eighteen inches in length; this also proved extreme troublesome to themselves, *dangerous* to their *followers*, and of no *validity* against the enemy. A third sorte had *half-pikes* of about seven or eight foot in length, using it after the manner of a *rest*: but all the while the *muskettier was charging* (his musket) one of them was *enough* to trouble a *whole file*, besides the danger in the *recovery*. A fourth sorte there was (yet better than the former) that with a *hooke was fastened to the girdle*, while the *muskettier was making ready*: but this had its defects also, as being both *tedious and troublesome*. Many other wayes and conclusions have also been tried, with success like the former; which I forbear to demonstrate, for as their conceits proved uselesse, so the discourse would prove as fruitlesse. Lastly, *myselfe*, with another gentleman of our ground, (Master *John Davies* of *Blackefriers*) both well effecting the use of the musket, found out a *way* to use the *half pike and musket*, with so much *facilitie and ease*, that is *farre lesse troublesome than the rest*, and yet of greater length than any of the former *rests* or *halfe pikes*, as being compleat ten foot in length, with the *arming*.

ALL the former *devices*, if they could have beene brought to any maturitie, yet would have falne farre short of this, for the *triple use thereof*, as being a *rest*, if there be no farther occasion; as being a *pallisado* (if there be occasion) to defend the muskettier from the horse; as being a *halfe pike* to use in trenches; as also when our *shotte* have *poured out* a great volly or showre of lead on the *adverse* muskettiers, they may then *nimbly* with their *halfe pikes*, fall in amongst them. And lastly for the *pursuite* of an *enemy*, it being of all others the best weapon. A serviceable halfe-pike may be had for two shillings and six-pence, which exceeds not much the price of a *rest*.

(x) THE dagger was fixed by the following words of command, to which were added the annexed directions: the grenadiers having fired and recovered their arms, the word of  
command

hands it continued anno 1690; where in a treatise of military discipline, published by authority, it is called a bayonet (y). It is not however mentioned in some instructions for the manual exercise published two years after, for the use of the militia, but from divers other military books written about the same time, it appears that the dragoons as well as grenadiers, both horse and foot, had daggers or bayonets, and fixed them in the muzzles of their pieces; neither Father Daniel nor Monsieur St. Remy give the particular date, when the present mode of fixing bayonets took place, nor by whom it was invented; the improvement is said to have originated in France, which seems to be corroborated by the following anecdote communicated to me by Lieut. Col. Christopher Maxwell of the 30th regiment of foot, who had it from his grandfather, formerly Lieutenant Colonel of the 25th regiment of foot. In one of the campaigns of King William III. in Flanders, in an engagement, the name of which my informant has forgot, there were three French regiments, whose bayonets were made to fix after the present fashion, a contrivance then unknown in the British army; one of them advanced against the 25th regiment with fixed bayonets; Lieutenant Colonel Maxwell who commanded it, ordered his men to screw their bayonets into their muzzles to receive them; but to his great surprize, when they came within a proper distance, the French threw in a heavy fire, which for a moment staggered his people, who by no means expected such a greeting, not conceiving how it was possible to fire with fixed bayonets; they nevertheless recovered themselves, charged and drove the enemy out of the line.

At what time the mode of fixing the bayonet, so as not to prevent

command was, *cast over to the left*, on which, they were to lay their right hands on their daggers, *draw your dagger*, holding it fast before you upright, *screw it into the muzzle of your firelock*, so that the flat side may be toward you when reovered.

(y) BAYONET, from being first made at Bayonne in Spain. Those ancient bayonets are called by the French, bayonets à manche. Many of them may be seen in the small armory in the Tower; the handles are plain, fitting tight into the muzzle of the musket, and rather enlarging towards the blade, to prevent their entering too far into the piece.

loading and firing with it, was adopted in England, I have not been able to discover, but believe it was not at first done quite in the present form; the late Rev. Mr. W. Goffling of Canterbury, a man very curious respecting military matters told me he had seen two horse grenadiers riding before Queen Anne's coach with fixed bayonets, that these bayonets were of the dagger kind having handles originally intended for screwing into the muzzles of the pieces, which handles then had two rings, fixed to them for the admission of the barrel of the piece. In a book of exercise, for the horse dragoons and foot, printed anno 1728 by authority, the bayonet of the present fashion is described.

THE introduction of the bayonet naturally procured the dismissal of the pike, which with the exchange of the matchlock for the snap-hance, the original name of the present lock took place about the third or fourth year of the reign of King William III. this exchange seems not to have been made all at once, but by degrees, wherefore an exact period for that alteration cannot be assigned.

IN the beginning of the reign of King William III. notwithstanding the act of the 13th of Charles II. defensive armour was so much laid aside, that we learn from the Journals of the House of Commons, in the year 1690, a petition was presented by the workmen armourers of the city of London, setting forth that by the act of the 13th of Charles II. it was provided that at every muster and exercise of the militia, every horseman is to bring with him defensive arms, viz. breast and potts, pistol proof; and the back, sword proof: every pikeman to have a back, breast, and head-piece; and every musquetier a head-piece: for want of due execution of which laws, the petitioners trade is like to be utterly lost: and praying the consideration of the house for reviving and encouraging the art of making armour. In answer to which it was ordered, that the consideration of the above-mentioned petition of the workmen armourers of the city of London be referred to the committee, to whom it is referred to prepare and bring in a bill for the better regulating and making the militia of the kingdom more useful.

ABOUT the same time most of the defensive armour was returned into the Tower, by the different corps of the army, and has never since been called for, except some cuirasses, and plain iron scull caps like basons, both occasionally used by the heavy cavalry; scull caps were likewise till lately worn by the dragoons. Of the cuirass, frequently the breast-piece only was put on, the back-pieces having been deemed more cumbersome than useful, particularly as the backs of the British troops are rarely exposed to an enemy. Cuirassiers are still to be found in most of the European armies; those of this kingdom must in future be supplied from the old stores, the profession of an armourer being now totally extinct. The father of Mr. Cooper of the armory in the Tower, was the last person regularly bred to that art.

---

SINCE the printing of the preceding sheets, accident has thrown into my hands Sir Richard Hawkin's account of his Voyage to the South Sea, A. D. 1591, wherein he mentions shooting arrows from muskets, with great success. Although this does not suit in point of time, with the part of this work now under consideration, yet rather than omit so curious a fact, that irregularity is dispensed with, and the passage here given in his own words.

“ IN this discourse General Michael Angell demanded, for what purpose served the little short arrowes, which we had in our shippe, and those in so great quantitie; I satisfied him that they were for our muskets. They are not as yet in use amongst the Spaniards, yet of singular effect and execution, as our enemies confessed; for the upper worke of their shippes being musket prooffe, in all places they passed through both sides with facilitie, and wrought extraordinary disasters, which caused admiration to see themselves wounded with small shott, where they thought themselves secure; and by no means could find where they entered, nor come to the fight of any of the shott. Hereof they proved to profit themselves after, but for that they wanted the tampkings, which are first to be driven home, before the arrow be put in, and as then understood not the secret, they rejected them as uncertaine, and therefore not to be used: but of all the shot used now a dayes, for the annoying of an enemy in fight by sea, few are of greater moment for many respects, which I hold not convenient to treat of in publique.” P. 164. Sec. LXVI.



DESCRIPTION  
OF  
THE PLATES,  
ILLUSTRATIVE OF  
THE TREATISE ON ANCIENT ARMOUR.

---

---

*F R O N T I S P I E C E.*

**A**RICH embossed steel shield, representing the delivery of the keys of some ancient city, to a conquering General. The chief figures, which are ten inches high, are richly inlaid with gold; the whole is encompassed with a border of fruits, flowers, foliage and grotesque work, likewise inlaid with the same metal.

THE work of this shield seems in the style of the fifteenth century. It was probably used as one of the insignia of dignity, commonly borne before the generals in chief of that time. It was purchased in Italy by the late Dr. Ward, who gave five hundred pounds for it; at present it is the property of Gustavus Brander, Esq; of Christ Church, Hants.

ITS height is two feet three inches, measured over the convexity: its breadth, taken in the same manner, one foot eleven inches. The border, which is included in the above, is two inches.

IT has four holes in the face, for the conveniency of fixing a handle, and divers others round the exterior edge of the border, a little within the rim, at the distance of two inches from each other, probably for fixing a lining of silk or some other stuff.

WEIGHT of the shield nine pounds three quarters.

## PLATE I.

FIG. 1. A brass helmet, formerly the property of Sir William Hamilton, but since, with divers other articles of his collection, purchased by the public, and now deposited in the British Museum.—Mr. D'Hancarville, author of the *Etruscan Antiquities*, who was employed to make a catalogue of this collection, says this helmet is of Grecian workmanship, and intended to resemble the face of an owl, the favourite bird of Minerva, protectress of Athens. Its front is ornamented with a rude pattern of leaf-work and flowers, coarsely engraved; the top is perforated, probably for the insertion of some contrivance to fasten the crest, or pennache; there are two other holes at the points near the chin, and one under each ear, near the bottom, undoubtedly used for fastening it on. It is remarkably thick, and weighs eight pounds and one ounce. According to Mr. D'Hancarville, it was found, anno 1752, in the memorable field of Cannæ, where Hannibal gained a complete victory over the Romans. As there were many Greeks in the Carthaginian army, this helmet is supposed to have belonged to one of them, who probably fell in the combat, and was buried in his armour.

FIG. 2, and 3, are different views of the same helmet.

FIG. 4, and 5, represent another helmet of the same form and metal, but much lighter and consequently thinner. It was purchased by Sir William Hamilton, at Rome, but where it was found, or any farther particulars concerning it are unknown.

## PLATE II.

FIG. 1. An ancient Venetian morion, or head-piece, ornamented with arms, armour, and other military trophies, chased on a thin plate of iron, fastened to another more substantial.

FIG. 2. This according to Mr. D'Hancarville's catalogue, before recited, is a Roman helmet, found also at Cannæ; on the top are two



moveable pins, seemingly intended for fastening a crest or plume of feathers. This helmet is of brass, extremely thin, and without a lining; it seems incapable of resisting the slightest stroke of a sword, or blow from a stone thrown by a sling.

## PLATE III.

FIG. 1. The Venetian morion, of which the former plate gave a front view, is here shewn *en profile*. In the centre, immediately under the crest, is the figure of Actæon; answering to it, on the other side, is the figure of some hero in complete armour. From the style of the armour and ornaments, this morion seems to be the work of the fifteenth century. It is the property of Mr. Rawle, military accoutrement-maker in the Strand, London.

FIG. 2. The helmet here represented is drawn from one in the Tower. It is of a very singular construction; the nasal part in the visor projecting much farther than usual; it is of the burgonet kind, having the visor and beaver both in one.

## PLATE IV.

THE originals of all the helmets in this plate, are in the Tower.

FIG. 1. A black helmet, its visor lifted up.

FIG. 2. The same helmet, with the visor let down or closed.

FIG. 3. A grated helmet, with a beaver that lets down.

FIG. 4. A grated helmet.

FIG. 5, and 6. Different views of the helmet, fig. 3. with its beaver down.

## PLATE V.

FIG. 1. A barred helmet; the bar lifted up.

FIG. 2. The same helmet, with the bar let down.

FIG. 3. A helmet with three bars; the bars lifted up.

FIG. 4. The same helmet, with the bars let down.

FIG. 5. A helmet, having both its visor and beaver open.

FIG. 6. The same helmet, with its beaver and visor down or closed.

The originals of these are all in the Tower.

## PLATE VI.

FIG. 1. A black helmet in the Tower, with its visor down or closed.

FIG. 2. The same helmet, with its visor raised or open.

FIG. 3. An open head-piece, said to have belonged to Oliver Cromwell. It is of iron, the ornaments and nails or studs are of brass: the original is in the collection of Mr. Rawle.

FIG. 4, and 5. Different views of the helmet, fig. 2. plate 3.

## PLATE VII.

## FROM THE TOWER.

FIG. 1, and 2. Iron hats called pots, said to be taken from the French in the time of King Charles I.

FIG. 3. A curious steel cap richly engraved, seemingly in the style of the beginning of the 16th century.

FIG. 4. A large bright helmet, of very neat workmanship.

FIG. 5. An open helmet.

FIG. 6. A large helmet richly ornamented and inlaid with crests of gilt metal: its visor opens with a hinge, the crest of gilt metal.

## PLATE VIII.

## ALL drawn from the originals in the Tower.

FIG. 1. The helmet to a suit of armour said to have belonged to John de Courcy Earl of Ulster in Ireland, confined there anno 1204.

FIG. 2. The same in profile.

FIG. 3. The helmet of John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster, fourth son of King Edward III. who died anno 1399.

FIG. 4. A helmet similar to that of Oliver Cromwell's; the back view of this is given, in order to shew the contrivance for raising or depressing the head.

FIG. 5. The helmet to a suit of armour made for K. Henry VIII. when but eighteen years of age. It is rough from the hammer.

## PLATE IX.

TAKEN from the Great Seals of the following Kings and ancient Barons.

FIG. 1, and 2. The helmets of William the Conqueror, both from Sandford.

FIG. 3. Of William Earl of Mellent and Worcester, who lived soon after the conquest; vide Dugdale's Baronage, and Mills's Catalogue, created Earl of Worcester, anno 1144, died 1166. Taken from his seal in the library of Thomas Aftle, Esq.

FIG. 4. John, son of Richard I. from his great seal in Sandford.

FIG. 5. William, son of Robert, Duke of Normandy, from his tomb at the Abbey of St. Bertin's at St. Omer's; vide Montfaucon's Monarchie Françoise.

FIG. 6. Richard I. from his great seal in Sandford.

FIG. 7. Ferdinand III. King of Castile and Leon, from a window of Notre Dame de Chartres. He died anno 1248.

FIG. 8. Alexander II. King of Scotland, from his seal in Anderson's Diplomata. He began his reign anno 1214. His helmet has much the resemblance of a Scottish bonnet.

FIG. 9. Alexander III. King of Scotland, also from Anderson. He began to reign anno 1249.

FIG. 10. John Earl Warren, 10th April, 1276, from Thomas Aftle, Esq.

FIG. 11, Robert de Ghifnes, who lived about the year 1250, from the same.

FIG. 12. King Edward I. from Sandford.

FIG. 13. Hughes Vidame de Chalons, who died anno 1279, taken from an engraved figure in the Abbey of Chalons in Champagne, vide Montf. Monarch. Françoise.

FIG. 14. Raoul de Beaumont founder of the Abbey of Estival, anno 1210, from his monument in the Chapel of that Abbey, vide Mon. Françoise.

FIG. 15. Richard Earl of Cornwall, from Sandford.

FIG. 16. Edward eldest son of Edward III.

## DESCRIPTION

## PLATE X.

FIG. 1, and 2. Two views of De Courcy's helmet (see plate 8), with the visor lifted up.

FIG. 3. The head-piece of Oliver Cromwell. (See plate 6.)

FIG. 4, and 5. A tilting helmet in two different positions. It is the property of Mr. Rawle.

*N.B.* This drawing having been etched without reversing it, divers particulars in Oliver Cromwell's and the tilting helmets appear on the wrong side.

## PLATE XI.

FIG. 1, and 2. A bar helmet seen in different points of view.

FIG. 3, and 4. The helmet to a suit of armour, said to have belonged to the Duke of Monmouth, beheaded July 15, 1685. The spring shewn in the front was intended to support a pennache; both these helmets are the property of Mr. Cofway, of the Royal Academy. The last is twice introduced by Mr. West, in his *Battle of the Boyne*.

## PLATE XII.

FLEMISH helmets from the armory at Breda.

## PLATE XIII.

FIG. 1, and 2. The breast and back-piece of an ancient brass cuirass, part of Sir William Hamilton's Collection, now preserved in the British Museum. On this cuirass are marked the swell of the breasts, and some of the principal muscles of the body. This shews that the representations of the muscles, seen on the armour of the statues of the Grecian and Roman soldiers, are not fictions of the artists, but were to be found on the real armour of those times, a matter which has been much doubted. Mr. Hancarville in his catalogue, mentions this cuirass as a great curiosity, and judges it to be Roman. The breast-plate is nearly square, measuring thirteen inches in length, and twelve in breadth. From each breast projected a kind

of button, probably used to fasten it to the back piece; that on the right breast is lost; it appears by the remaining cavity to have been let into the cuirass; this button is separately represented over it.

FIG. 3. A Roman Lituus, or military trumpet, such as is mentioned by Horace in his first ode. It was found in digging a well, near Battle, in Suffex, and was then filled with small shells. It is of cast brass, and bears the same proportion to the cuirass as delineated: it is now the property of Mr. Rawle. A similar trumpet is engraved in Montfaucon's Roman Antiquities.

FIG. 4. An ancient brass sword, found in the Severn near Gloucester, now in the possession of Owen Salisbury Brereton, Esq. It is drawn on the same scale as the other objects in the plate.

#### PLATE XIV.

FIG. 1. An ancient suit of bright armour, exhibited in the Tower of London, as the armour of the famous De Courcy. The helmet in different positions has been before shewn.

FIG. 2. A pouldron and garde-brass, avant-brass or vambrace belonging to the suit of the Duke of Monmouth, the helmet of which has been represented in different positions, plate 11, fig. 3, and 4.

#### PLATE XV.

A CORCELET or suit of bright harquebuss armour from the Tower, the head-piece a morion.

#### PLATE XVI.

A SUIT of horseman's armour, such as was worn about the time of Henry VIII. or Queen Elizabeth, drawn from a suit in the horse-armory in the Tower of London.

#### PLATE XVII.

THE figures 1 and 2, both represent the same suit, which is in the Tower; the helmet is an open one. On the right side of the cuirass

is part of a lance rest, which by the inversion of the object in printing, here appears on the left.

FIG. 3. A suit of harquebuis armour.

FIG. 4. Another suit of the same denomination, with long tassets to cover the thighs, the originals of both are in the Tower.

#### PLATE XVIII.

A SUIT of black morion or harquebuis armour.

#### PLATE XIX.

A SUIT of armour made for King Henry VIII. when he was but eighteen years of age. It is rough from the hammer, the joints in the hands, arms, knees and feet, move with amazing facility.

#### PLATE XX.

THE same suit viewed from a different point.

N. B. The originals of plate 18 and 19, both in the Tower.

#### PLATE XXI.

THIS plate exhibits two ancient suits of mail, in the museum of Mr. Richard Green, of Litchfield; the rings are nearly of the size delineated, fig. 3, but at the extremities of the arms, and lower parts of the skirts, are of smaller wire than those of the shoulders, back, &c. every ring is drilled and rivetted. On the breast and back are a set of plates; on those of the breast are clasps to make them fast, by means of a leather strap, the whole coat being open before. The hood or cap is composed of rings similar to those of the coat, but the crown or upper part, has a set of thin narrow plates, diverging from a center or knob on the top of the head, best expressed in the suit marked 5, which is more complete than the former by having hose or trowsers.

LENGTH of the suit, fig. 1, from the top of the hood to the bottom of the skirts, 4 feet 3 inches.

LENGTH of the suit, fig. 5, from the top of the cap or hood, to the bottom of the skirts, four feet four inches; from thence to the bottom of the hose or trowsers twenty-one inches. The waistband of the hose is in breadth about two inches and a half; it is of coarse linen, and covered with a dark coloured silk; instead of buttons it is fastened by two leather straps. The buttons of the hose are bound with silk ferret or ribband. The weight of the cap or hood, fig. 5, is three pounds eight ounces: that of the coat twenty-two pounds eight ounces: the trowsers thirteen pounds: weight of the whole suit thirty-nine pounds. The profile of the hood, fig. 2, shews the particular construction of the neck.

## P L A T E XXII.

THIS suit, according to the account given by the warders of the Tower, was the armour of John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster. It seems made for a man of gigantic size. The projection of the cuirass is so constructed as to tend to a point over the breast, which gives it a singular appearance, but was an admirable contrivance to divert the thrust of a lance, by causing it to glance off on one side. On the shoulders are the pass-guards mentioned in the description of the different pieces of tilting armour.

## P L A T E XXIII.

FIG. 1. A suit of tilting armour from the Tower, with the defence called the grand guard, and the lance rest.

FIG. 2. The helmet and grand guard, on a larger scale, and in a different point of view.

FIG. 3. The breast-piece of a cuirass.

## P L A T E XXIV.

CONSISTS of chanfrons, champfrein or shaffrons for barded horses.

FIG. 4 and 5, are different views of the same shaffron, which from the device of the bear and ragged staff, on the plate in the center, appears to have belonged to the Warwick family.

## P L A T E XXV.

THE armed knight here represented is taken from the figure of King Edward III. in the horse armory in the Tower of London: as is also the war saddle: but the chafron, criniere, poitrinal and buttock piece of the horse, are drawn from other originals in that place. The horse was drawn by Mr. Gilpin.

## P L A T E XXVI.

FIG. 1. A helmet and brigandine.

FIG. 2. An iron greave or armour for the leg.

FIG. 3. One of the gauntlets belonging to the suit of John of Gaunt.

FIG. 4. A long armed gauntlet of iron, the inside of the hand, gloved with buff leather.

FIG. 5. A gorget.

FIG. 6. An iron mace. N. B. The hole through the handle, for passing a thong or ring for the convenience of carriage, could not be seen in this view.

FIG. 7. An antique pryck spur of iron, in the collection of Captain Robson.

ALL the different articles except the spur, are drawn from the originals in the Tower of London.

## P L A T E XXVII.

FIG. 1. An ancient two-handed sword, kept in the castle of Rochester, Kent; supposed to have been a sword of state; length of the sword, the handle included, five feet and half an inch; length of the blade, three feet six inches; breadth of ditto near the hilt, three inches; near the point, two inches and a quarter: weight seven pounds and a half. When found, the remains of some gilding was distinguishable on the pommel and cross.

FIG. 2. An ancient two-handed sword, kept among other old weapons in the town-hall at Canterbury, anno 1776. Length of the



handle, the gripe of which was covered with black leather, two feet ; length of the blade, four feet two inches ; breadth of the blade, &c. in the proportion here delineated.

FIG. 3. The dagger belonging to it.

FIG. 4, and 5. A sword and dagger digged up at Sutton at Hone in Kent, formerly a preceptory of the knights of St. John of Jerufalem, many of whom were buried in the chapel there. Mr. Hafted, author of the History of Kent, in caufing a cellar to be made, found two bodies in armour, with a sword and dagger lying by them: the armour, was a helmet, back and breast-piece with cuiffets for the thighs. The length of the sword, blade, and handle, two feet ten inches ; length of the blade, two feet ; the pommel feems to have been gilt. On the blade, was this infcription, I. N. R. I. Jefus of Nazareth King of the Jews.

FIG. 6. A kind of battle-ax, in the collection of Captain Robfon, of Chelfea.

FIG. 7. Another battle-ax, in the fame collection.

N.B. ALL the weapons of this plate are drawn on the fame fcale.

#### P L A T E XXVIII.

FIG. 1. An ancient sword-blade halbert, in the collection of Mr. Cotton, F.R.S.

FIG. 2. An ancient brown bill, anno 1776, kept in the Town-hall at Canterbury ; it was mounted on a staff seven feet long, with a pointed ferril of iron at the end.

FIG. 3. An ancient sword-blade halbert, in the collection of Capt. Robfon ; its staff, which was once covered with green velvet, meafures five feet fix inches.

FIG. 4. A Lochaber-ax, mounted on a staff five feet long.

FIG. 5. An antique sword-blade halbert, in the collection of Capt. Robfon, fuppofed of the time of Henry VII.

FIG. 6. An ancient bill.

FIG. 7. A hand bill, in the collection of Mr. Cotton. It is hung round with small bells ; probably a contrivance to frighten horfes.

FIG. 8. A bill digged up at Battefield, near Shrewsbury; in the possession of Mr. Dodd, the comedian. It is mounted on a staff about six feet long.

#### PLATE XXIX.

FIG. 1 and 2. Two views of a fingular helmet, in the Tower.

FIG. 3. A curious antique pryck spur, in the collection of John Fenn, Esq. F.A.S. The drawing of which was made by him, and kindly communicated to me.

FIG. 4. A shirt of chain mail, in the collection of curiosities at Don Saltero's coffee-house, Chelsea.

#### PLATE XXX.

FIG. 1 and 2. A helmet found in Bosworth-field, now in the collection of Captain Robson.

FIG. 3. A cuirass, said to have belonged to King Henry VIII. It consists of small laminæ of metal fixed on leather, which yield to any motion of the body by sliding over each other.—The original is at Don Saltero's coffee-house.

#### PLATE XXXI

FIG. 1. Section of a lance rest, drawn from the original in the Tower of London.

FIG. 2. The same seen above the eye.

FIG. 3. The same viewed beneath the eye.

FIG. 4. The head of a musquet rest, late in the collection of the Rev. Mr. Gostling. A tuck issued from the square hole seen in the center, which was covered by a valve, in this view lifted up. It was intended to keep off the enemy's horse, whilst the musquetteer was loading; his rest was for that purpose struck down before him, the point of the tuck sloping towards the breast of the horse.

FIG. 5. A musket rest taken out of the Thames, at Windsor, now in the collection of Captain Robson.

FIG. 6. A coronel or crownel, used for the head of a tilt staff or lance.

FIG. 7. Part of the staff and handle of a tilt staff or tilting lance, the larger conical plate, is called the van plat, or avant plat, and was meant to protect the hand; the lesser conical projection is called the burr, designed to prevent the hand from slipping backwards.

FIG. 8. The same staff without the van plat.

### PLATE XXXII.

FIVE Venetian helmets, drawn from the originals in the armory at Venice, by that ingenious artist Mr. Miller.

### PLATE XXXIII.

FIG. 1 and 2. Different views of a head-piece, being part of a suit of armour of the time of King Charles I. belonging to Mr. Coffway, R. A.

FIG. 3. The same with the back, breast, tassets, and pouldron.

FIG. 4. An ancient pertuisan, in the possession of Mr. Miller.

FIG. 5. A sword belonging to Mr. Rawle, the hilt of silver elaborately ornamented.

FIG. 6. A hammer of arms, from the Tower of London.

### PLATE XXXIV.

FIG. 1. A concave Roundel, in the collection of Mr. Green of Lichfield, Staffordshire, to whom I am obliged for the drawing. It is thirteen inches diameter, made of wood covered with leather, and an iron plate decorated with nails and mouldings; the boss or umbo projects four inches.

FIG. 2. A section of the same.

FIG. 3. A battle-ax, in the collection of Mr. Rawle.

FIG. 4. Its butt end and iron ferril; the staff on which it is fixed is octagonal, and measures five feet four inches.

FIG. 5. An ancient pole ax, late in the collection of the Rev. Mr. Gosling of Canterbury.

FIG. 6. Its butt end and ferril.

FIG. 7. A curious and ancient weapon in the possession of Colonel Ogle of Caulfey Park, Northumberland, used by some of his ancestors in the defence of the borders against the Scots.

FIG. 8. Its butt end. It is mounted on a staff seven feet long.

ALL these articles are drawn on the same scale.

### PLATE XXXV.

A CURIOUS suit of armour belonging to Mr. Cofway, of the age of King James, or Charles I. It is said to be tilting armour, but from the circumstance of having the back piece made strongly defensible, seems rather to have been intended for military service, as in tilting no strokes might have been levelled at the back; the whole is covered with a cinnamon coloured silk, and is strongly quilted and stuffed; besides which, it seems strengthened either with jacked leather, or thin iron plates, sewed on in the nature of a brigandine. The head-piece has also an iron cap between the outside and lining. Most probably this suit is what was called silk armour. A species often mentioned in history, and found in the inventory of ancient armories.

FIG. 1 and 2. The head-piece shewn in different points of view. Its weight three pounds thirteen ounces.

FIG. 3. The breast and back. Weight of the breast seven pounds fourteen ounces, the back six pounds thirteen ounces.

FIG. 4. The tasset or skirt, weight one pound five ounces.

FIG. 5. A covering for the left arm, curiously stuffed and quilted, intended to answer the use of a shield, weight two pounds three ounces.

FIG. 6. The head-piece displayed on the ground.

## P L A T E XXXVI.

A KNIGHT or man at arms completely armed and mounted, according to the fashion of the time of King Henry II. that is, with a hawberk of plate, or scale mail, over which is his fur coat. On his head is one of those flat helmets shewn in plate 8, such as are represented on the great seals of our kings and ancient barons, about and before that period, as well as in divers antient paintings on glass, also on sepulchral monuments, particularly those in the Temple Church, London. In his right hand he carries a plain lance, that is a lance without avant plat, or burr, and on his left arm a triangular, or heater shield. The fore part of his legs are defended by iron plates, called jambefons, his heels are armed with pryck spurs, and he sits on a war saddle, whose burrs and cantles are covered with steel.

## P L A T E XXXVII.

AN ancient concave roundel, late in the collection of the Rev. Mr. Gostling of Canterbury. It was a circle of one foot diameter, formed of three skins of leather, covered with a plate of iron, strengthened and decorated with ten concentric circles of brass nails, and secured within by three thin hoops of iron; the umbo, its spike included, projected five inches; it was hollow and stuffed with hair: the handle was of wood much decayed, and fastened by thin iron plates.

FIG. 1. Represents the back or inside of the roundel.

FIG. 2. Its front viewed obliquely.

FIG. 3. The section shewing its concavity and handle.

FIG. 4. The handle shewn separately.

## P L A T E XXXVIII.

THIS plate also shews a man at arms of the 12th and 13th century, in the act of charging an enemy. He is armed much the same as the knight represented in plate 36, except that he has a hawberk of chain mail, i. e. formed of small iron rings.

## PLATE XXXIX.

THIS plate contains a buff coat, sword, shoulder-belt, and waist-belt, toledo, and a defence for the left arm, worn in the time of Charles I. by Sir Francis Rhodes, Bart. of Balborough-Hall, Derbyshire.

FIG. 1. Fore part of the buff coat, which was formerly decorated with gold lace; the body is lined with coarse linen, the buttons and hoops of silver wire and brown silk, the lacing string of coarse white tape.

FIG. 2. The back part of the coat.

FIG. 3. A buff belt intended to be slung over the right shoulder, and fixed there by a loop on fig. 1. This belt has a loop and swivel, for the purpose of carrying a carabine.

FIG. 4. A sword whose hilt is of gilt silver, the gripe wire-work, the blade triangular, two feet five inches long; to it is a buff belt two inches three quarters broad.

FIG. 5. A buff covering for the left arm, contrived to answer the purpose of a shield, being composed of three skins of leather, with one of cartoon or pasteboard; the length twenty-five inches, the width at the opening twelve inches, tapering towards the wrist; to it is fixed a buff glove.

FIG. 6. The outside of the glove and arm-piece.

FIG. 7. A long toledo, with a hilt of filigrained steel, length of the blade three feet nine inches, finely tapering to a point.

FIG. 8. Section of the blade and scabbard.

FIG. 9. A more distinct design of the hilt of the forementioned sword.

N.B. THIS sword belonged to a suit of common iron armour, with a barred helmet, the cuirass whereof is almost destroyed by rust. On the helmet are the letters J. R. John Rhodes, son of Judge Francis Rhodes, which Francis built Balborough-Hall in 1583, and died in 1585.

N. B. THE coat and some other parts of the drawing having been etched without reverfing, brings the loop defcribed in No. 1. and the fword No. 4, on the wrong fide.

## P L A T E XL.

FIG. 1. A matchlock mufquet from the Tower of London.

FIG. 2. The infide of its lock on a larger fcale.

FIG. 3. Its bayonet, to be fixed by flicking the handle into the muzzle of the mufquet.

FIG. 4. The fame fort of bayonet, to be fixed by means of the rings, as defcribed and drawn by Mr. Gofling.

FIG. 5. The head of a mufquet reft armed with a bayonet, as defcribed by Bariffe.

FIG. 6. A common mufquet reft, in the collection of Mr. Gofling.

FIG. 7. A fet of bandileers, with powder flafk, and bullet bag.

FIG. 8. A wheel lock piece in the collection of Mr. Brander.

FIG. 9. The lock on a larger fcale.

FIG. 10. The fpanner for fpanning or winding up the fpring of the wheel lock.

## P L A T E XLI.

AN ancient iron mace in the collection of Guftavus Brander, Efq.

THE whole length of this mace is two feet one inch, the length of the head feven inches.

WEIGHT, three pounds nine ounces, the handle hollow. The whole mace appears to have been gilt; at prefent moft of the gilding is rubbed off. The handle is perforated near the middle for the paffing of a ring, chain, or thong, to hang it to the faddle bow.

## P L A T E XLII.

FIG. 1. Part of a helmet fhewn in Warwick Caftle, faid to have belonged to Guy earl of Warwick.

FIG. 2. A fide view of the fame helmet, with the pivot, and a fmall fragment of the vifor.

FIG. 3, and 4. Two views of an iron chafron of uncommon construction, said to have belonged to the above-mentioned earl.

PLATE XLIII.

AN elegant suit of fluted armour brought by Lord Warwick from Germany.

PLATE XLIV.

A FRONT view of the same suit.

PLATE XLV.

A SUIT of armour said to have belonged to the Duke of Monmouth.

PLATE XLVI.

FIG. 1. Another view of the same suit ; fig. 2 and 3, different views of the helmet belonging to it.

PLATE XLVII.

THE head-piece, breast and back, which Lord Brooke had on when killed in the clofe at Lichfield. A. D. 1643.

PLATE XLVIII.

Two ancient singular pieces of armour, and a two-handed sword said to have belonged to Guy earl of Warwick.

FIG. 1. A breast plate, in length three feet one inch, in breadth at the top one foot four inches, at the bottom two feet, weight fifty-two pounds.

FIG. 2. A shield perforated in the center, enabling the bearer to cover his head without interrupting his fight. Its measure two feet two inches, by two feet one inch. Its weight thirty-two pounds.

FIG. 3. The sword, its length five feet six inches long, its weight twenty pounds.

THESE six plates were drawn from the original armour by that in-



genious artist Mr. Danks, at the expence of the Right Honourable the Earl of Warwick, who permitted engravings to be made for this work, for which the author here begs leave to return his most grateful acknowledgements.

## PLATE XLIX.

REPRESENTS an uncommon engine, supposed to be a tinker's mortar, which being fixed on a stick was used for throwing grenades; the upper view of it shews it open, that at the bottom gives its appearance when shut: the original is in the collection of Captain Robson of Chelsea.

N. B. THE two views of the back and breast pieces not before described in plate xiv. are the property of Mr. Cofway, and belong to the same suit as the poldrons and avant bras. The knee piece was drawn from one in the Tower.



SUPPLEMENT  
TO  
A T R E A T I S E  
ON  
*ANTIEN T ARMOUR,*

BEING ILLUSTRATIONS OF ANTIEN T AND ASIATICK  
ARMOUR AND WEAPONS.

---

BY THE SAME AUTHOR.

# ADVERTISEMENT

*(Prefixed to the First Edition).*

---

MANY of the Purchasers of the Treatise on Antient Armour and Weapons, having intimated that they wished to see a similar Representation of the Arms, offensive and defensive, formerly used, and still in Use among the different Asiatick Nations, particularly those of the East-Indies; the Author having several favourable Opportunities of consulting many very curious Cabinets and Collections of those Curiosities, has gladly seized the Opportunity of indulging his favourite Pursuit; and here begs Leave to lay before the Public divers additional Plates, most of them Eastern Subjects, with some antient British, Danish, and Saxon Instruments and Weapons, found in different Parts of Great Britain.

Mr. HAMILTON's Health not permitting him to etch the whole of these Drawings, as he originally intended, they have been executed by the best Engravers of those Subjects; to which are added, the most authentick and accurate Accounts of them that could be obtained.

THE Asiatick Arms will be found particularly useful to such Artists as shall, in future, be employed to celebrate and immortalize, either by Painting or Sculpture, the Acts of British Valour in those Regions.

DESCRIPTION  
OF  
THE SUPPLEMENTAL PLATES  
TO  
*THE ANTIENT ARMOUR.*

---

---

OF ASIATICK ARMOUR AND WEAPONS.

PLATE L.

- F**IG. 1. A Maratta horseman's sword.  
FIG. 2. Another shewn in a different point of view.  
FIG. 3. An Asiatick shield made of a buffalo's hide.  
FIG. 4. Another shewing the inside, with the rings for the arms.  
FIG. 5. An eastern quiver and bow-case.  
FIG. 6. A Persian quiver, for holding darts or javelins to be thrown  
by hand.  
FIG. 7. One of the javelins.  
FIG. 8. A Seapoy's sword.

FIG. 9. Another of a different form.

FIG. 10. A Persian scymeter.

FIG. 11. An eastern battle-axe.

FIG. 12. An eastern dart.

FIG. 13. An eastern Naicaire, or kettle-drum

*N.B.* Numbers 1 and 2 are in the collection of Captain Robson, who brought them from India; numbers 3, 4, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, and 13, are in the cabinet of Mr. Rawle; and numbers 5, 11, and 12, in the Museum of the Honourable Horace Walpole, at Strawberry-Hill.

#### P L A T E L I.

FIG. 1. and 2. A head-piece, with a hood of chain mail, formerly worn by Souja Dowla.

FIG. 3. Souja Dowla's battle-axe.

FIG. 4. and 5. Breast and back pieces to the same suit.

FIG. 6. Asiatick avant brafs or armour for the arm.

All these were given by the Nabob to Mr. Conway, and purchased at his sale by Mr. Rawle, in whose possession they were A. D. 1789.

#### P L A T E L I I.

FIG. 1. A Polygar sword.

FIG. 2. A Colleree-stick, which being of hard heavy wood, is thrown with such violence by the Collerees as to break the legs of men and horses: brought from India by Captain Robson.

FIG. 3. A Malay dagger.

FIG. 4. Its sheath.

FIG. 5. The pommel and hilt, on a large scale.

FIG. 6. Another of a different form.

FIG. 7. Its sheath.

FIG. 8. Its pommel and hilt, on an enlarged scale.

FIG. 9 and 10. Malay creffes, or daggers.

FIG. 11 and 12. A Malay fabre and sheath.

FIG. 13. A Malay dagger.

All in the collection of — Marfden, Esq. author of the History of Sumatra.

### PLATE LIII.

FIG. 1 and 2. Asiatick match-lock guns, of different species.

FIG. 3. A brazen appendage, serving for a rest.

FIG. 4 and 5. Turkish guns.

FIG. 6. A Turkish match-lock gun, on a larger scale.

The three first guns are in the collection of Mr. Rawle; the two last, in that of the late Gustavus Brander, Esq.

### PLATE LIV.

FIG. 1. A furtout of chain-mail, belonging to Souja Dowla's suit of armour.

FIG. 2. A back view of the same.

FIG. 3. A Malay creffe, or dagger.

FIG. 4. An Asiatick bow.

These are in the collection of Mr. Rawle.

## ASIATICK PACK-SADDLE.

## PLATE LV.

A SADDLE for a dromedary, in the collection of Mr. Rawle ; length about one foot. It is shewn in different points of view.

## ASIATICK ARMS.

## PLATE LVI.

FIG. 1. A battle-axe, in the collection of Mr. Rawle.

FIG. 2. A dagger, in the same collection.

FIG. 3. A Rohilla battle-axe, in the collection of Mr. Martin, of Edinburgh.

FIG. 4. An Indian Cresse, in the collection of Mr. Dalton.

FIG. 5 and 6. An eastern powder-flask, embroidered with gold, in the collection of Mr. Rawle.

## ANTIEN CARABINE.

## PLATE LVII.

CARRYING two charges in the same barrel ; to be fired successively by two wheel-locks.

FIG. 1 and 2. Different views of the carabine.

FIG. 3. The locks.

FIG. 4. The end of the ramrod.

FIG 5 and 6. Spanners, serving also for holding fine powder for priming.



## PLATE LVIII.

## ANTIEN T DART AND ARROW HEADS.

FIG. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, and 8. Arrow heads of different forms. From the collection of John M'Gowan, Esq. of Edinburgh.

FIG. 9. The brafs head of a dart. From the fame collection.

FIG. 10. An iron head of a dart for a fmall machine. From the collection of the late Guftavus Brander, Esq.

FIG. 11. An iron head of a dart for a catapulta, or mangonel, found in the ditch of the Tower of London. From the collection of Mr. Rawle.—They are all of the fame fize as the originals.

## SAXON WEAPONS.

## PLATE LIX.

FIG. 1 and 2. Antient iron fwords, found in cleaning the bed of the river Wytham, in Lincolnfhire. The infcription on fig. 1, is fupposed to be a charm or amulet.

FIG. 3 and 4. Dirks or daggers, found in the fame place. They are all in the Mufeum of Sir Jofeph Banks, Bart. prefident of the Royal Society.

FIG. 5. Is a bolt for a crows-bow ; it is made of bone ; in the notch at the point, a piece of iron or fteel was inferted ; one was ficking in it when found in the camp at Danbury, in Effex. The original is in the collection of William Bray, Esq.

ANTIEN T BRASS SWORDS, AND A SPEAR-HEAD, FOUND  
IN SCOTLAND.

PLATE LX.

FIG. 1. Found on the borders between Scotland and England.

FIG. 2. Found in Duddingston Lake, near Edinburgh.

FIG. 3. Ditto.

FIG. 4. The handle of a brafs fword, found near Peebles.—They are all in the collection of John M'Gowan, Esq. of Edinburgh, and are three times the dimensions here delineated.

FIG. 5. A brafs head of a spear, found in Duddingston Lake, from the same collection.

HELMETS.

PLATE LXI.

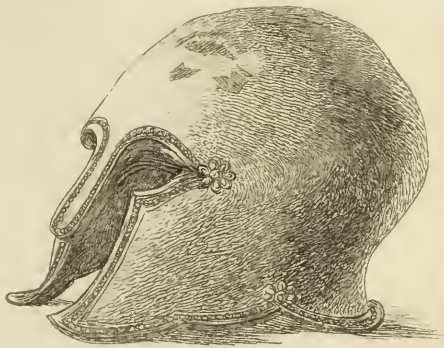
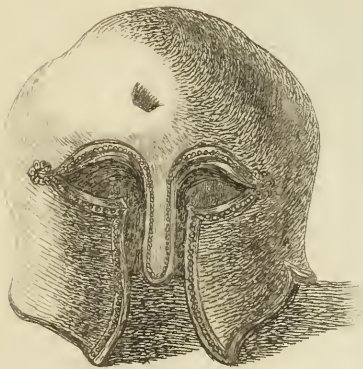
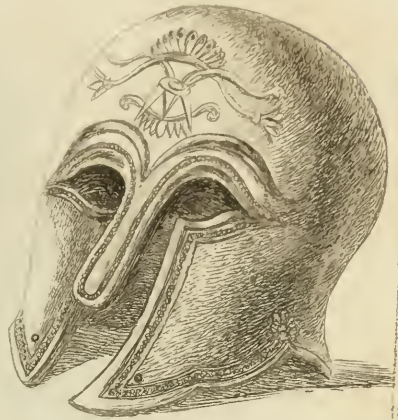
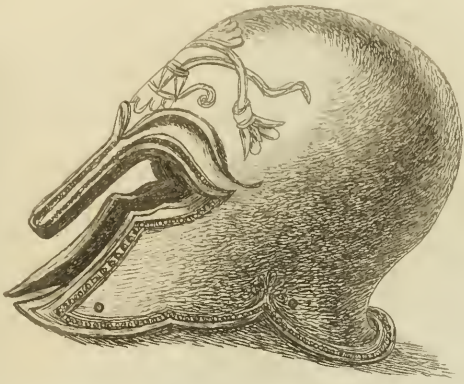
FIG. 1. A helmet in the Tower of London, whose beaver opens by letting down.

FIG. 2. A double-barred helmet. In the collection of the Hon. Mr. Walpole, at Strawberry-Hill.

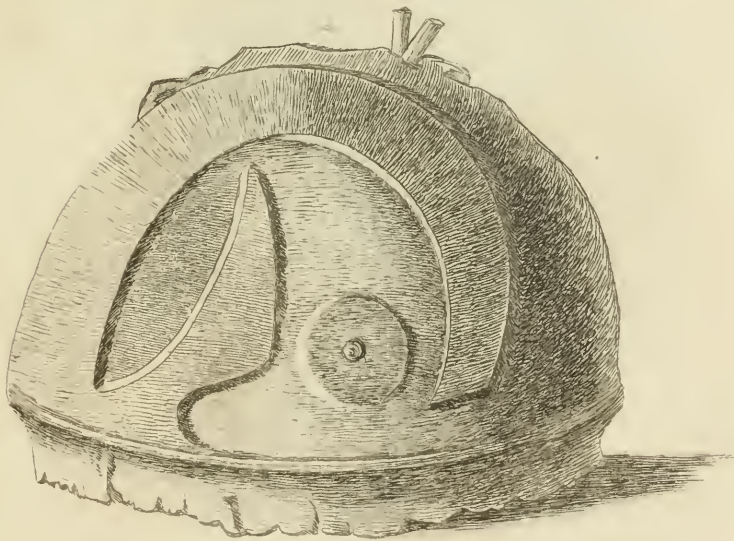
FIG. 3, 4, 5, 6. Different views of a falet, with oreilliets or ear-pieces. In the possession of Mr. Carter.

FINIS.

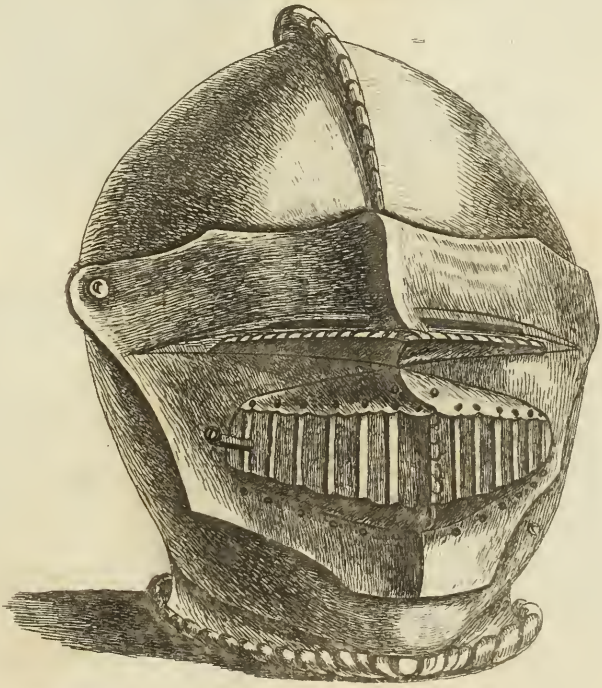
GENERAL





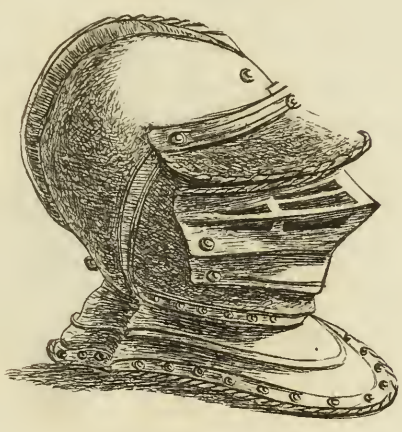




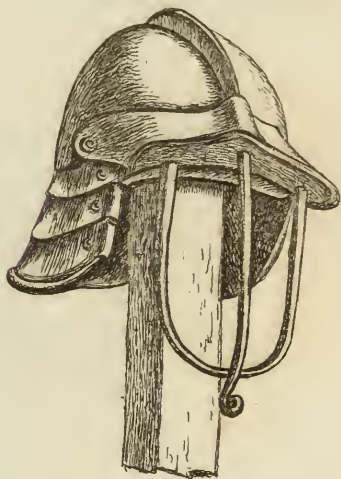
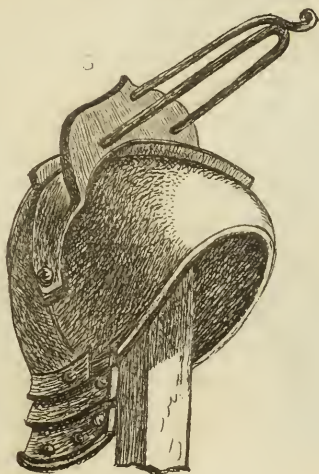
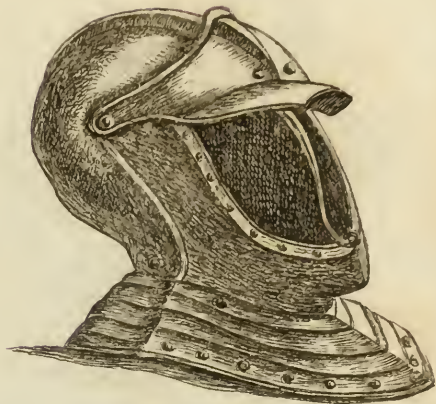




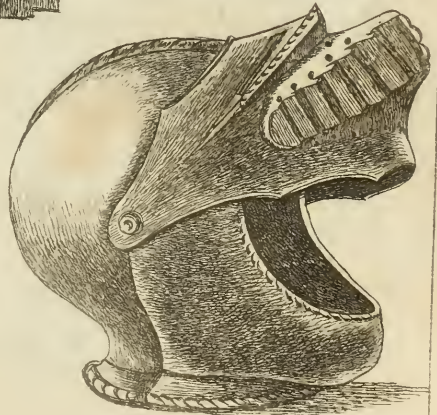
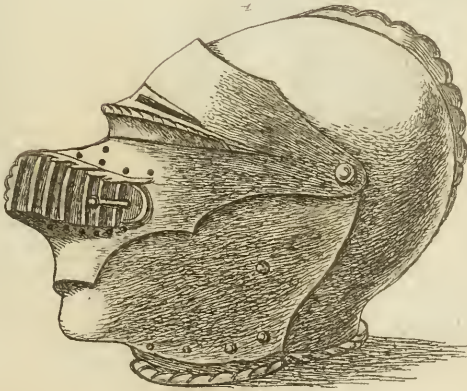
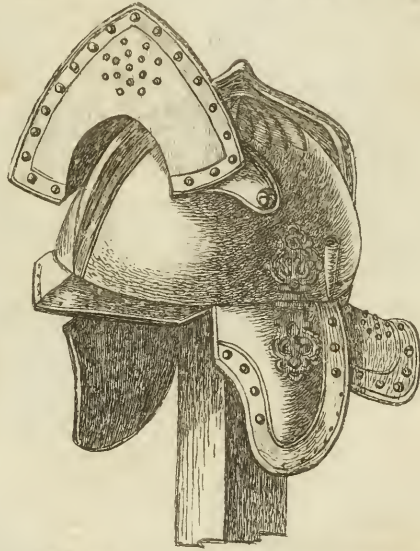
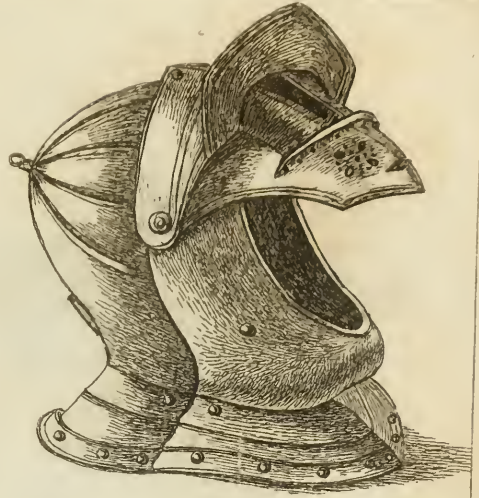
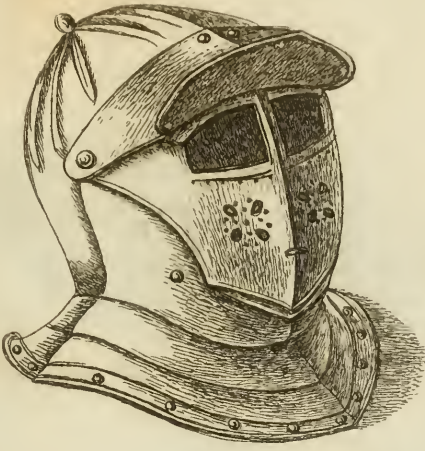






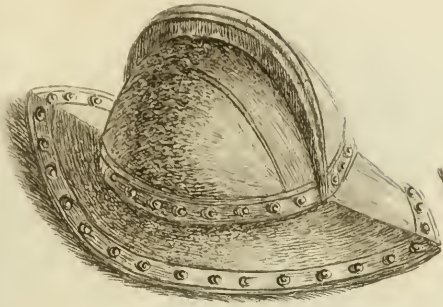




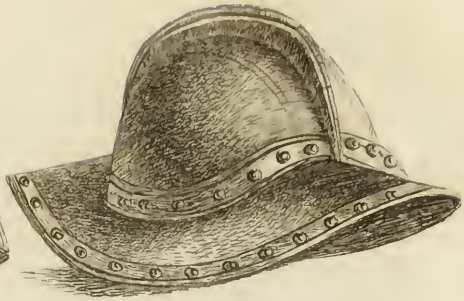




1



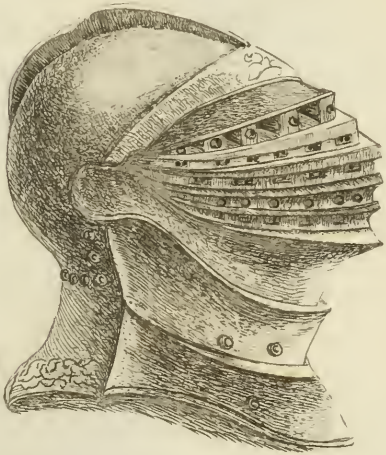
2



3



4



5

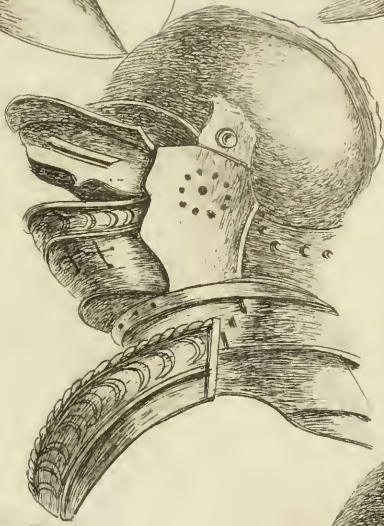


6











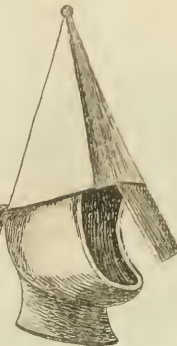
1



2



3



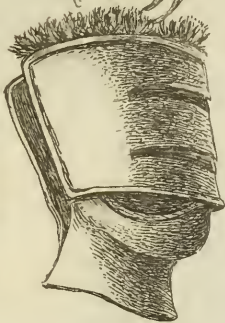
4



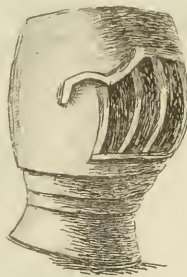
5



6



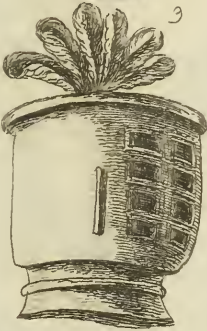
7



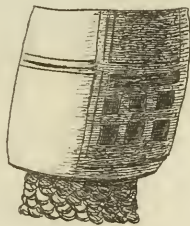
8



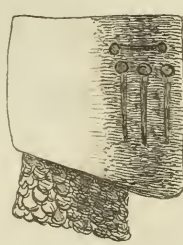
9



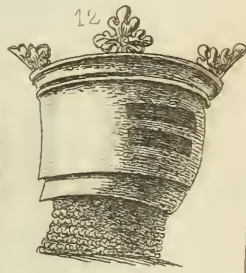
10



11



12



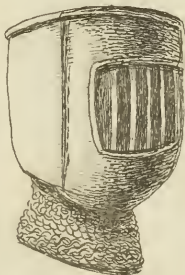
13



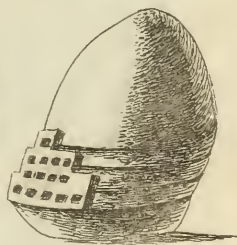
14



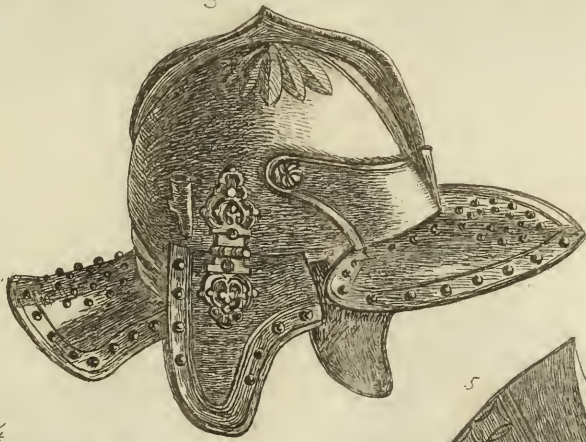
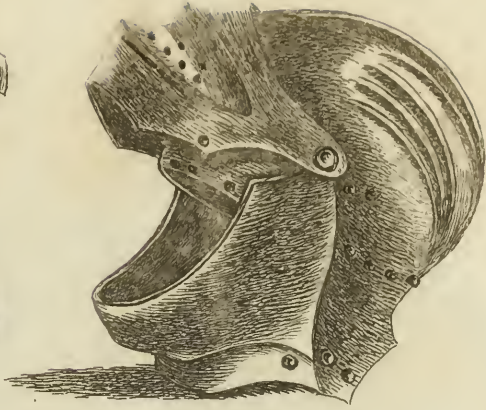
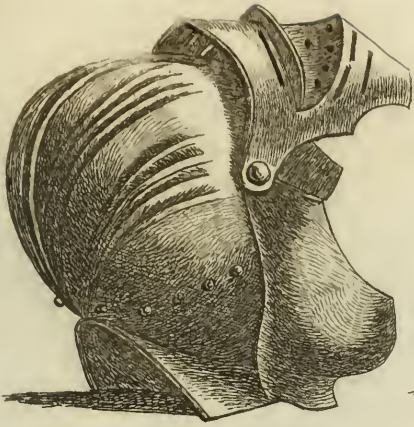
15



16

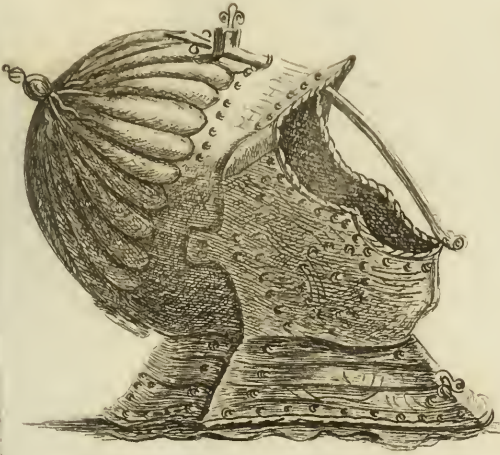








1



2



3



4



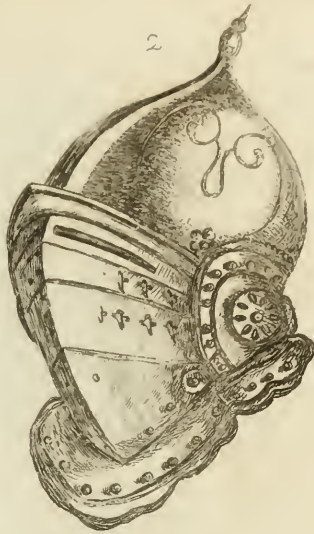




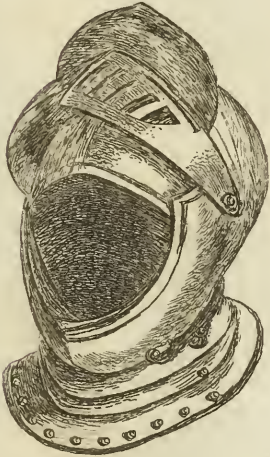
1



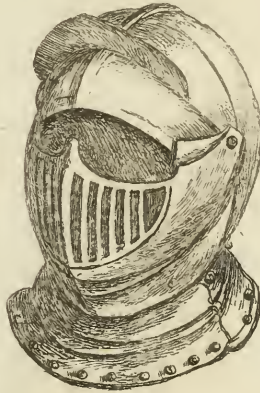
2



3



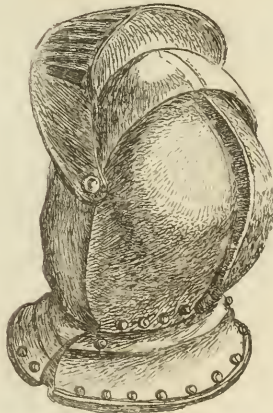
4



5

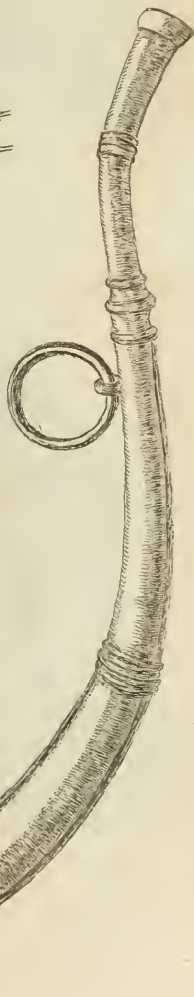
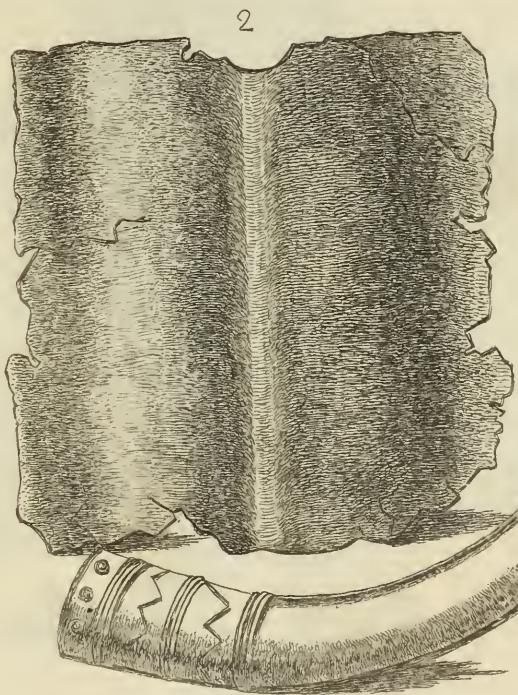
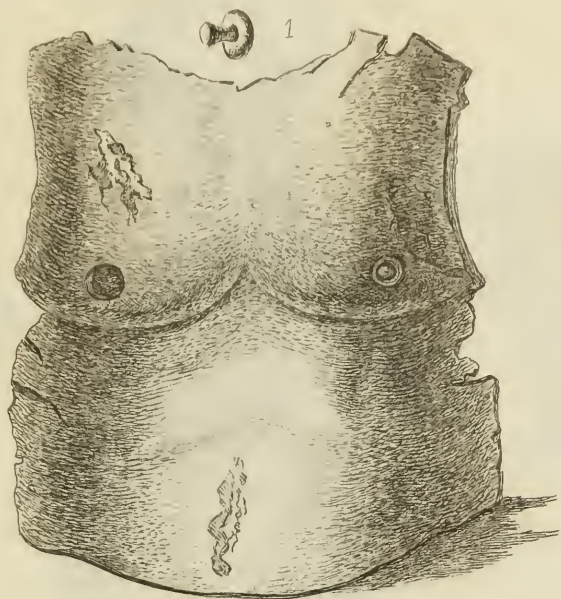


6

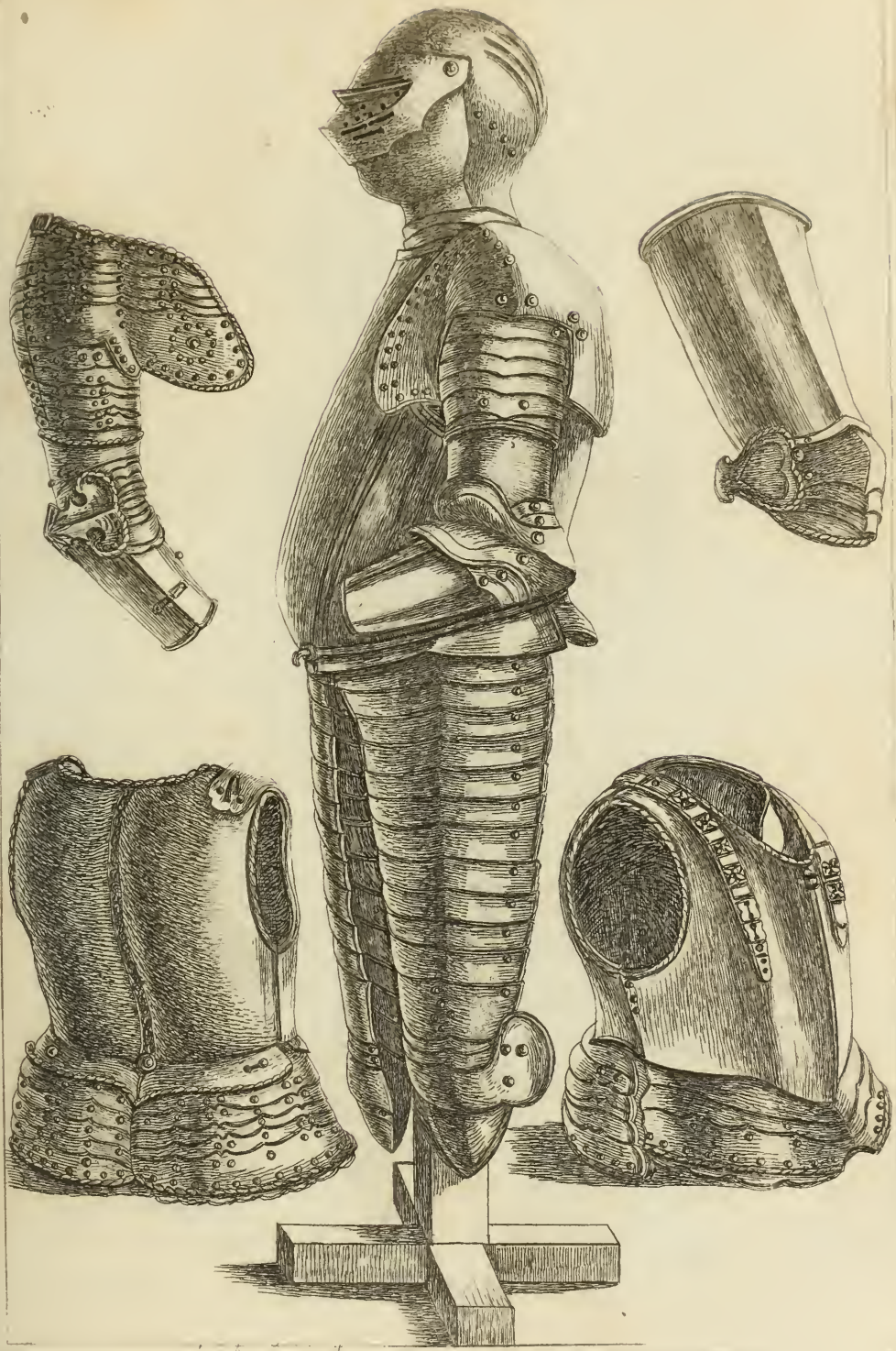




Pl 13

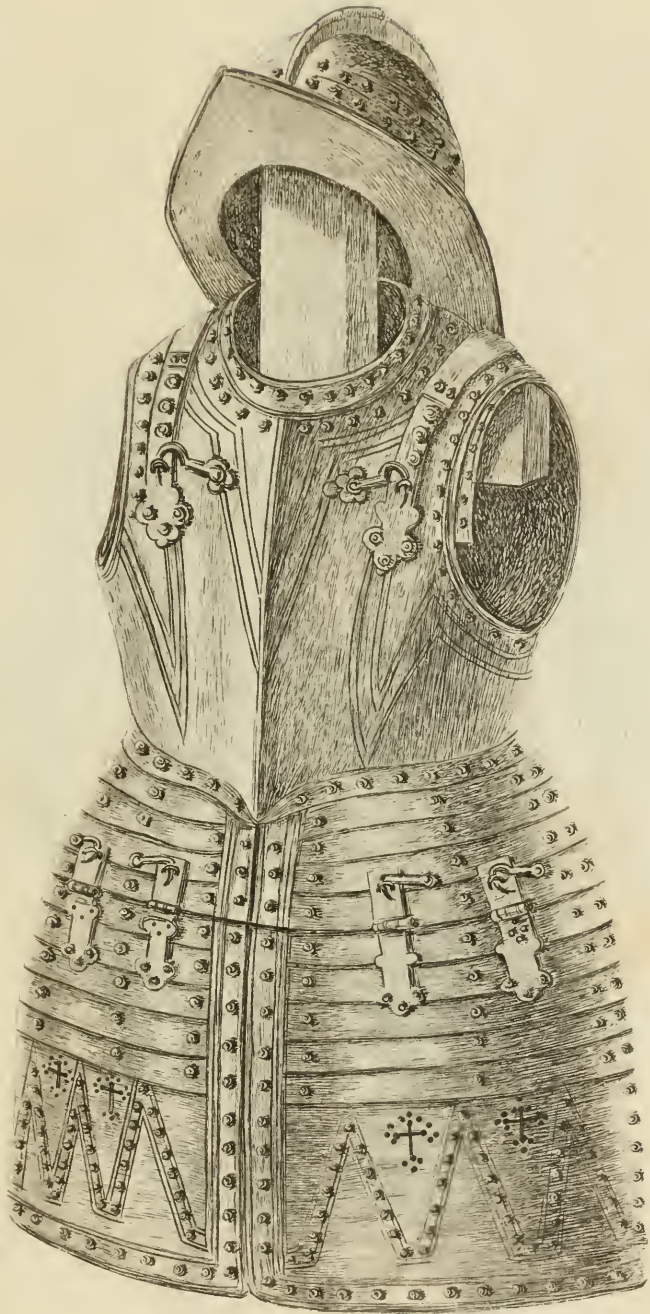






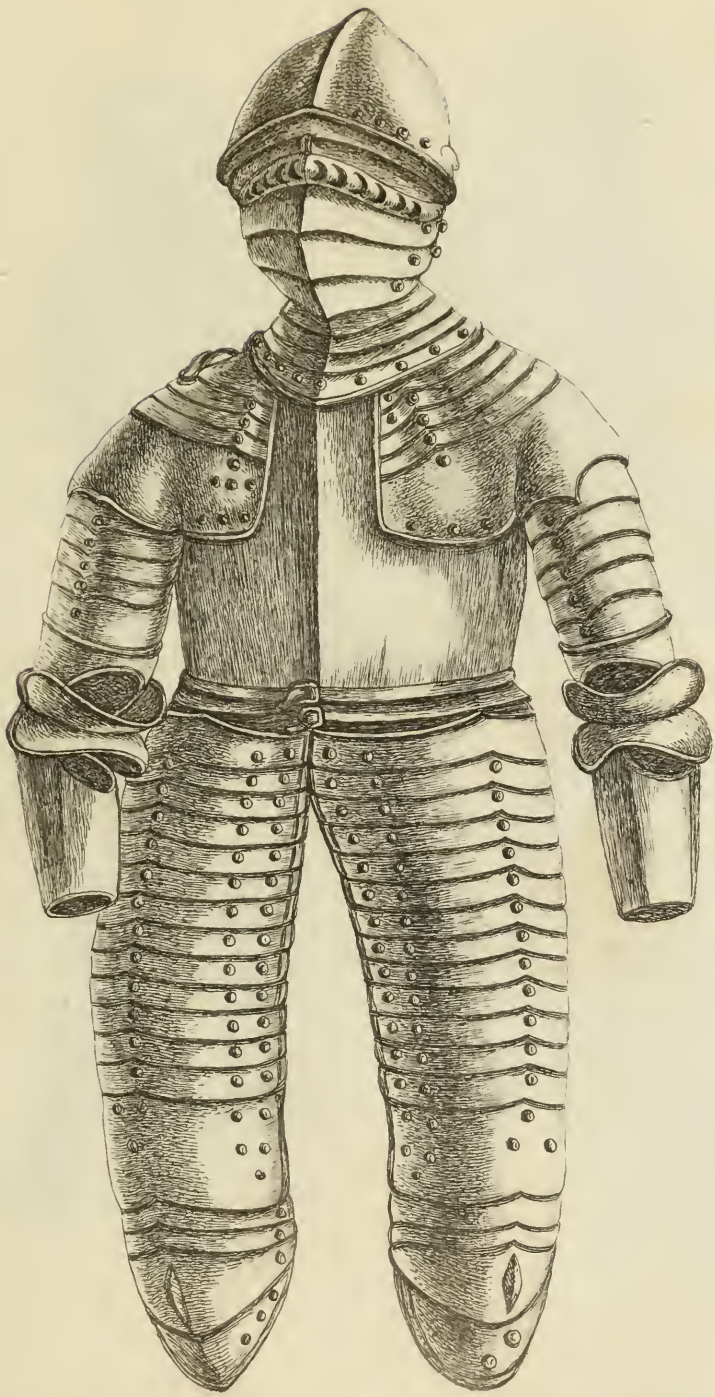


41. 15



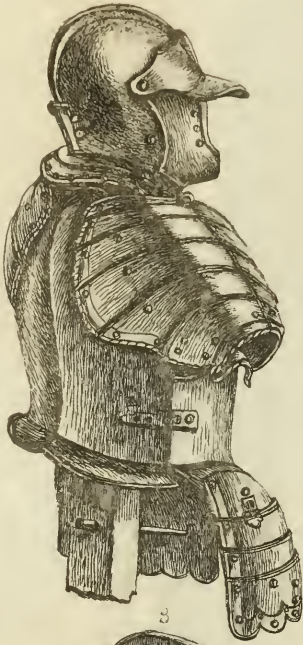








1



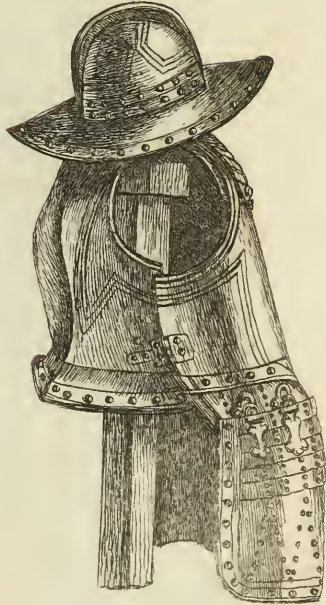
2



3

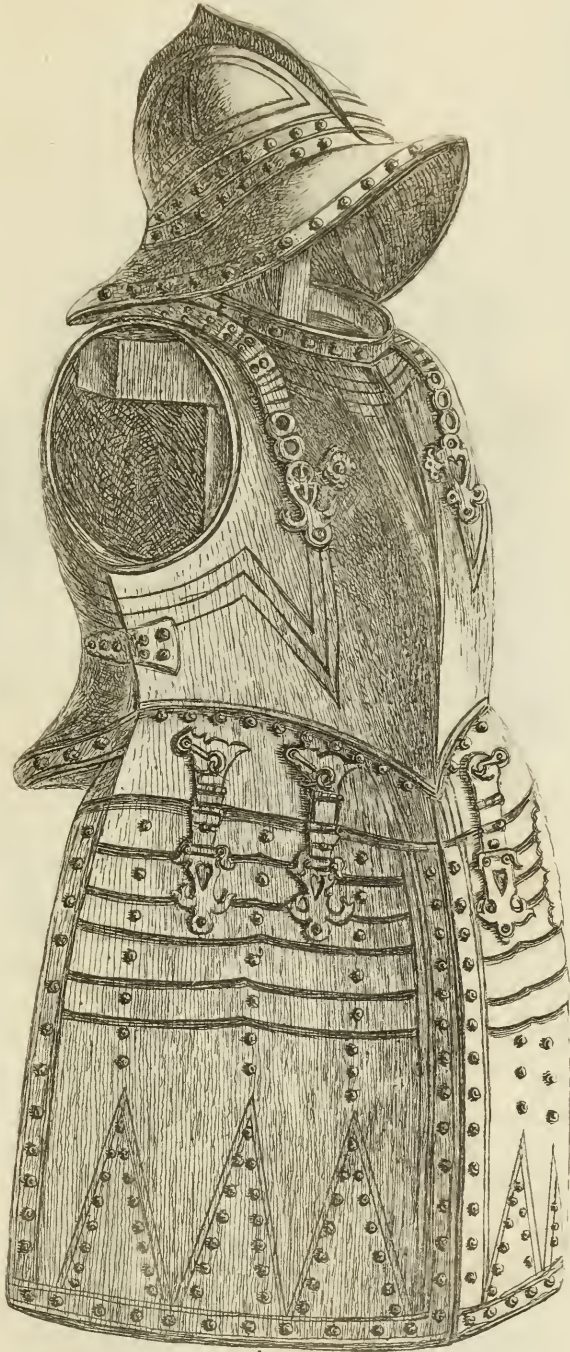


4



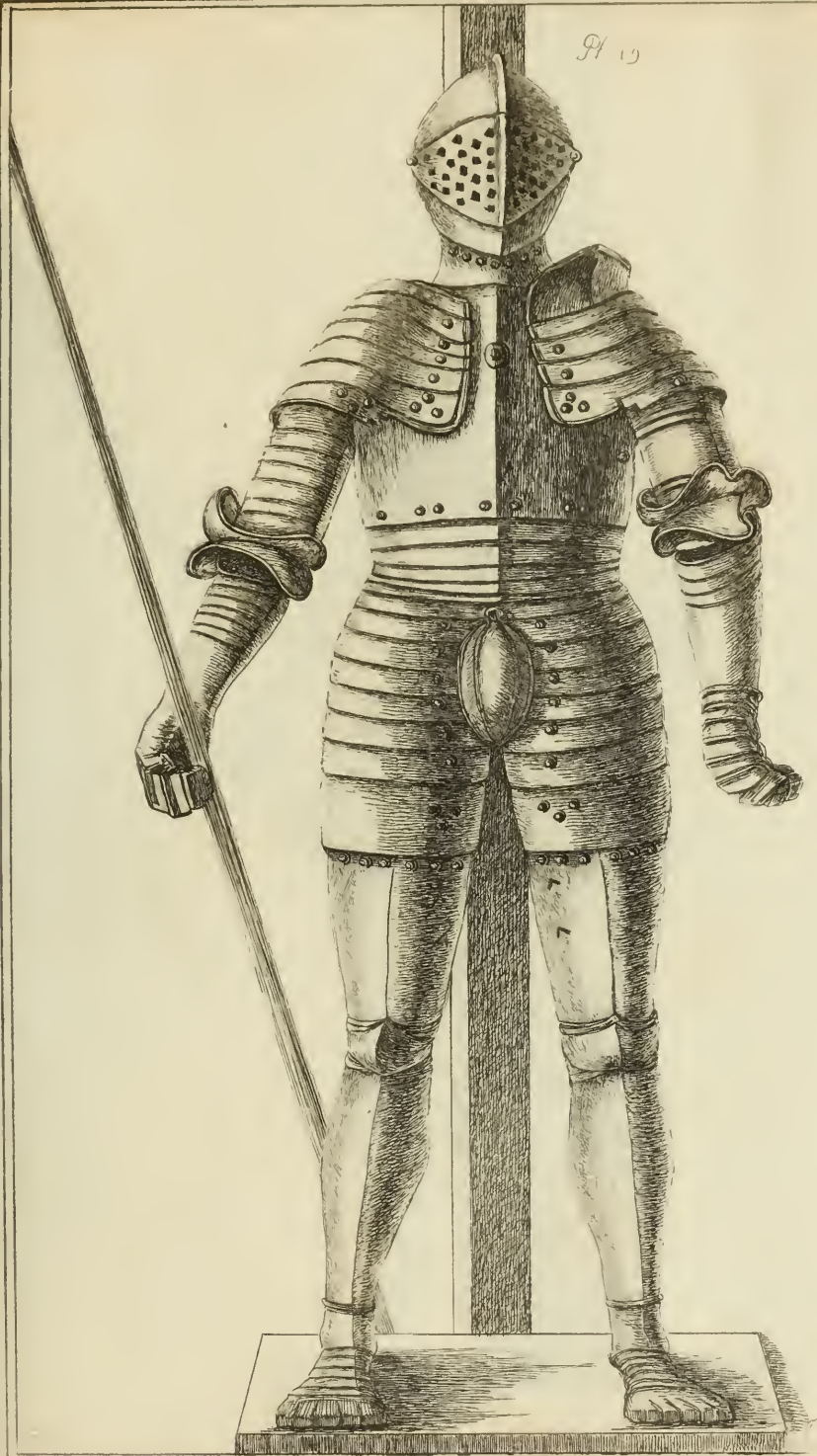


Pl. 12





Pl. 13





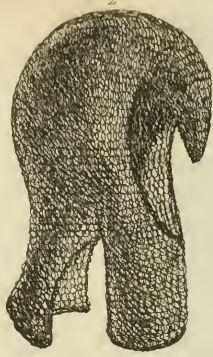


Pl. 20





Pl 21  
8







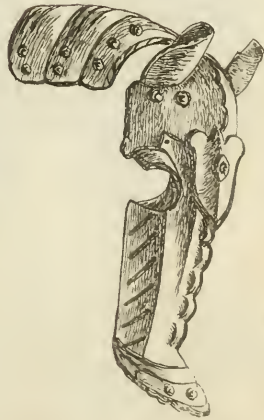
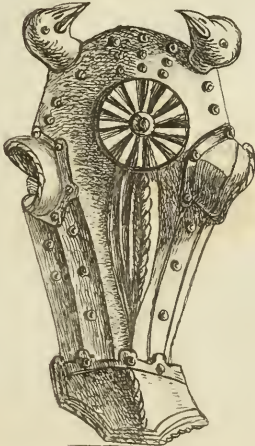
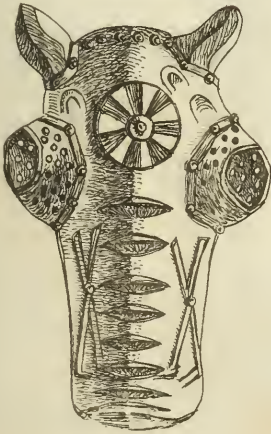
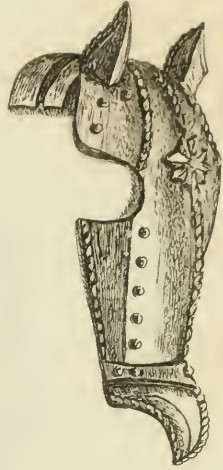
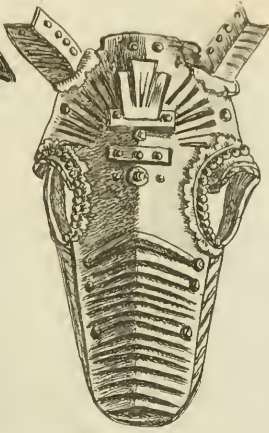








Pl. 24





Pl. 25



London







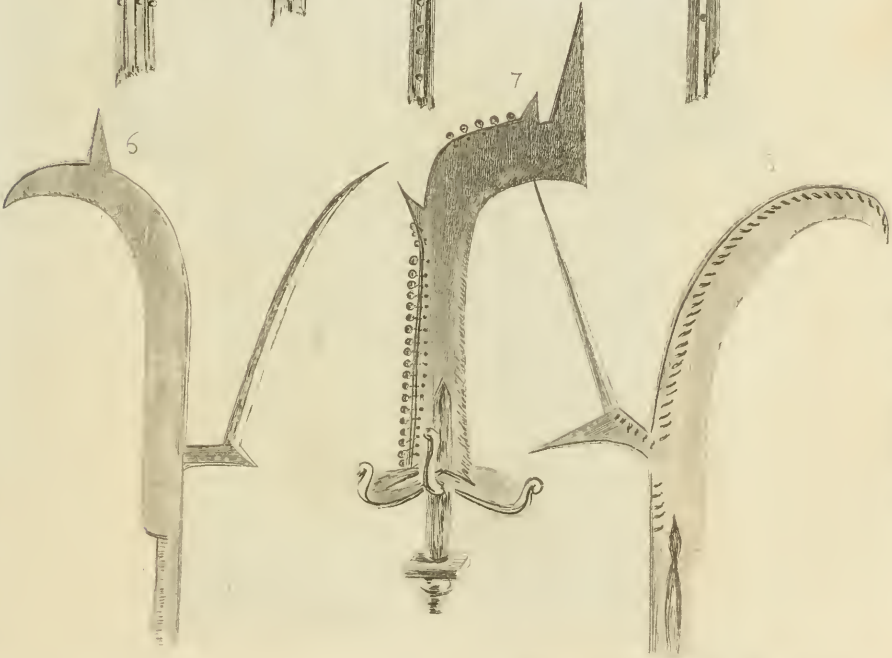
Pl 27



J. Hamilton Sc









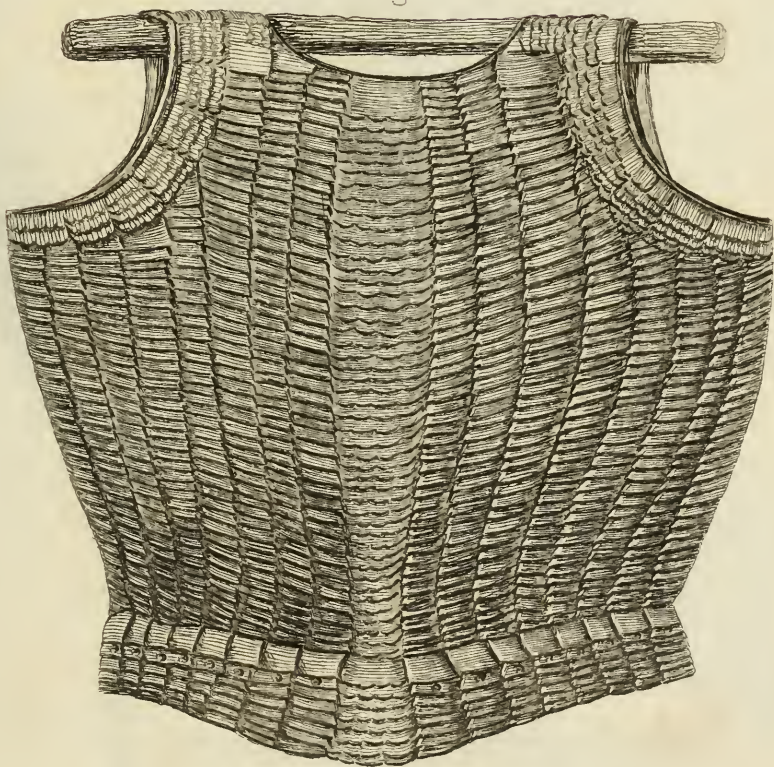


29



J. Hamilton del.

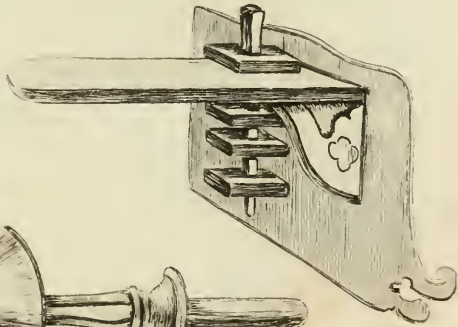
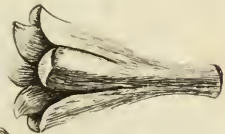
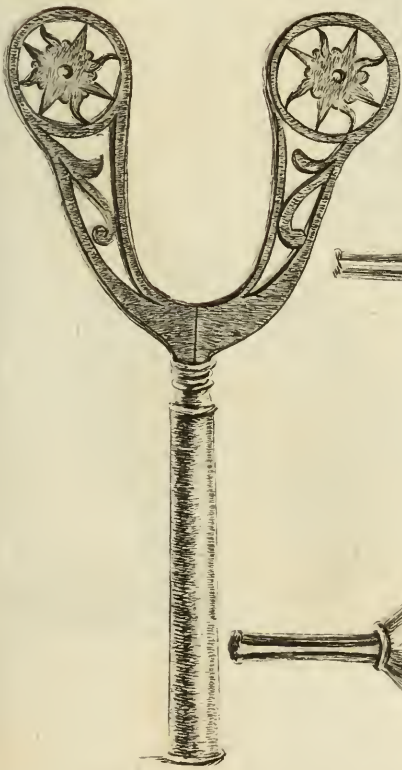
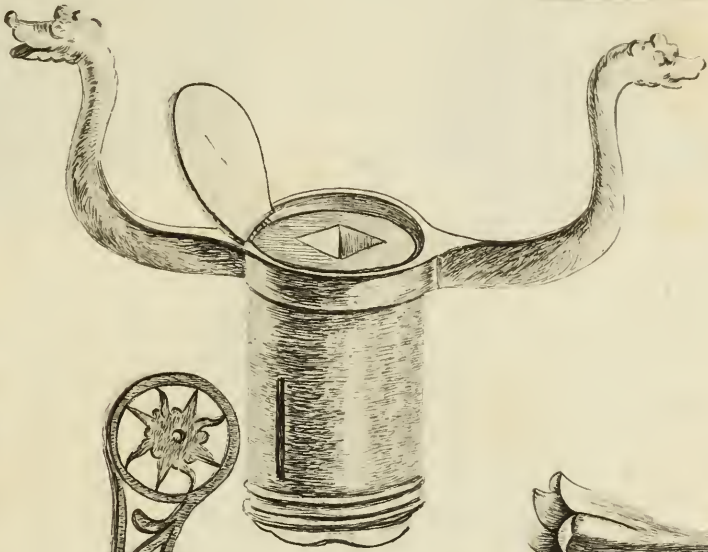
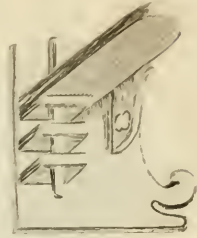




J. Hamilton del.

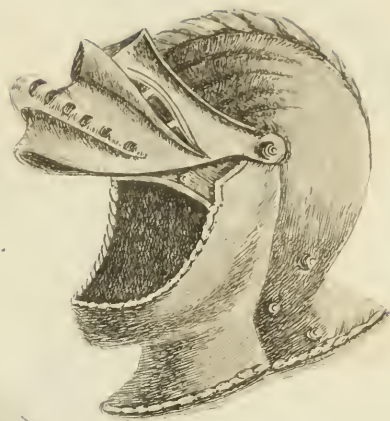


Pl. 37













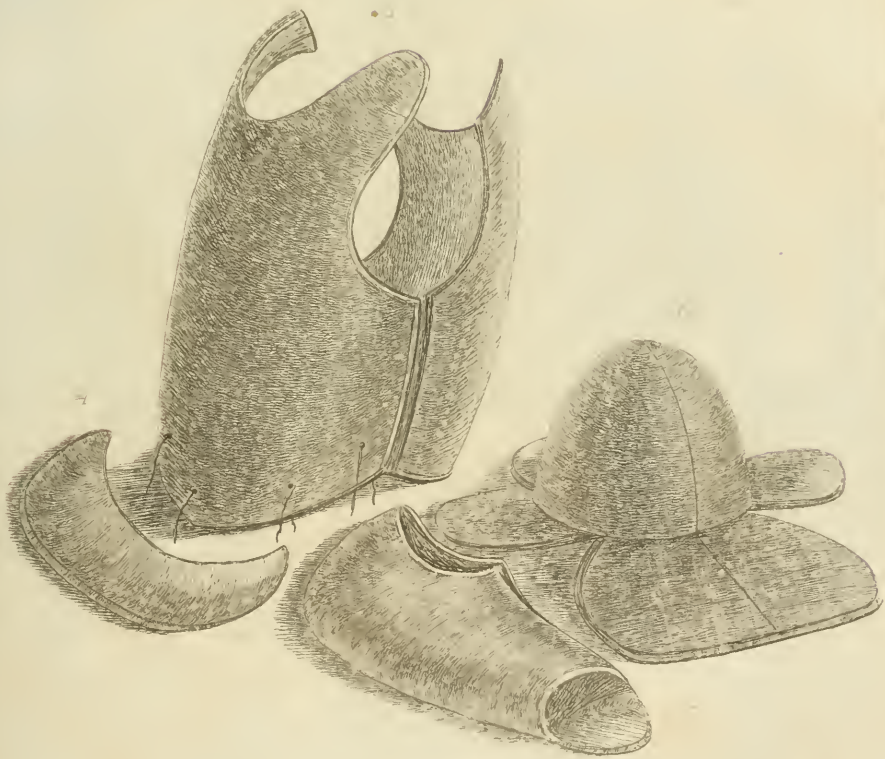


Pl 34



Harrison sc



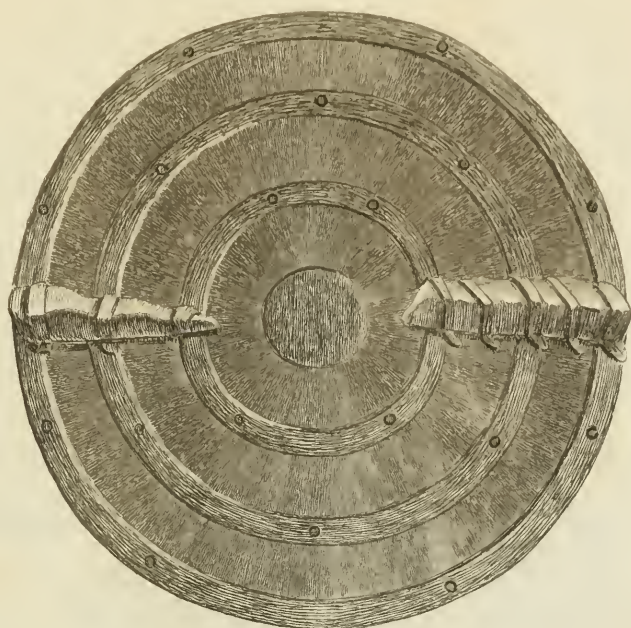




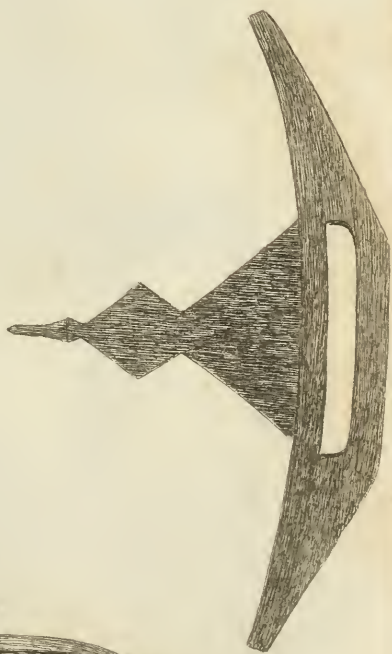
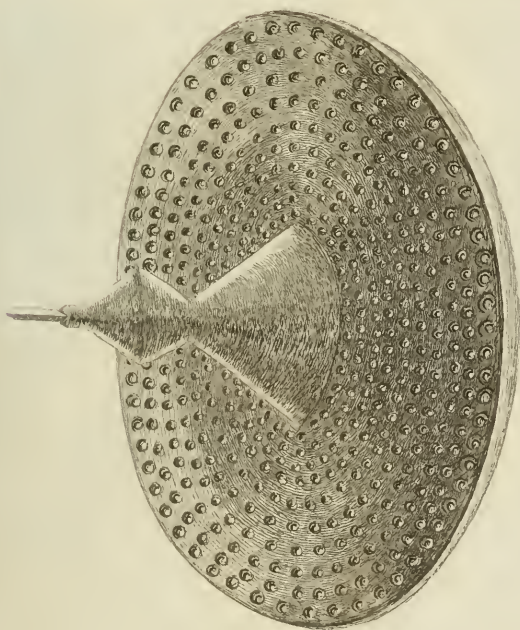








4





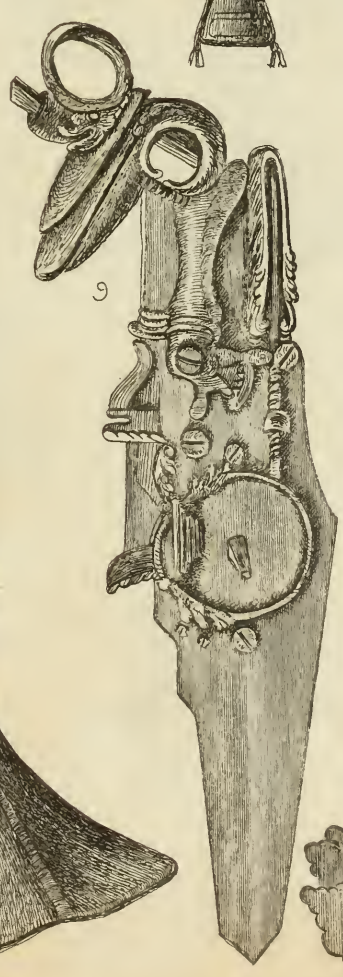
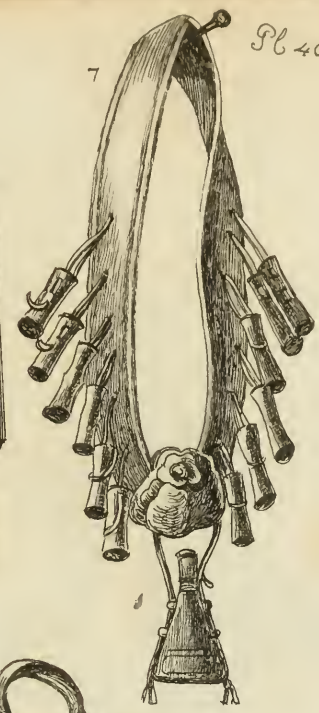








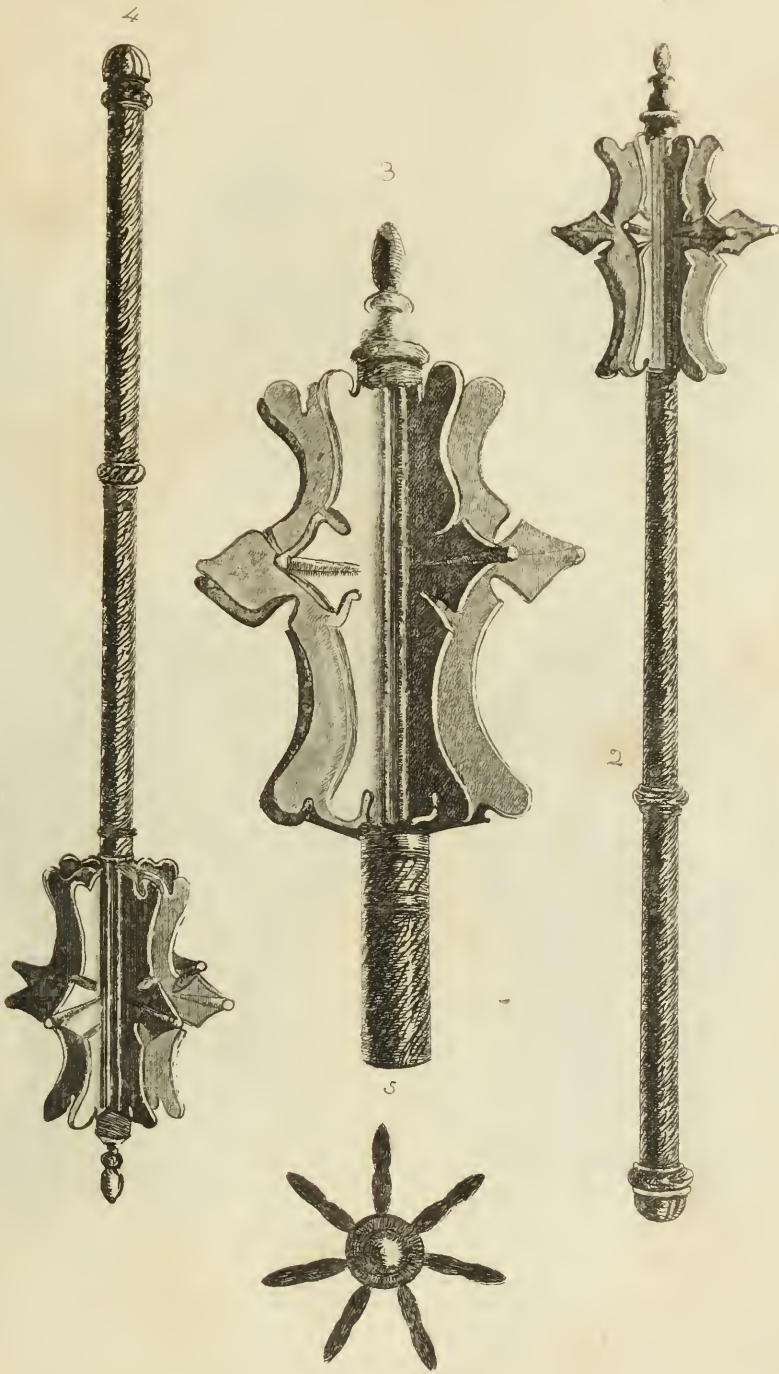




10



Pl. 4.



J. Hamilton Sc.



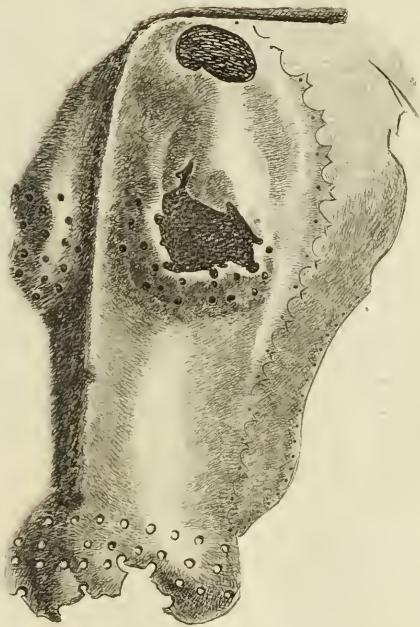
1



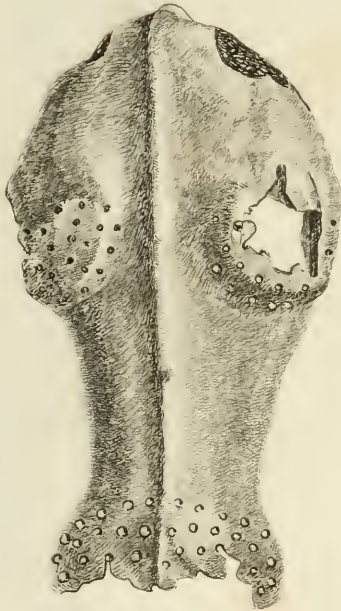
2



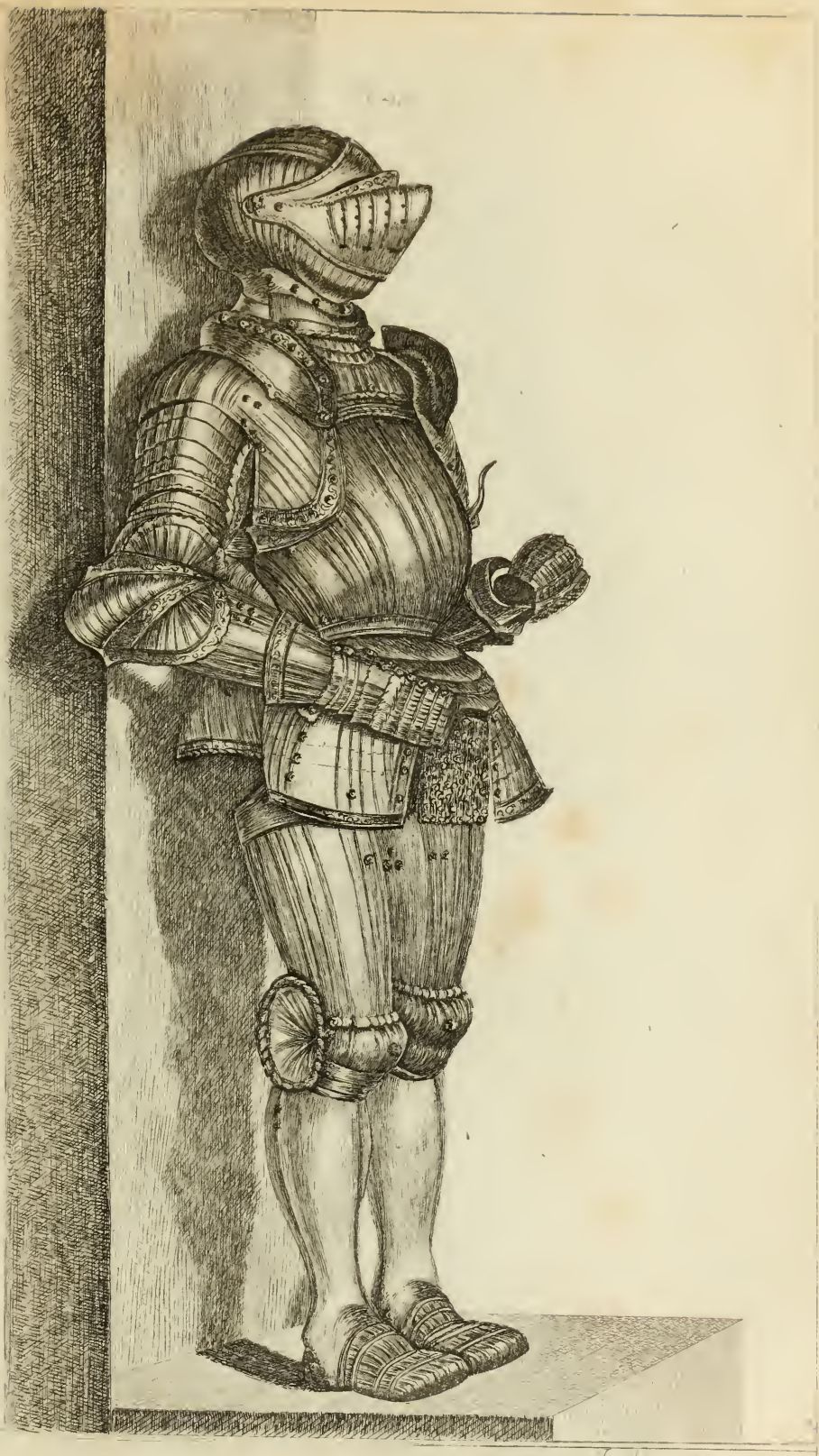
3



4



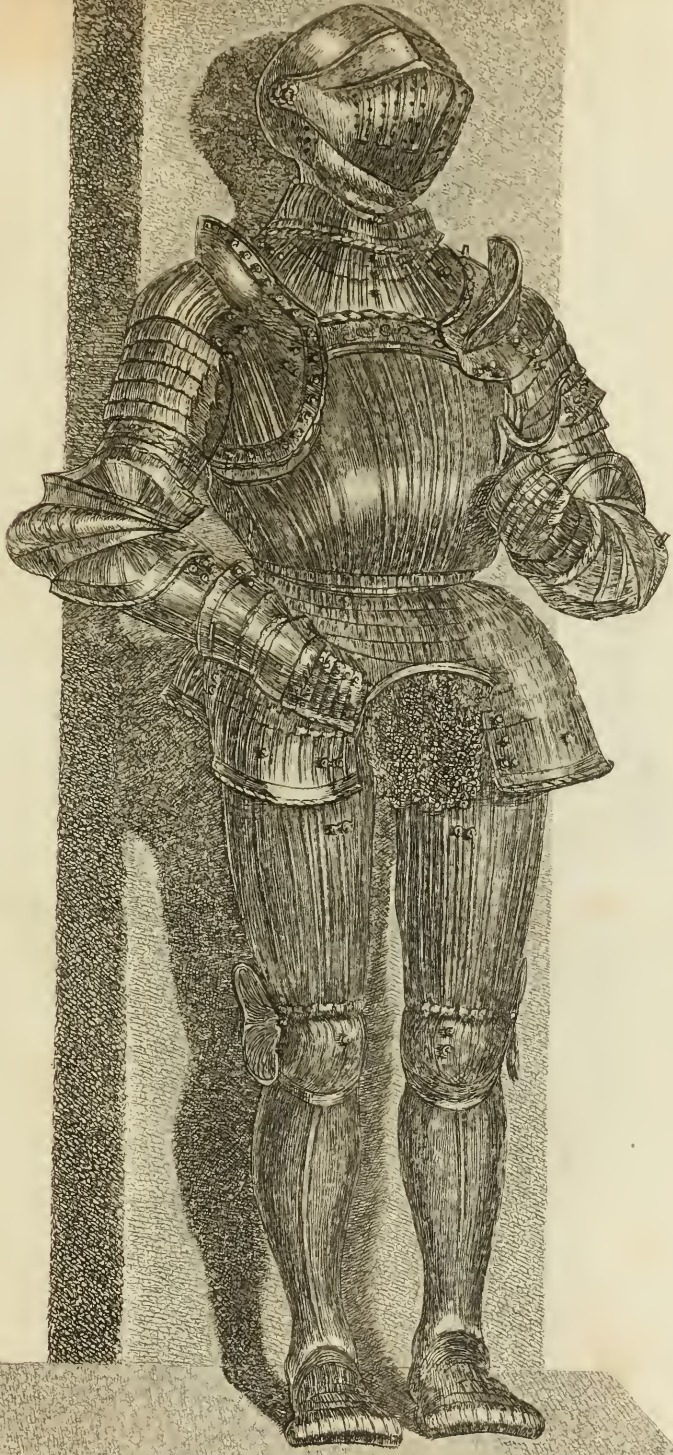








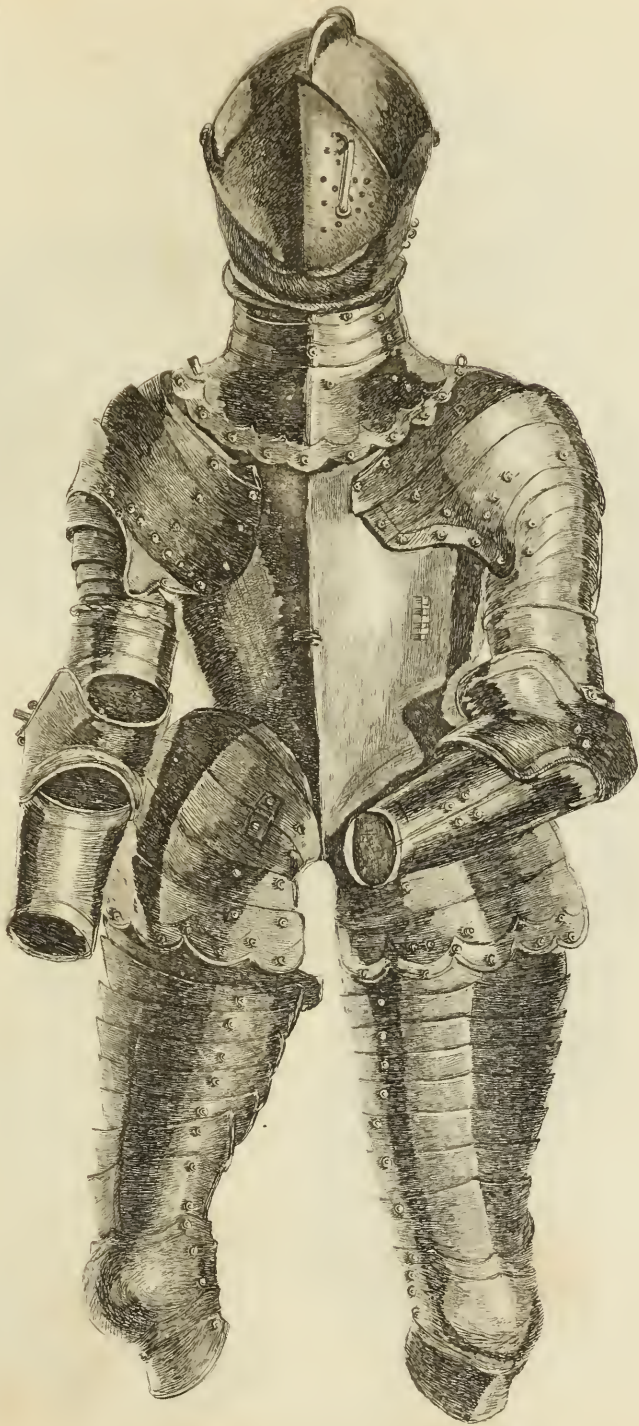
Pl. 44



J. H. ...



Pl. 4.



W. J. ...



57-16





Pl 47

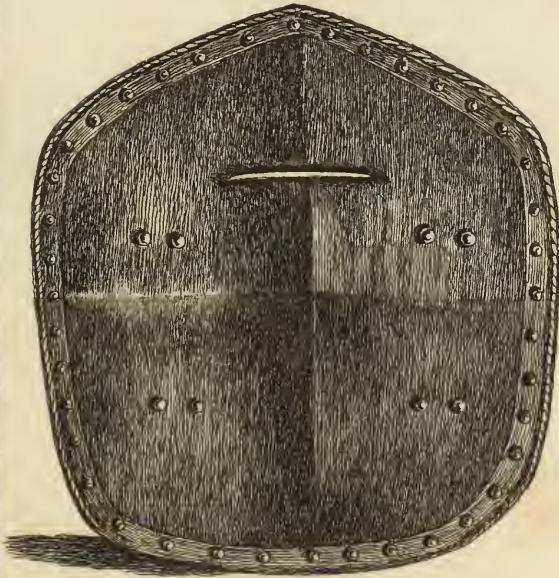
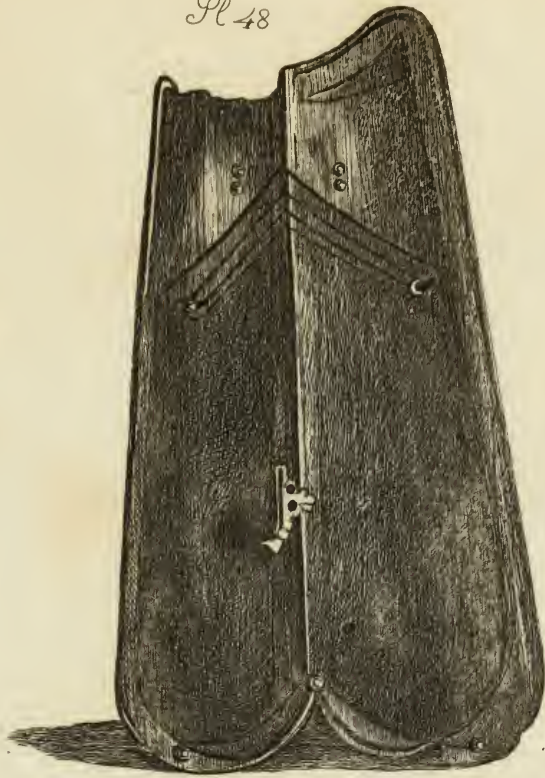
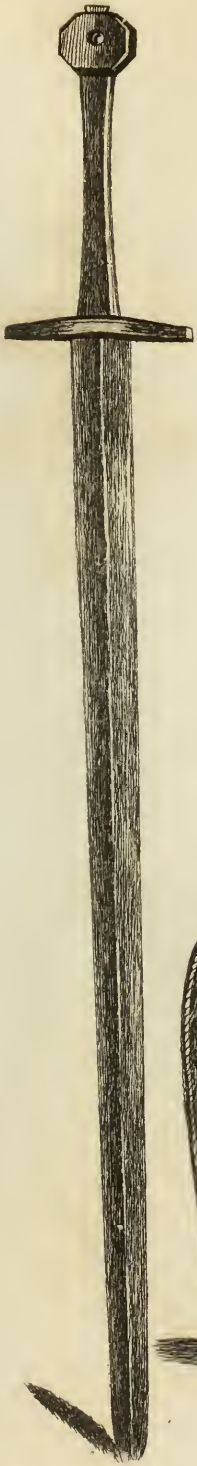


Hamilton Sc





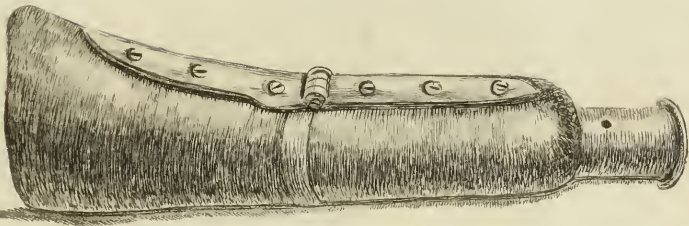
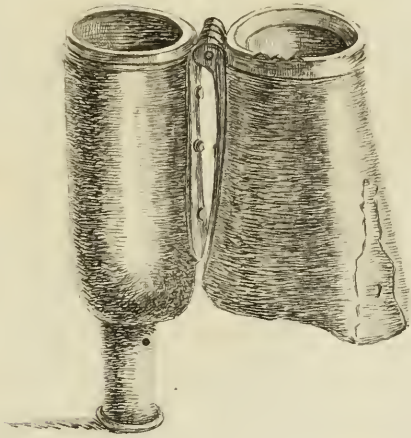
Pl 48



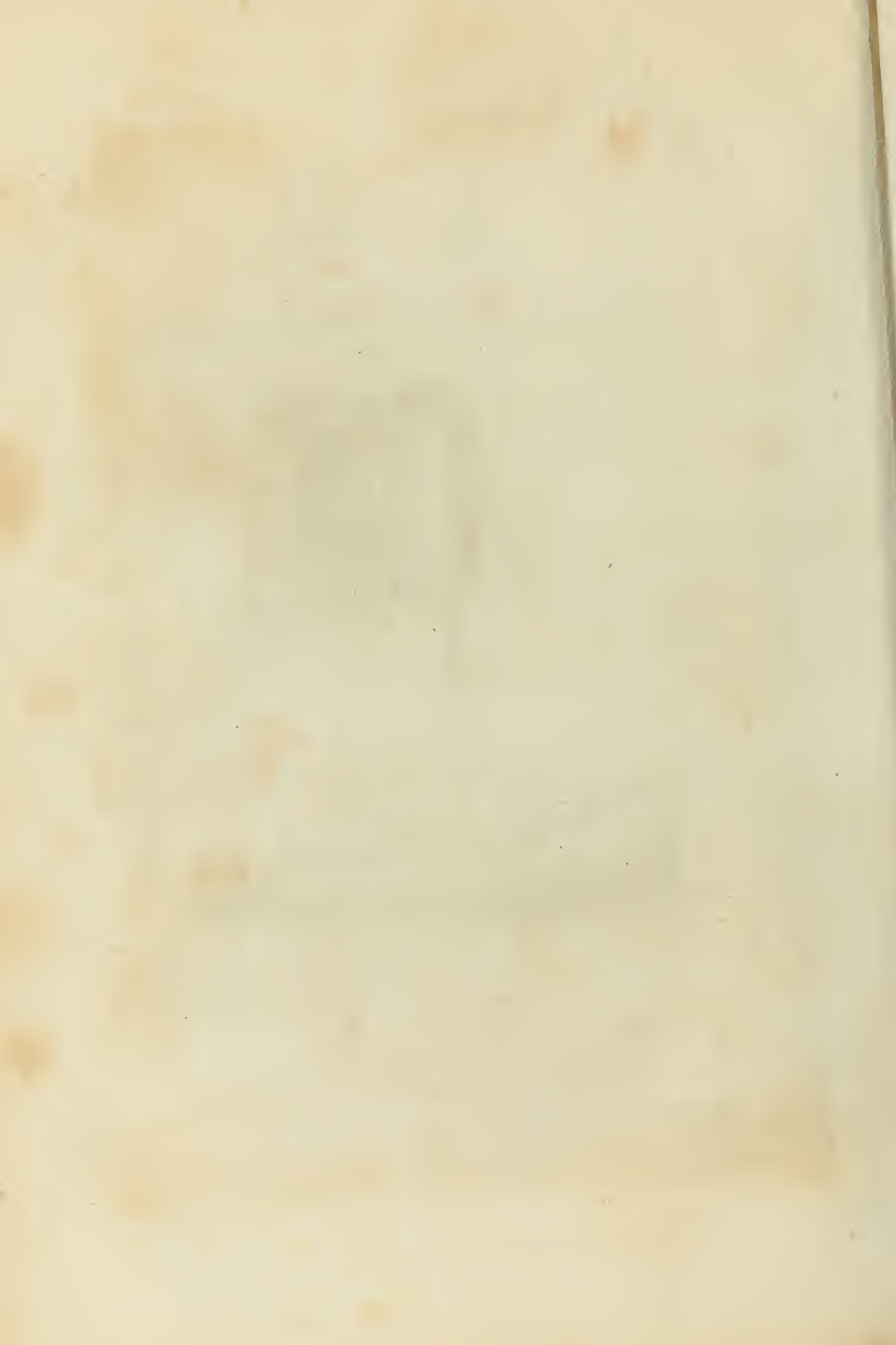
Hamilton



Pl. 49.



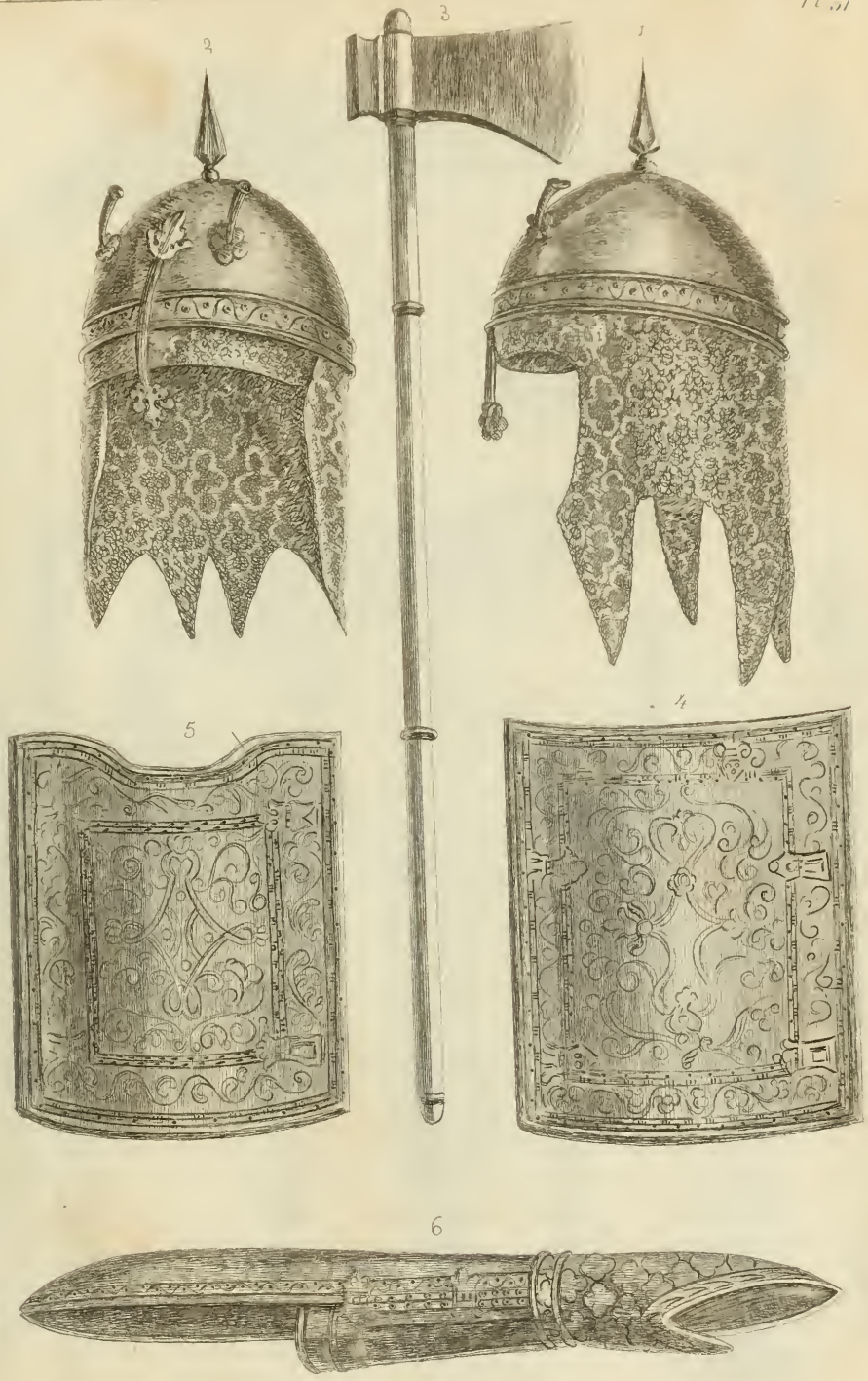
J. Gordon, Sc.





ASIATIC ARMOUR & WEAPONS.

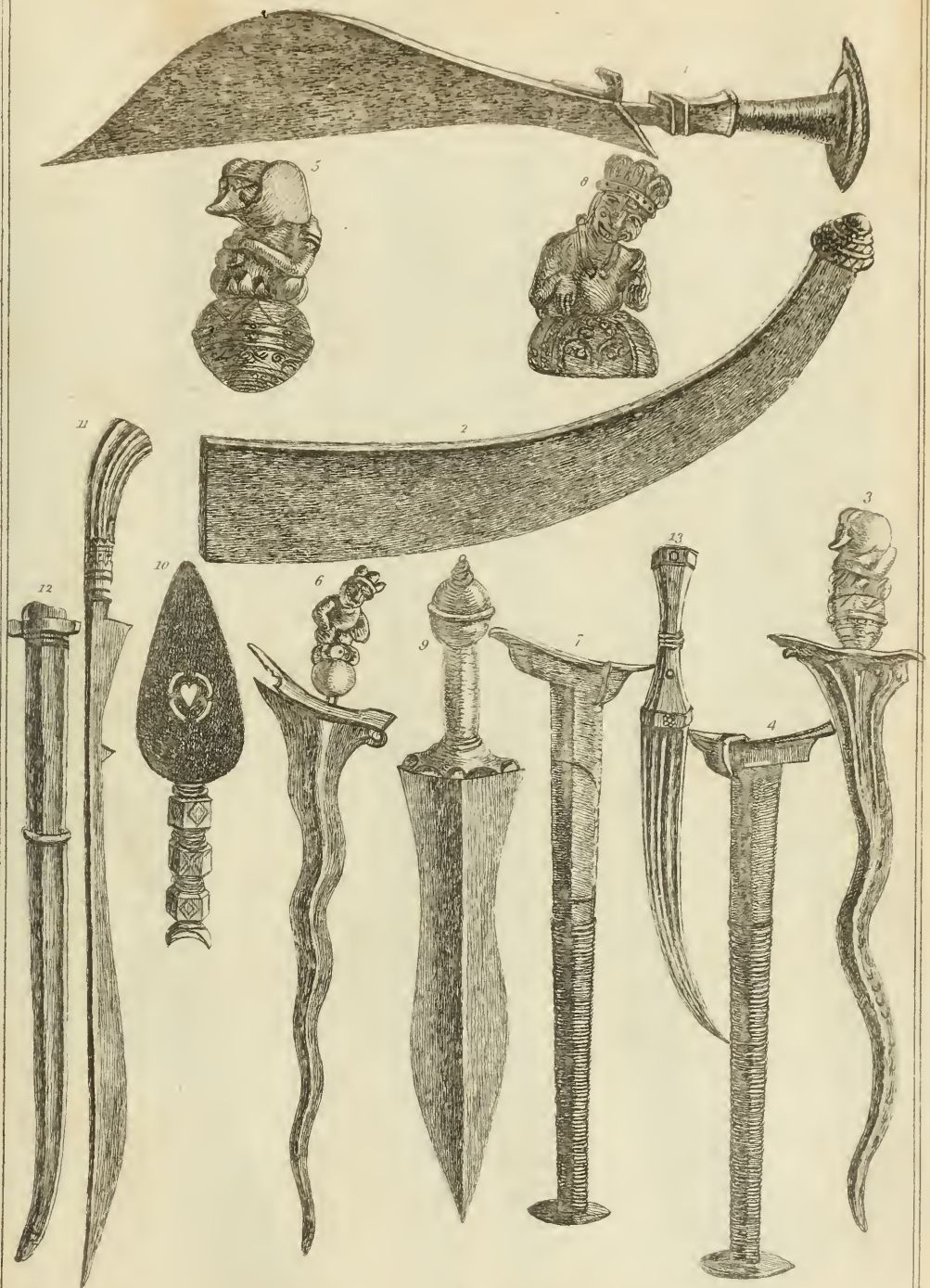




*Asiatic Armour.*







Asiatic Weapons

J. Hamilton sculp.



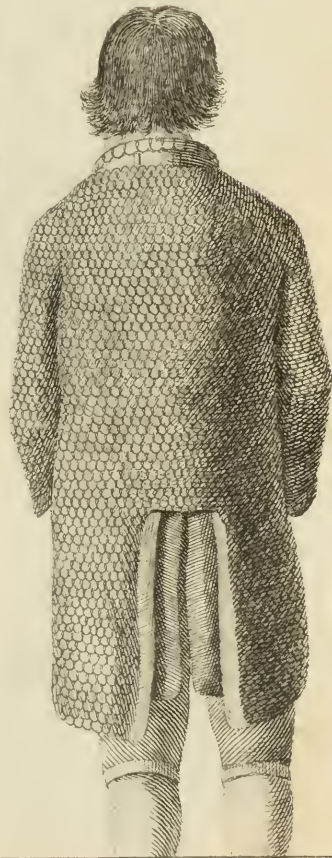
Scale of Two Feet.



Asiatic Arms

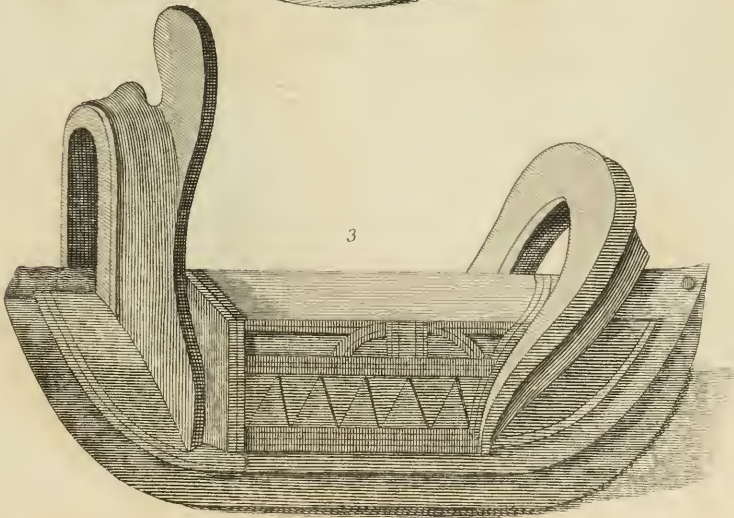
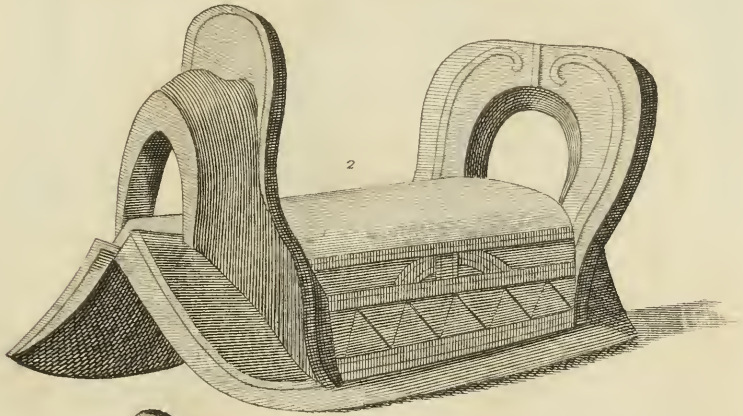
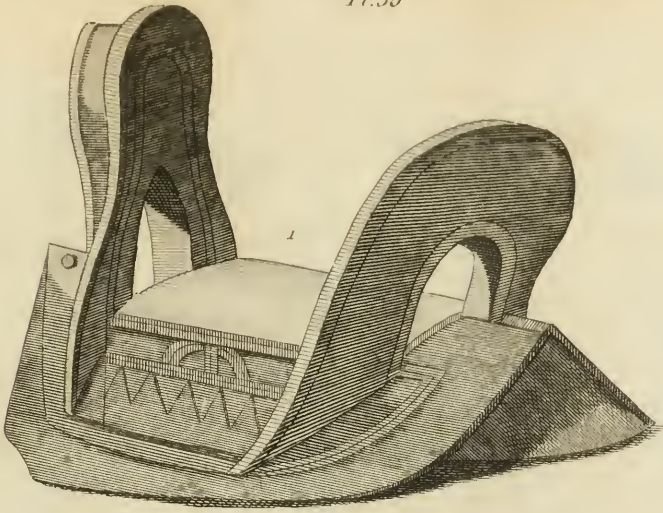
Reyn. Sculp





*Asuttic Armour*

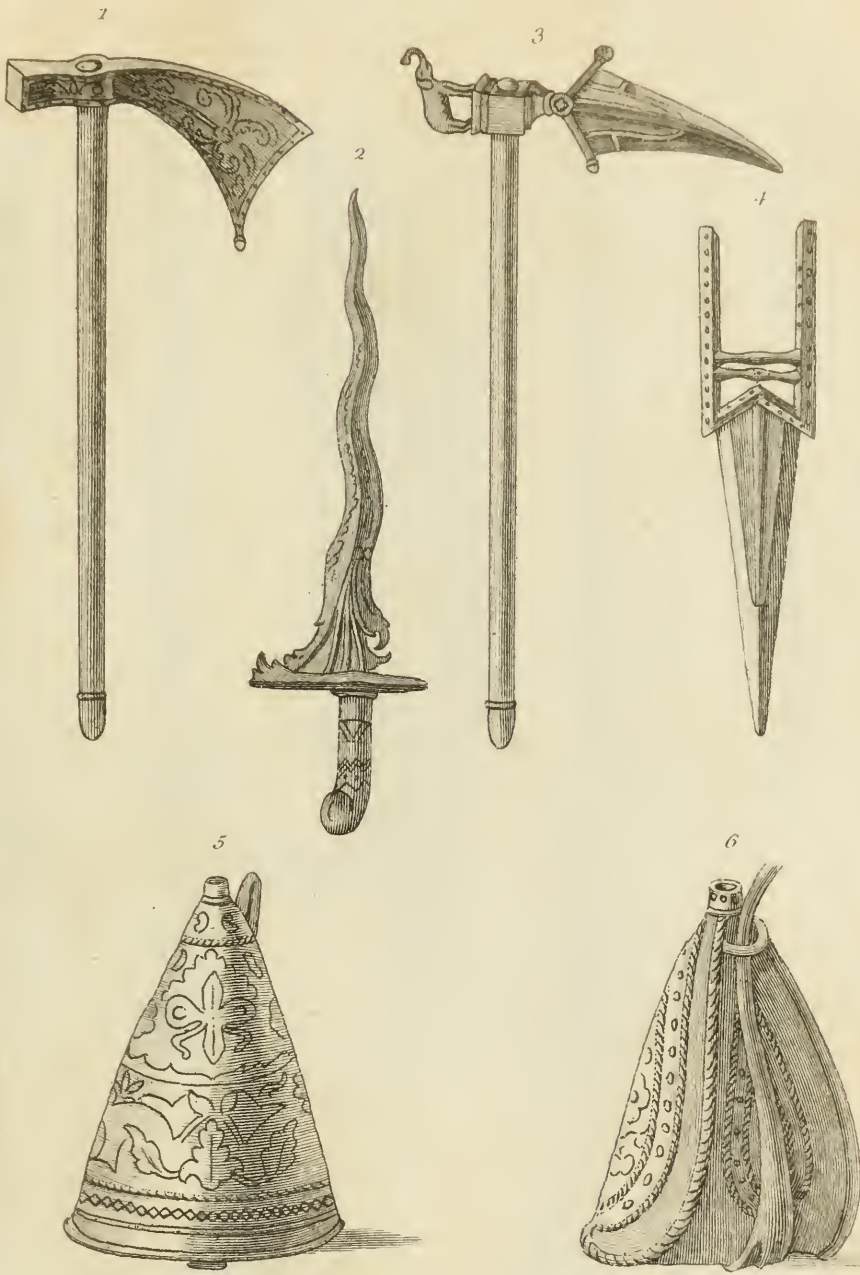




*Asiatie Pack Saddle.*





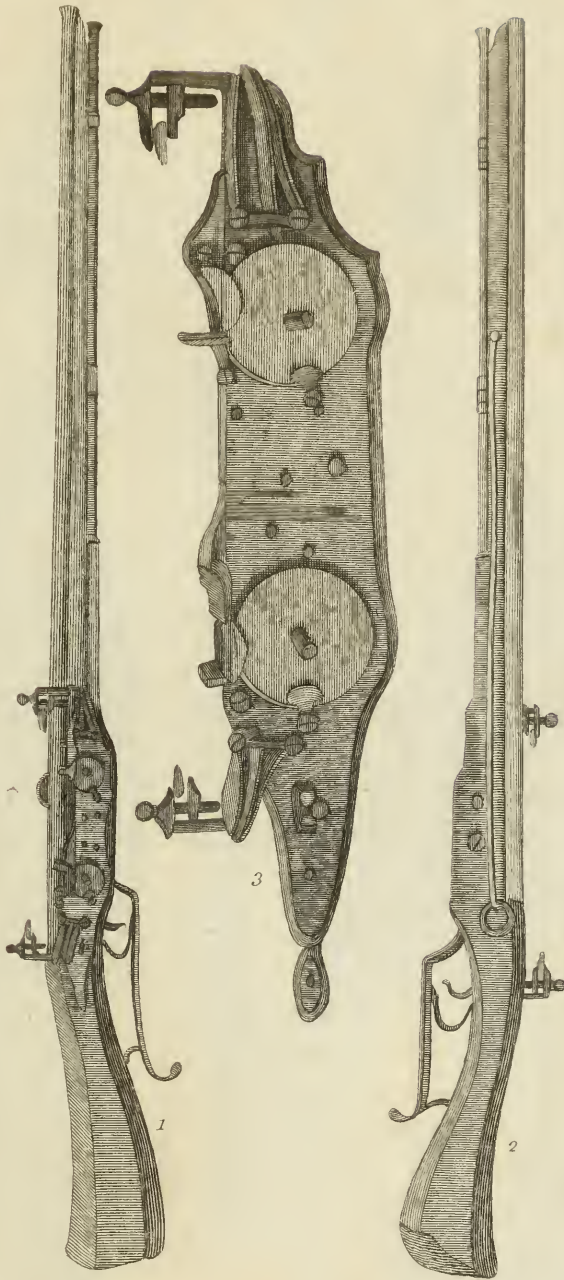


Scale of 2 feet.

7  
2  
3  
4  
Inches



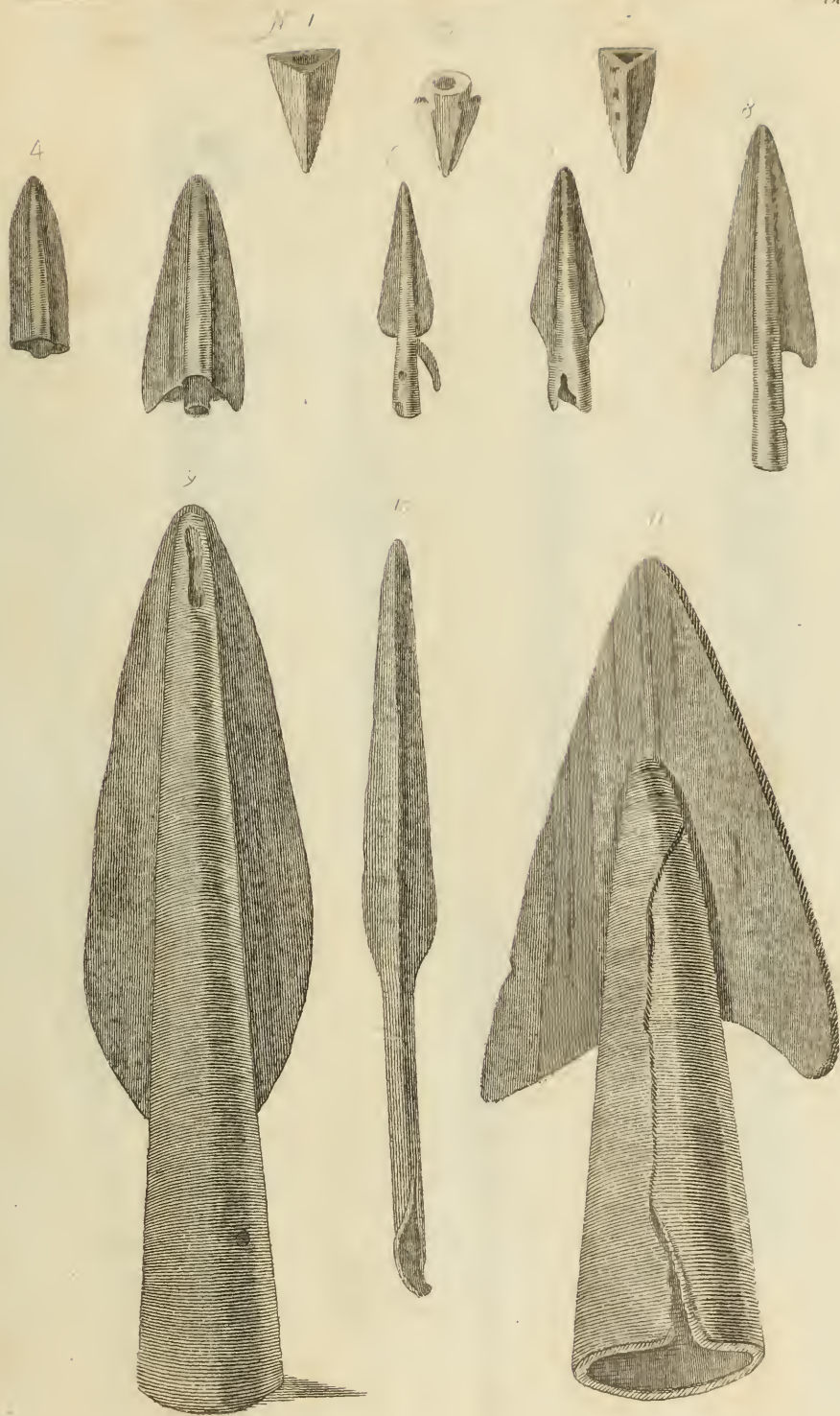
Scale of Feet



*Ancient Carbine*

Crozier, del. Sculp.





*Ancient Dart & Arrow Heads.*

*Revel Sculpt*

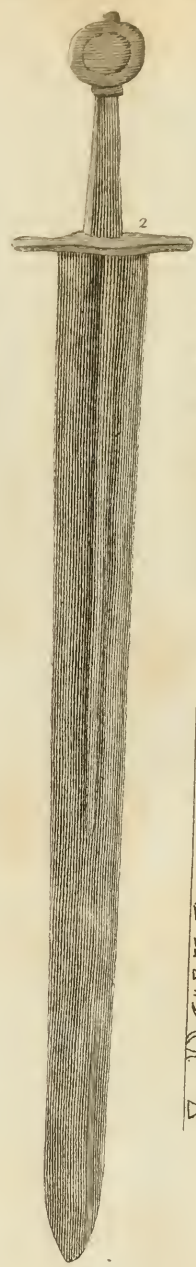
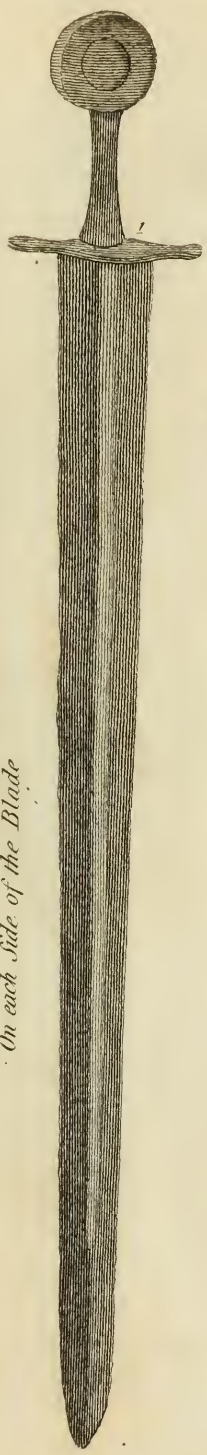


Scale of Two Feet  
6 Inches

Pl. 59

✠ S N E X O R E N E C R O R E N E C R O R E N E C R O R E S ✠

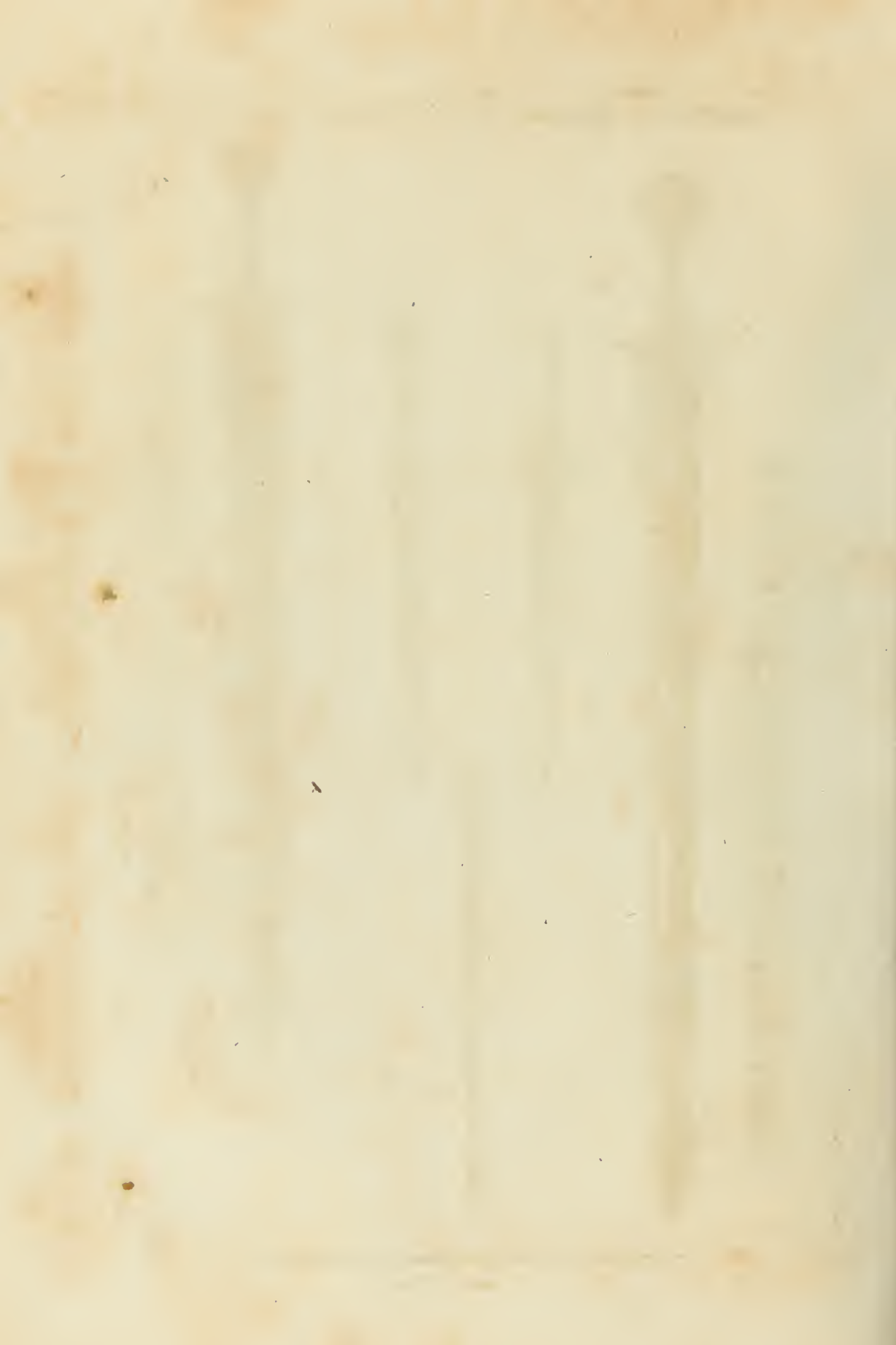
On each Side of the Blade



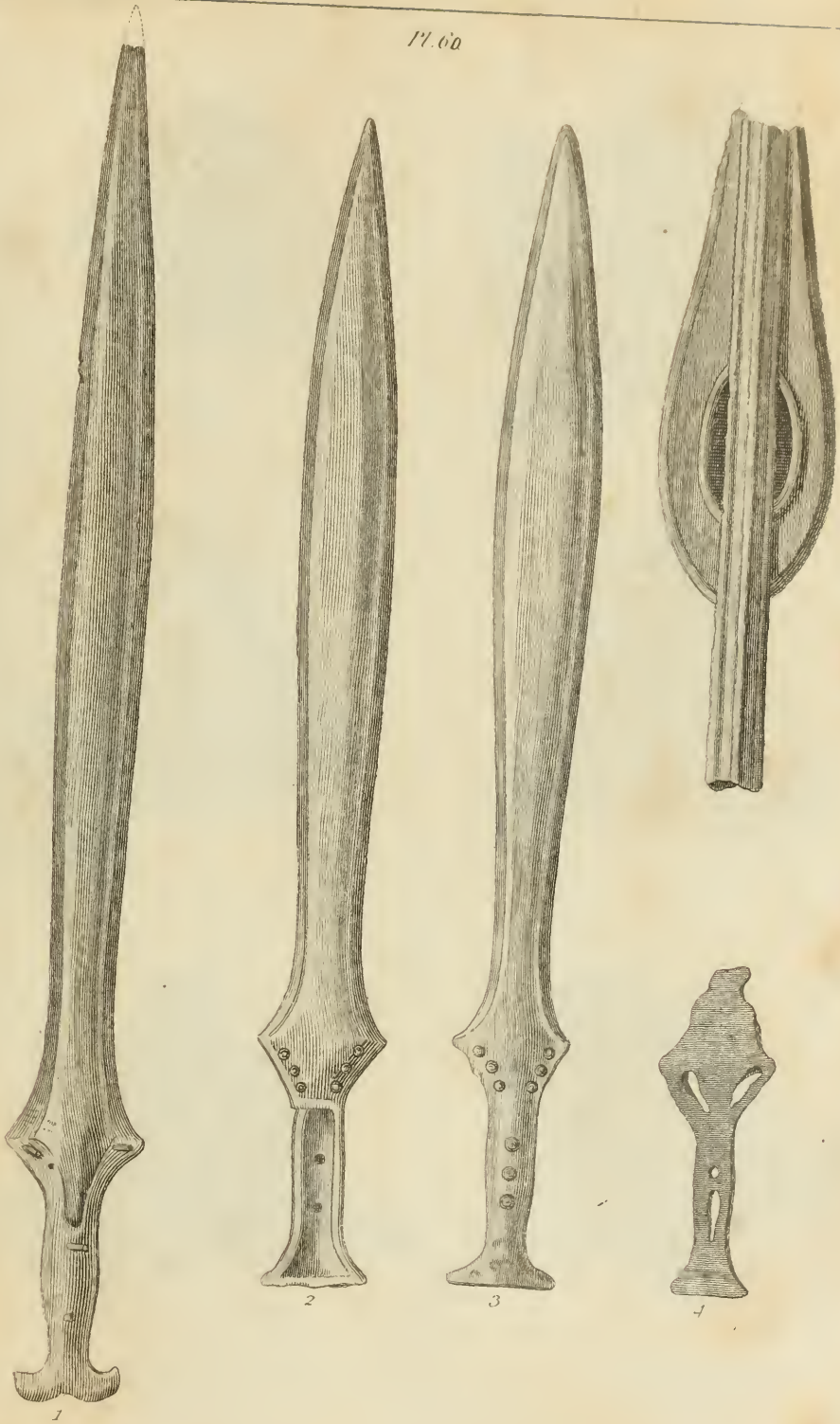
✠ B E I N V E I H V T V S ✠ M E U F E I C C I T

Second Side

First Side







*Ancient Brit's Swords: &c.*

R. 1714 S



1



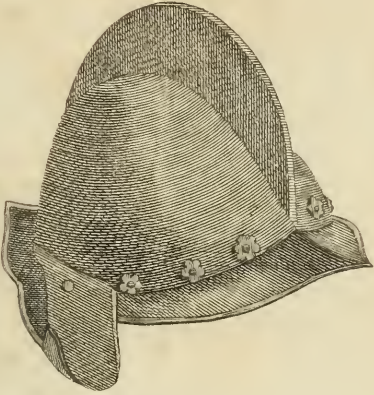
2



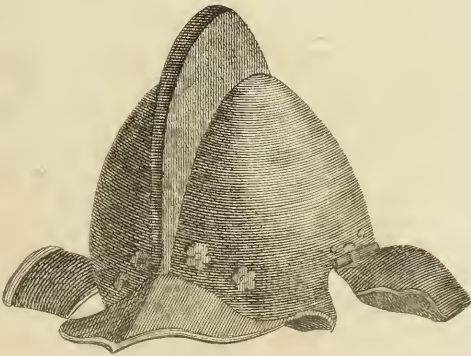
3



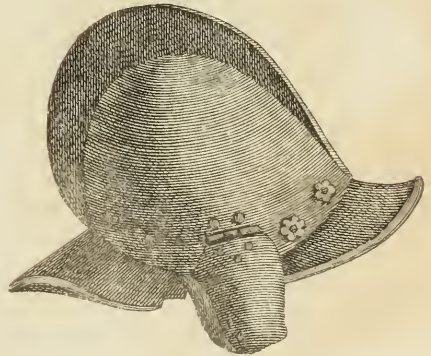
4



6



5





## GENERAL INDEX.

	VOL.	P.		VOL.	P.
<b>A</b> BOE, a cry of the antient					
Irish clans - - -	ii	10			
Abridgment of English military discipline, A. D. 1686 -	ii	29			
Abridgment of English military discipline, printed by especial command, for the use of his majesty's forces, A. D. 1686 -	ii	72			
Account of Roger de Waltham, keeper of the great wardrobe, temp. Edw. II. - - -	i	276			
— of Walter Wentwaght, in the 21st year of K. Edw. III.	i	279			
Act for punishing officers or foldiers, who shall mutiny or desert their majesties' service, 1689 -	ii	73			
Adjutant, or aide-major, his duty	i	265			
Administration of military justice	ii	58			
Agents - - - -	ii	155			
Aketon, defensive armour -	ii	248			
Allowances, or regards - -	i	321			
Almayne ryvets - - - -	ii	250			
— armourers in the pay of Henry VIII. - - -		ibid.			
Anglo-Saxons, their military establishment - - - -	i	1			
Antient armour fell into disrepute in the reign of Q. Elizabeth	ii	322			
Antient cavalry, how divided -	i	179			
— its exercise -	i	363			
			Antient cross-bow, described by		
			Father Daniel - - -	ii	286
			Antient encampment - - -	ii	11
			Antient ensigns, of different kinds	ii	51
			Antient mode of assembling the national forces - - -	i	65
			Antient musketeer - - -	ii	121
			— his duties and the manner of performing his exercise		ibid.
			Apothecaries to the forces -	i	241
			Arbalist, or cross-bow - - -	i	148
			Archer, Chaucer's description of one in his time - - -	i	139
			— description of one by Ralphe Smithe - - - -	i	140
			— Chaucer's description of one in his day - - - -	ii	271
			— description of one in the time of Queen Elizabeth - - -	ii	272
			Archers protected from cavalry, by long stakes pointed at both ends	ii	273
			Arms offensive and defensive of the old militia - - - -	i	26
			Armin, an ornament for a pike	ii	278
			Armour and weapons ordered to be used after the restoration -	ii	338
			Armourer, that profession now totally extinct - - - -	ii	343
			Armour to be kept by persons of different estates - - -	ii	316

GENERAL INDEX.

	VOL.	P.		VOL.	P.
Army, new modelled at the revolution - - - -	i	64	Assessment of counties for the militia - - - -	i	28
— of K. Edw. III. before Calais, its establishment and pay -	i	278	Authority exercised by the naval officers over the land-forces, when in king's ships - - -	ii	78
Arraying and mustering, method of	i	178	Avenues defended by a chain	ii	4
Arrows - - - -	i	137	Axes, such as battle-axes, pole-axes, &c. divers representations of them - - - -	ii	285
— account of them - -	ii	269	B.		
— shot from muskets - -	ii	343	Bacinet - - - -	ii	241
Articles of war after the revolution	ii	62	Bacon, Friar, his account of gun-powder from Marcus Græcus	i	394
Artillery company, when first raised - - - -	i	19	Badges, frequently worn by soldiers as a distinction - - -	i	324
— its history - - - -	i	143	— mistake occasioned by them at the battle of St. Alban's	ibid.	
— improvements made in it, in the time of Charles I. -	i	403	— forbidden - - -	i	325
— late improvement in the science of artillery - -	i	410	Baggage, quantity of, with which our antient armies were incumbered - - - -	ii	311
— first establishment of the royal artillery in England -	i	411	Balifia, description of that machine	i	373
— the quantity used in Flanders, in 1745, and in 1762 -	ibid.		— its use to throw large stones	ibid.	
— its present strength -	ibid.		— how made - - -	i	375
— horse artillery - -	i	412	— how worked - - -	i	377
— royal, an account of this corps - - - -	ii	211	— different kinds of Balifias and Catapultas used by the antients - - - -	i	379
— arrayers or muster-masters of the troops - - -	i	178	— their power and range -	i	380
— used in England, from the time of Edw. III. - -	i	402	Ballad, made on the victory of K. Edw. III. over the Scots -	ii	41
— purchased from abroad till the time of Henry VIII. -	ibid.		Ballium or bailey, outer and inner in ancient fortification -	ii	3
— various sorts of ordnance cast then and in the time of Edw. VI. - - - -	ibid.		Balloting for the militia -	i	42
— in order to improve the science of artillery, Flemish gunners introduced by Henry VII. and VIII. - - - -	i	403	Banderoles, ornaments of pikes or lances - - - -	ii	277
— wretched state of that art as related by William Bourne	ibid.		Banderöls, or camp colours -	ii	52
Arundel castle, taken by the parliamentary forces, by means of a petard - - - -	i	409	Bandileers, borrowed from the Dutch, or Walloons -	ii	293
			Bands of music, and their instruments - - - -	ii	50
			Banncret, his pay - - -	i	272

GENERAL INDEX.

	VOL.	P.		VOL.	P.
Banneret, origin of this rank -	i	179	Bishop of Norwich indented to serve		
Bannerets (knights) - -	ii	52	K. Richard II. - - -	ii	309
Banners, their antiquity and use	ii	51	Bishops, serving in and sometimes		
Barbacan, a work in antient for-			commanding armies - - -	i	69
tification, beyond the ditch -	ii	2	Black and brown bills - - -	ii	280
Barbers, or inferior surgeons -	i	242	Black or brown bill - - -	i	123
Barded horses continued to be used			Blowdell's account of an extraor-		
in our armies to the time of Q.			dinary method of throwing stones		
Elizabeth - - -	ii	322	into a besieged town, without		
— or covered horses -	i	104	making use of a mortar -	i	406
Battalion guns - - -	i	411	Boar, a machine used at the siege		
Battle-axes, the different kinds of	i	122	of Corfe-castle - - -	i	387
Battle-axes - - - -	ii	285	Bombards, large cannon for dis-		
Baudricks, or shoulder-belts -	ii	264	charging stone balls of a mon-		
Bawd, Peter, a gun-founder, em-			strous size - - -	i	400
ployed by Henry VIII. -	i	402	— an extraordinary one at the		
Bayle, a space in antient fortifica-			siege of Oudenarde, described by		
tion, on the outside of the ditch	ii	2	Froissart - - -		ibid.
Bayonets of the present form of			Bombs, their antiquity - - -	i	404
French invention - - -	i	162	— Strada's account of them		ibid.
— remarkable instance of the			— Valterinus's history of them	i	405
superiority of the socket-bayonet	i	163	— Improvements in the con-		
— introduction of it -	i	133	struction of them since their first		
— regularly introd. in France			invention - - -		ibid.
about 1671 - - -	ii	339	Bourne, William, his treatise on		
— use of it, when first intro-			the art of shooting - - -	i	403
duced - - - -	i	112	Bow, a weapon of the most remote		
Beats of the drum formerly used by			antiquity - - - -	ii	265
the infantry - - -	ii	47	— different kinds of bows	ii	266
— those in present use -	ii	48	— became the favourite weapon		
Beheading, an antient military pu-			of the English - - -		ibid.
nishment - - - -	ii	103	— rules for the exercise of it	ii	267
Belfreys, or moveable towers -	i	384	Bow-strings - - - -	ii	269
— description of those of the			Bowyers, laws respecting them -	i	137
antients - - - -	i	385	Brabançons, Provençals, Cotterelli,		
— of those of more modern			and Flemings, mercenary troops,		
times - - - -		ibid.	frequently hired by our kings	i	57
— one constructed so lately			Bracers for bow-strings - - -	ii	270
as in the reign of Charles I. -		ibid.	Brassarts, garde bras, or vambraces	ii	252
Bever, described - - - -	ii	240	— vulgarly vambraces -	i	105
Billeting troops - - - -	i	339	Brass drums - - - -	ii	49

GENERAL INDEX.

	VOL.	P.		VOL.	P.
Brazen or copper swords -	ii	262	Cannon, various formations and suc-		
Bricolle - - - -	i	382	cessive improvements of them	i	399
Brigandines, whence they derived			Captain-general of the footmen	i	208
their name - - -	ii	250	—— of the pioneers, the duties		
—— several remaining in the			of his office in the field or camp	i	228
Tower - - - -	ibid.		Captains of halberts, or black bills,		
Broadsword and target, the favourite			their duties - - -	i	124
arms of the Scotch highlanders	ii	303	Captain, the first meaning of that		
Bruce, Robert, his wife confined by			title - - - -	i	181
order of K. Edward I. -	ii	117	—— his office and duties -	i	248
Brugne, the hauberk, sometimes fo-			Carcaffes, a consequence of the in-		
called - - - -	ii	260	vention of bombs - - -	i	407
Buchan, Countess of, confined in a			Carriage-master-general, his office	i	224
cage, by order of K. Edw. I.	ii	116	Cartridge-box, when it superfeded		
Bucklers, or shields, used in affrays			the bandaleers - - -	i	159
and private quarrels by persons in			Casheering, or dismissal of officers		
the civil line, as late as the reigns			admits of three degrees -	ii	109
of Elizabeth, and James I. -	ii	308	Castle, the, a close head-piece	ii	243
Buckler, or target - - -	ii	255	Catapulta, description of that ma-		
Bugle, or bible - - - -	ii	382	chine - - - -	i	369
Burgonet - - - -	ii	241	—— how worked - - -	i	371
Burr, a broad iron ring for a lance	ii	277	Cattus, Gattus, or Cat, nature of		
			that machine and its use -	i	386
			—— castellated cat - - -	ibid.	
			Cavalry officers - - - -	i	266
			—— of the antient armies -	i	100
			—— of the Saxons - - -	i	3
			Celebrated sword-smiths, and ar-		
			mourers - - - -	ii	262
			Chains of iron drawn across streets	ii	4
			Chanfron, Chamfrien, or Shaffron,		
			armour for a horse's head, de-		
			scription of it - - -	ii	259
			Chapelle de fer, iron hat, or chaplet,		
			described - - - -	ii	241
			Charles the First, his commission		
			for surveying the arms, armour,		
			&c. containing many curious		
			particulars respecting the arms		
			and armour of those times -	ii	324
			Charter of King Richard I. for the		

C.



GENERAL INDEX.

	VOL.	P.		VOL.	P.
government of those going by sea			Colonel, whence the name of that		
to the holy land - - -	ii	63	officer derived - - -	i	243
Chelfea-college, or hospital -	ii	88	—— duties of his office -	i	244
—— when originally begun -	ii	89	Colours of the foot, called ensigns	ii	53
—— plan of it - - -	ii	91	Commissaries of musters -	ii	155
Chivalry, feats of, at antient sieges	ii	4	Commissioners appointed in the		
City trained-bands, their origin -	i	145	reign of King James the First,		
—— account of them -	i	146	to try military offences -	ii	61
Clergy, not exempted from performing military service -	i	5	Constable, his pay and allowances	i	271
—— of all denominations directed by the king's writ to be arrayed, armed, and regimented -	i	67	Constables and constabularies -	i	179
—— their livings assessed to find armour - - - -	i	76	Constitution of King John -	ii	62
—— Queen Elizabeth ordered the bishop of Chester to contribute to the raising of horse for the assistance of the Hollanders	i	78	Corporal, or caporal, the origin of his office and its duties -	i	260
Clerk of a company, what -	i	265	—— punishments - - -	ii	106
Clothing of an army in the reign of Henry VIII. - - -	i	324	—— of the field - - -	i	233
—— in the reign of Queen Elizabeth - - -	i	326	Correlet, or corslet, a suit of armour chiefly worn by pikemen -	ii	251
—— of the army in Ireland, in 1599 - - -	i	327	Councils of war, or courts-martial in the time of James II. -	ii	72
—— in the time of Charles II., and after the revolution -	i	329	Courts-martial, general and regimental - - - -	ii	61
—— in 1736 - - -	i	332	Crecy, battle of, effect of 15,000 Genoese archers - - -	ii	9
—— enquiry respecting it, made by a committee of the house of commons, in 1746 - -	i	335	Crenellated parapet - - -	ii	3
—— report of the committee of the house of commons, respecting it - - - -	ii	155	Crest of a helmet - - -	ii	241
—— new regulations relative to it - - - -	ii	186	Cries of war - - - -	ii	9
—— of the militia - - -	i	46	Criniere, or manefaire - - -	ii	259
Coat and conduct money -	i	341	Cross-bow, the antient, description of it - - - -	ii	287
Coldstream regiment of guards	i	98	—— two sorts of English cross-bows, latchets, and prodds -	ii	288
—— its origin - - -	ii	207	—— they not only shot arrows, but darts, called quarrils -	ibid.	
			—— its advantages over the long-bow - - - -	ii	289
			—— or arbalist, account of it	i	148
			Croupiere, or buttock-piece, horse-armour - - - -	ii	260
			Cuiffarts, or thigh-pieces -	ii	253
			Cuirafs, formed of back and breast-piece - - - -	i	105

GENERAL INDEX.

	VOL.	P.		VOL.	P.
Cuirafs, defcribed - - -	ii	249	Disgrace attached to a knight, who had loft his fhield - -	ii	256
Cuiffarts - - - -	i	105	Double-armed man - -	i	354
Cuiraffiers - - - -	i	106	Dragon, an offensive weapon, as defcribed by Markham - -	ii	297
—— defcription of them -	i	109	Dragoons, or dragooniers -	i	110
Culettes, or garde-des-reins -	ii	252	Dreux, Philip de, bifhop of Beauvais, a ftory told of him by Matthew Paris - - -	i	69
Curbouly, or boot of jacked leather	ii	253	Drowning, an antient military punifhment - - - -	ii	103
Currier, a kind of piece formerly ufed in fieges - - -	ii	396	Drum-major and drummers -	i	262
Custom of war - - - -	ii	62	Drum-major-general - -	ii	49
D.			Drum, fide, antiently called the tabour	ii	42
Dagger, cultellum, or mifericorde, account of it - - -	ii	264	—— different beats of the drum	ii	48
—— recommended in a treatife published anno 1622 - -		ibid.	Drummers and fifers of the militia	i	40
Dead aryles in antient fortifications	ii	2	Drum, when introduced into Europe - - - -	ii	42
Decimation, how this was praftifed	ii	103	Duel, preparations for one in the 41ft of Edward III. - -	ii	310
Defenfive armour of a man at arms	i	200	Duke of Alva, ftange account of his manner of claffing the courtefans in his army - - -	i	227
—— armour of the antient knights - - - -	ii	239	—— arrangement of the courtefans following his army in the Netherlands - - -	i	22
—— ditto of their horfes -	ii	259	Dungeon, or keep, in antient fortification - - - -	ii	3
—— armour ufed by the Englifh, at the time of the Norman invafion - - - -	ii	298	Dutch guards of Prince Maurice, armed with targets and roundils	ii	308
—— of a Norman knight -	ii	299	E.		
Defenfive armour, none ufed of late years, except fome cuiraffes, and plain iron fcull-caps, by the heavy cavalry - - - -	ii	343	Ecclefiaftics ferving in the armies	i	69
Degradation, a fentence inflicted on non-commiffioned officers -	ii	110	Edward the Firft, the armour and weapons in ufe in his time -	ii	300
Demi-launce, or light-horfeman	i	108	Embattled parapet - - -	ii	4
Demy chanfrons - - - -	ii	259	Encampments - - - -	ii	11
Deputy-lieutenants of counties	i	30	—— in the time of Henry VIII.	ii	12
Defcription of an antient fiege from the romance of Claris -	ii	78	—— under Queen Elizabeth	ii	13
Deferters from the militia, their punifhment - - - -	i	48	—— in 1686 - - - -	ii	29
Different kinds of troops of which our armies confifted foon after the conquest - - - -	i	100			

## GENERAL INDEX.

	VOL.	P.		VOL.	P.
Encampments, as laid out at the present time - - -	ii	32	Feudal system, the military establishment under it - - -	i	4
— orders relative to them, issued in 1799 - - -	ii	40	Fief de haubert - - -	ii	246
Engine à verge - - -	i	383	Fife introduced by the Switzers	ii	42
English cavalry, after the revolution	i	112	Fifers - - - -	i	265
English minstrels - - -	ii	41	— number of, appointed to each troop, or company -	ii	43
Ensign, his office and duties -	i	255	— their qualifications and duties	ibid.	
Ensigns, colours, &c. - - -	ii	51	— laid aside for a long time, and restored in 1745 - -	ii	44
— or colours, their dignity, and the disgraces to which they are liable - - -	ii	137	Fifth, or royal Irish dragoons -	ii	226
— right use and ordering of them, with the postures and flourishes thereunto belonging	ii	143	— regiment of dragoon-guards, commonly called the green-horse	ii	224
Entertainment of the officers of companies, appointed for the service of the year 1588 -	i	288	— regiment of foot -	ii	217
Epizyges, bars of iron - - -	i	370	Fire-arms, the first use of them	i	152
Esprinjal - - - -	i	382	Firelock, or snaphance, when introduced - - - -	i	152
Esquire, his pay - - - -	i	273	First established force in Ireland	i	58
Establishment of the army, in 1799	i	99	First, or king's regiment of dragoon-guards - - - -	ii	220
Exchange of prisoners of war, has taken place of ransom -	ii	120	— or regiment of dragoons	ii	225
Exercise, tactics, &c. new regulations, respecting them -	ii	188	— or royal regiment of foot	ii	213
— great alterations that have taken place of late in them -	i	365	Flags, banners, &c. - - -	ii	51
— the whole rendered uniform	ibid.		— size of - - - -	ii	54
— Prussian exercise and evolutions, chiefly copied by our army	ibid.		Flodden-field, at that battle slain of the Scots, one archbishop, two bishops, and four abbots -	i	70
— exercise of the pistol -	i	364	Foot-guards, account of - - -	ii	207
— of the pike - - -	i	355	Forage-master-general - - -	i	233
— of the antient cavalry -	i	363	Forrest, or collection of histories, account in it of the invention of gunpowder and artillery -	i	394
<b>F.</b>			Fortification, modern improvements in it - - - -	ii	192
Farrar, the antient Irish war-cry	ii	10	Fourth, or king's own regt. of foot	ii	216
Faulchions, by whom kept -	ii	301	— or royal Irish regiment of dragoon-guards - - -	ii	223
Fencible corps, and provincial regiments - - - -	i	172	Furniture of a villein or villager	ii	301
			— of horsemen - - -	i	92
			Fusileers, originally a sort of grenadiers - - - -	i	159

GENERAL INDEX.

	VOL.	P.		VOL.	P.
G.					
Gambefon - - - -	i	101	used not only in sieges, but also		
Gambefon, what - - -	ii	248	in battle - - - -	i	389
Gantelope, running, the form of	ii	109	—— art of making it lost - -	i	390
Gard de reines, or culet -		ibid.	—— a chymist rewarded by go-		
Garde des reins - - -	ii	252	vernment, for suppressing a simi-		
Gastropheten - - -	i	369	lar composition - - -		ibid.
Gaunt, John of, his armour -	ii	252	Greeves, armour for the legs -	ii	253
Gauntlets - - - -		ibid.	Grenades, when first used -	i	407
—— and sleeves of mail -	i	100	Grenadiers, their institution -	i	160
—— described - - -	ii	253	—— when first introduced into		
General of the horsemen -	i	208	the English army - - -	i	161
—— staff of the army, its present			—— how first armed - - -		ibid.
establishment - - -	i	270	Guards, when first used - - -	i	61
Genouillieres, or knee-pieces -	ii	253	Guidons - - - -	ii	52
Gentleman of a company -	i	262	Gun-makers' rates - - -	ii	336
—— pensioners, account of their			Gun-powder, its invention, and the		
establishment - - -	i	113	changes occasioned by it -	i	150
—— pensioners, when first in-			—— ditto - - - -	i	390
stituted - - - -	i	19	—— its antiquity, according to		
George, St. the English war-cry	ii	9	many modern writers - - -	i	392
Gerard de la Warre, cross-bow			—— how long known in China		ibid.
bearer to Henry III. - - -	ii	305	—— supposed to have been known		
Gifarme, an account of that weapon	ii	279	to Archimedes - - -	i	393
—— variously described -	i	122	—— account of it by Friar Bacon		ibid.
Glaive, or bill - - -	ii	285	—— when first made in England	i	395
Gloves for shooting, worn by Ar-			—— proportion of ingredients		
chers - - - -	ii	271	for making it - - -	i	396
Gorget, or hallercet - - -	i	105	Guy, Earl of Warwick, his perforated		
Gouffets, what - - -	ii	252	shield - - - -	ii	261
Governors of the several forts, and			H.		
castles, their pay - - -	i	303	Halberts, by whom invented -	i	130
Greaves, or iron boots - - -	i	105	—— originally invented by the		
Greek fire, its origin - - -	i	387	Switzers - - - -	ii	281
—— when in common use -		ibid.	Haleeret, a kind of corcelet -	ii	250
—— account of it by Anna Com-			Half-pay, a military reward of mo-		
mena - - - -	i	388	dern date - - - -	ii	94
—— description of it by Joinville		ibid.	—— when first allowed -	i	306
—— its effects described by			Hand-cannon, the nature of them	i	401
Geoffry de Venesauf - - -	i	389	Hand-guns, also called Culverines		
—— according to Father Daniel,			and hand-cannons - - -	ii	290
			—— when first used in England		ibid.

GENERAL INDEX.

	VOL.	P.		VOL.	P.
Hand-guns, when first came into use	i	157	highlanders - - -	i	164
Hanging, an antient military punish- ment - - - -	ii	103	Historical account of particular re- giments - - - -	ii	205
— how executed in the pre- sent times - - - -	ii	105	Hobbies, their description -	i	107
Hanoverians and Hessians called in for the defence of the country	i	33	Hobilers, or light-horsemen -	i	106
Haquebut, or hagbut - -	i	155	Holy, or sacred banners - -	ii	53
— or hag-but, a short hand-gun	ii	290	Holy-water - sprinkle, a singular kind of weapon - - -	ii	286
Harbinger, or quarter-master -	i	181	Horse-artillery - - -	ii	194
Harquebuss, account of it - -	ii	291	— brigade of - - -	ii	412
— succeeds the long-bow -	i	150	Horseman's banners - -	ii	284
Harrington, Sir John, his account of the clothing of Q. Eliza- beth's army in Ireland - -	i	327	Hospital at Hereford, for super- annuated non-commiſioned offi- cers and private soldiers -	ii	101
Haubergeon, a coat of plate, or chain-mail, described - -	ii	246	Householders, all liable to quarter troops till after 1745 - -	i	339
Hauberk, a covering of mail de- scribed - - - -	ii	245	Howitzer, a modern invention -	i	407
— defensive armour - -	i	100	Hufken, a light head-piece -	ii	243
Head-piece, casque, or helmet, description of the different kinds - - - -	ii	239	Huts, used in antient times instead of tents - - - -	ii	29
Healey's mortar, copy of a letter concerning it - - - -	ii	161	I. J.		
Helmet, different kinds - -	i	104	Jack (whence derived jacket), a small coat of mail - -	ii	247
Helmets of the Greeks and Ro- mans - - - -	ii	240	James II. in his reign, the first step taken towards the abolition of the pike, and the origin of the bayonet - - - -	ii	339
— with or without bevers	ibid.		James the First, defensive armour in his reign - - -	ii	323
— worn by the men at arms	i	101	— offensive arms - -	ibid.	
— with bevers and visors -	i	102	Jaſerant, a sort of military vestment	ii	246
Henry VIII. tents used by him	ii	11	Jewels of the crown pledged by K. Henry V. as security for the pay of his troops - - -	i	73
High constable, his rights -	ii	131	Imprisonment, considered as a cor- poral punishment - -	ii	108
— the first staff officer of our antient armies - - -	i	190	Indenture, a mode of raising troops. Bishop of Norwich, indents with K. Richard II. - - -	i	59
— his duties and allowances	i	191	Infantry, after the conquest -	i	120
— when his office ceased	ii	59	— how divided from the time of the conquest - - -	i	182
High harbinger, or quarter-master- general, of former times, his duties - - - -	i	213			
Highlanders, how armed -	i	163			
— history of the 42d or royal					

GENERAL INDEX.

	VOL.	P.
Infantry, how officered - - -	i	182
Infernals, floating mines construct- ed in ships or boats - - -	i	410
—— great destruction caused by them - - - - -	ibid.	
—— used by the English at St. Maloes - - - - -	ibid.	
—— description of one - - -	ibid.	
Instructions for the payment of the royal bounty to the widows of officers - - - - -	ii	96
Invalids, their establishment - - -	i	172
Irispimithal, tricubital, different kinds of Catapultas - - -	i	375
Iron-hat, or armet - - - - -	i	242
Judge-advocate-general, for the kingdoms of Suez, Fez, and Mo- rocco, his commission - - -	i	236
Judge-marshal, since called auditor- general or judge-advocate, his office - - - - -	i	234
K.		
Keep, or dungeon - - - - -	i	3
Kettle-drums and trumpets of the horse - - - - -	ii	46
King James I. his ironical praise of armour - - - - -	i	103
Kings frequently wore their crowns on the crests of their helmets - - -	i	102
King's own, or fourth regiment of foot - - - - -	ii	216
—— regiment of dragoon-guards - - -	ii	220
Kitchens, how made in camp - - -	ii	36
Knight, his pay - - - - -	i	273
Knights bannerets - - - - -	ii	52
—— bachelors - - - - -	ibid.	
—— often suffocated from the weight of their armour - - -	ii	303
—— the small number of them killed in engagements - - -	i	103

	VOL.	P.
L.		
Lance, or pike - - - - -	ii	274
—— used both by calvary and infantry - - - - -	ii	276
—— ornamented with bande- roles, also called pencils - - -	ii	277
Lancepetata, or lance-corporal - - -	i	261
Lance-rest - - - - -	ii	295
Lances of the infantry - - - - -	i	121
Lancier, his arms and armour - - -	i	105
Latch, a kind of cross-bow - - -	ii	288
Laws and ordinances of war, esta- blished by the Earl of Effex, in 1643 - - - - -	ii	71
Lieutenant-colonel, his dignity and duties - - - - -	i	246
Lieutenant, his necessary qualifica- tions and duties - - - - -	i	253
—— of counties, their duties - - -	i	25
Life-guards, first regiment of - - -	ii	205
—— second regiment - - - - -	ii	206
Light-dragoons, when first raised - - -	i	112
Lines of contra and circumvalla- tion - - - - -	ii	6
Lionnois, a machine invented at Lyons, for the defence of a breach.—See plate of one		
List of the army sent to Ireland, 36 Edw. III. - - - - -	i	280
—— of the military establish- ment for 1689 - - - - -	ii	73
—— of the royal army intend- ed for the recovery of the Pala- tinate - - - - -	ii	149
Long-bow, maintained its place after the invention of fire-arms - - -	ii	272
—— orders for enforcing the use of it - - - - -	ibid.	
—— when first introduced in England - - - - -	i	134
Lorica squammosa of the antients - - -	ii	245

GENERAL INDEX.

M.	VOL.	P.	VOL.	P.
Mace, an ancient weapon, formerly much used by the cavalry of all nations - - - - -	ii	283	i	382
—— description and history of it		ibid.		
—— those of Roland and Oliver shewn in the abbey of Roncevaux	ii	284		
Machicolation, an ancient defence	ii	1		
—— description of it -	ii	3		
Machines in use about the time of the Norman invasion - -	i	366		
Madrier, a strong plank, about 18 inches square - - -	i	409		
Mail of two kinds, chain and plate, described - - - - -	ii	244		
Mallet of arms, a weapon formerly much used - - - - -	ii	281		
Mallets, description of them -	i	128		
Man at arms - - - - -	i	100		
Mangonel, a small machine -	i	381		
Mangona, a large machine -	i	381		
Manner of attacking and defend- ing an ancient fortification -	ii	5		
Manubalista, a term sometimes ap- plied to the long bow - - -	i	381		
Marching. or billet-money -	i	348		
Mareschal, or marshal, antiquity of that office - - - - -	i	192		
—— his droits and fees -	i	193		
—— his principal duties, rights, and privileges - - - - -	i	196		
—— his pay - - - - -	i	272		
Marines, their origin - - -	i	167		
—— account given of them in Burchet's naval history -	i	168		
—— formed into three divisions	i	171		
—— their arms and clothing	i	172		
Master of the ordnance, next officer to the marshal - - - - -	i	198		
—— his office - - - - -	i	200		
—— succession of master-general of the ordnance to the present time - - - - -	i	206		
Mata funda - - - - -	i			
Match-boxes, till lately worn by our grenadiers, origin of them	ii	294		
Mategriffin - - - - -	i	382		
Muskets, when first used, called hand-cannon - - - - -	ii	291		
Men at arms - - - - -	i	8		
Mercenary troops, the method of raising them - - - - -	i	71		
Military discipline in 1686 -	ii	72		
—— music - - - - -	ii	41		
—— the common instruments		ibid.		
—— rewards - - - - -	ii	83		
—— punishments - - - - -	ii	103		
Militia, when first established -	i	20		
Mines employed in ancient sieges	ii	5		
Misericorde, or dagger - - -	i	103		
—— or dagger - - - - -	ii	264		
Morion - - - - -	ii	241		
—— by whom worn - - - - -	ii	244		
Morions, or steel-hats - - -	i	157		
Morning stars - - - - -	ii	284		
Morris, or moorish pike -	i	129		
—— or moorish pike, much in fashion about the reign of Henry VIII. and Elizabeth - - -	ii	280		
—— directions for the exercise of them - - - - -		ibid.		
Mortars cut in the rocks at Malta	i	407		
—— at Gibraltar - - - - -		ibid.		
Moveable towers, or belfreys -	ii	5		
Music, military - - - - -	ii	41		
Musket, a heavier kind of harque- bush, carrying also a large ball	ii	292		
—— account of the ancient mus- ket - - - - -	ii	293		
—— value of one in 1620, with bandaliers and rest - - -	ii	294		
—— succeed the harquebush	i	157		
Musters, their antiquity and object	i	183		
—— regulations for them -	i	185		
—— commissaries of, described	i	183		

GENERAL INDEX.

	VOL.	P.		VOL.	P.
Mutiny act, the first - - -	ii	7	Old English march, notes of it -	ii	46
N.			Oliver and Roland, heroes of romance, their maces - - -	ii	284
Naccaife, a kettle-drum - - -	ii	42	Onager, a kind of Balista - - -	i	380
Navy of Q. Elizabeth - - -	i	125	Orders for the English army, in the year 1486 - - -	ii	70
Nead, his treatise called the Double-armed Man, obtains a patent of King Charles the First, for teaching the use of the bow and pike	i	354	Ordnance, Rauf Bigod, the first master - - - -	i	198
Nicholas Tartaglia, of Brescia, in Italy, acquainted in 1538 with the method of throwing red hot shot from mortars - - -	i	406	—— different officers of the ordnance, temp. Richard III.	i	199
Norfolk, Duke of, his orders respecting clothing, 36 Hen. VIII.	i	324	—— establishment of ditto, an. 1557 - - - -	i	200
Norman laws respecting feudal service - - - -	i	4	—— master of the ordnance, his office and duty - - - -	i	201
—— shields - - - -	ii	255	—— succession of master's-general, to the present time -	i	206
Norton, Robert, author of a treatise entitled, The Gunner, 1664	i	392	Ordonances of war, for the army of King Charles I. - - -	ii	70
Number of companies not a definite one for a regiment -	i	242	Ordonances of King Richard II.	ii	64
Number of men to be raised for the militia in the several counties	i	34	—— of K. Henry V. at Mans	ii	69
Nye's directions for making gunpowder - - - -	i	397	Ordonances of war of K. Henry VIII. - - - -	ii	59
O.			Off-reckonings - - - -	i	335
Offensive arms of a horseman, or man at arms - - - -	i	103	Oudenarde, the garrison of it terrified by a marvellous large bombard - - - -	i	400
—— arms, or weapons - - -	ii	261	Out-pensioners of Chelsea hospital	ii	93
Officers appointed to the militia	i	44	Owen, John, the first English founder who cast brass-guns -	i	402
Old Buffs, or third regiment of foot - - - -	ii	215	Oxford blues - - - -	i	98
Old English march, as described by Sir John Hawkins, in his history of music - - - -	ii	44	—— or royal regiment of horse-guards, an account of this reg.	ii	210
—— revival of it in the reign of Charles I. - - - -	ii	45	P.		
—— copy of the warrant for reviving it - - - -	ibid.		Parole of honour, copy of one	ii	204
			Pas-guardes - - - -	ii	254
			Patent granted to William Drummond, in 1625 - - - -	ii	165
			Pavais, or pavacke, or tallevas, a large shield - - - -	ii	257
			Pavifors in the army that accompanied King Edward III. to Calais - - - -	ii	257



GENERAL INDEX.

	VOL.	P.		VOL.	P.
Pavoises, a kind of large shields	ii	4	Phipps, Captain, his letter, describing the mortar cut in the rock of Gibraltar	ii	161
Pay-master-general's office, new regulation in it	ii	175	Physicians to the armies	i	238
Pay-master-general, some particulars respecting him	ii	152	Picket, a corporal punishment	ii	107
Pay of the army in the time of K. William	i	304	Pike, exercise of it	i	355
— additions made to it in the reign of Geo. I.	i	310	Pikemen	i	132
— to the present time	i	312	Pike, or lance	ii	274
— of the militia officers	i	37	— an antient weapon	ii	277
— of the army in the reign of Henry VII.	i	285	— introduced into France by the Swifs	ibid.	
— in the time of Q. Mary	i	286	— its ordinary length	ii	278
— under Q. Elizabeth	i	288	— London price of one, anno 1631	ibid.	
— of the army in Ireland, under the Earl of Essex, in 1598	i	290	— when first used	i	131
— of the army raised by Charles I. 1639	i	291	Pistols, where invented	i	155
— of the parliamentary troops, 1647	i	297	Plaquet, what	ii	252
— of the forces in England and Wales, 1659	i	299	Plaftron	i	101
Pecuniary punishments	ii	108	Plate armour	i	104
Pencils and other enfigns	ii	51	— purchased only by men of fortune	ii	302
Pennons	ii	52	— introduced both here and into France, about the middle of the 14th century	ii	303
Pennons and banners	i	180	Poitrinal, pectoral, or breast-plate for horses	ii	260
Pensions granted to officers' widows	ii	96	Pole-axe, description of it	i	123
— according to the latest regulations	ii	100	Pole-axes	ii	285
Perforated shields	ii	261	Portable mantlets	ii	5
Petard, a machine used to burst open gates	i	408	Possé Comitatus, or power of the county	i	9
— different sizes of it	ibid.		Pot, an iron hat, described	ii	244
— manner of loading it	ibid.		Pouldrons	i	105
— when invented	i	409	Pouldrons	ii	252
Petryary	i	382	Present establishment of the army	i	99
Petrinal, or poitrinal	i	153	— mode of recruiting our armies	i	97
Petrinels	i	105	President of the high court of war	ii	60
Petronel, or poitrinel, a medium between the harquebuss and the pistol	ii	292	Pressing for soldiers	i	97
			Proceedings at generals courts-martial	ii	79
			Proclamation for the use of the bow		

GENERAL INDEX.

	VOL.	P.		VOL.	P.
and pike together in military discipline - - - -	ii	173	Ram, battering, description and manner of using that machine	i	384
Prods, what - - - -	ii	292	----- when used - - - -	ibid.	
Prostitutes, punishment of, by the ordonnances of war - - -	ii	70	Rank of militia officers - - -	i	50
Provost-marshal of the artillery, his authority and power - - -	i	202	----- of officers of cavalry and infantry - - - - -	i	209
----- his office and duties - - -	i	215	Ransom of prisoners of war - - -	ii	112
Proviand-master-general, or commissary-general, his office, as described by Sir James Turner	i	229	Reason for a soldier's coat being red - - - - -	i	326
Pryck-spur - - - - -	ii	258	Rebellion in Ireland, in 1798, some particulars relating to it - -	ii	226
----- with a single point - - -	i	102	Reformados, or reformed officers	i	262
Pugio, or dagger, used by the Romans, a species of it also worn by the Saxons - - - -	ii	264	Regards, a douceur, in addition to pay - - - - -	i	284
Punishments, military - - - -	ii	103	Regiments, parliamentary, disbanded, and raised for the service of K. Charles II. - - - -		
Q.			----- when this term first came into use - - - - -	i	242
Qualifications for the militia - - -	i	36	Regulations for encampments, in the time of Henry VIII. - - -	ii	12
Quarreaux, or quarrels, shot from cross-bow - - - - -	i	149	----- in the time of Queen Elizabeth - - - - -	ii	13
Quarter-masters of foot and horse, the difference between them	i	269	----- in 1686 - - - - -	ii	29
Quarters, laws respecting them, enacted from the revolution - - -	i	342	----- as laid down in Bland's Military Discipline - - -	ii	32
Queen Elizabeth, in a treaty with K. Charles IX. of France, engaged to furnish him with six thousand men, armed part with long and part with cross bows	ii	305	----- of Queen Elizabeth - - -	i	79
Queen's, or second regiment of foot, account of it - - - - -	ii	214	Report of a committee of the house of commons, respecting the clothing of the army - - - -	ii	155
----- regiment of dragoon-guards	ii	222	Reprimand, how generally given	ii	111
Quilted linen, a covering for horses	ii	259	Rest, for supporting a lance - - -	ii	254
Quintyn, St. list of the army that served there A. D. 1557, with their pay - - - - -	i	286	Restoration, armour and weapons, directed to be used by the militia after it - - - - -	ii	338
Quiver, or arrow-case - - - - -	ii	270	----- of horses - - - - -	i	187
R.			----- present indemnification to officers for horses lost in the service - - - - -	i	189
Raising, forces at the counties' charge - - - - -	i	74	Rest to a musket - - - - -	ii	292
			----- used with the matchlock	i	156

GENERAL INDEX.

	VOL.	P.		VOL.	P.
Revival of the cross-bow, by King			Scutifer, or shield-bearer, why reconed an honourable office	ii	257
Richard I. - - - -	ii	303	Second, or queen's regiment of foot, an account of it - -	ii	214
Ribaudequin - - - -	i	382	— or royal North British dragoons, called the Scots Greys	ii	225
Riding the wooden-horse -	ii	106	Serjeant-major - general, or major-general, his office and duties	i	210
Rigid treatment of prisoners of war in antient times - - -	ii	116	Serjeant of a company - -	i	258
Robinet - - - -	i	382	— major, or major, the duties of his office - - -	i	247
Roland and Oliver's maces -	ii	284	Surgeons of the antient armies, their number - - - -	i	236
Rouelle, or wheel-spur - -	i	102	Serjeants at arms - - -	i	61
— or wheel-spear - - -	ii	258	— at arms, when first instituted	i	173
Round and square shields -	ii	300	— their duty, pay, and allowances - - - -	i	174
Roundel, or rondache - -	ii	254	— present number - -	i	175
— different kinds of them -	ii	256	— of the militia, their number and duties - - - -	i	38
Round towers - - - -	ii	1	Servientes, substitutes for tenants in capite - - - -	i	100
Royal fusileers - - - -	ii	220	Seventh regiment of foot, or royal fusileers - - - -	ii	219
— Irish, or 18th regiment of foot, a singular story of it -	i	63	Shaftstera - - - -	i	369
— standard bearer - - -	ii	51	Sheaf of arrows, its number	ii	269
Rules and articles of war, in the time of James II. - - -	ii	71	Shields, different kinds of -	ii	254
Running the gantelope - -	ii	107	— used in the army of King Edward First, at the siege of Karlaversk, an. 1300 - -	ii	306
Ruptarii, routers, or ryters, foreign cavalry occasionally hired by our kings - - - -	i	57	— a fort of, wore by the Scots at the battle of Muffelborough, described by Paton - - -	ii	307
S.			Ships of Queen Elizabeth - -	i	125
Salade, falet, or celate, described	ii	243	Shooting, the only capital punishment, besides hanging, in the English army - - -	ii	104
Saxon infantry and cavalry, appointed and formed - - -	i	3	Shoulder-shield - - - -	ii	260
— punishment for cowardice	ibid.		Side-drum, why so called -	ii	42
— laws respecting persons obliged to bear arms, and perform public services - - -	i	1	Silk gown, French hood, velvet bonnet, &c. worn by women un-		
Schedule, containing the new rates and prices of the several parts of arms for horse and foot -	ii	335			
Scorpion, description of it -	i	367			
Scots brigade, formerly in the service of Holland, an account of it	ii	170			
Scowt-master, his duties - -	i	222			
Scull, a head-piece - - - -	ii	243			

GENERAL INDEX.

	VOL.	P.		VOL.	P.
der a certain rank or estate, subjected their husbands to find a horse for the service of the country - - - -	i	16	Substitutes for the militia -	i	43
Sixth regiment of foot - -	ii	218	Supplementary militia - -	i	54
Sling, a weapon of great antiquity	ii	273	Suspension, for a stated time, a punishment inflicted both on commission and non-commission officers - - - -	ii	110
——— how made, and its use	ii	274	Sword, the first artificial weapon	ii	262
Small arms not generally established in England at the time of the Spanish armada - - -	ii	310	——— their various kinds -	ii	262
Soldiers, sometimes engaged for a certain time, as for three years, or during a war - -	i	97	T.		
——— pressed in the time of Q. Elizabeth - - -	ibid.		Turner, Sir James, his account of the officers of a troop of cavalry	i	268
——— act for impressing foldiers in 1799 - - - -	i	98	Turkish bow - - -	i	158
——— departing from the army, without the king's licence, guilty of felony - - - -	i	65	Trumpet, its antiquity - -	ii	41
Soldier-constables, and esquire-foldiers - - - -	i	274	——— number appointed to each corps - - - -	ii	43
Sow, a covered machine - -	i	387	——— the sounds or signals given by it - - - -	ii	49
——— its use in antient sieges	ii	4	——— chiefly used by the cavalry	ii	50
Spear, lance, or pike - -	ii	274	Trumpeter, formerly not allowed to wear any offensive arms, unless a sword, with the point broken; the form of his trumpet, banner, and furniture - - -	i	267
Splints, a defence for the arms	ii	253	Tables of the pay of the forces	i	313
Spurs of two kinds - - -	ii	258	——— of a captain of infantry's allowances - - -	i	321
Squads - - - -	i	182	Tactics, exercise, &c. new changes in them - - - -	ii	188
Staff of the army in Great Britain and Ireland, 1799 - - -	ii	201	——— of our antient armies -	i	349
Standards - - - -	ii	52	——— improvements made in them to the present time - - -	i	357
Standing forces, their commencement - - - -	i	61	Target, or buckler, described -	ii	255
Stakes, to protect archers -	ii	273	Tassel-cloze, a field in London, where the cross-bow makers used to exercise themselves - -	ii	305
Stipendiary troops - - -	i	7	Taffets, or skirts - - -	ii	253
St. Cuthbert, his standard -	ii	53	Tenant in capite - - -	i	6
St. George, the antient English cry	ii	9	Third, or Prince of Wales's regiment of dragoon-guards - -	ii	222
Stock-purse, or non-effective fund	ii	157	Tilting armour - - -	ii	254
Stone-shot, 7000 ordered to be cut in the quarries of Maidstone	i	400	——— lances - - -	ii	276
St. Quintins, the army employed there, A. D. 1587 - - -	i	181			

GENERAL INDEX.

	VOL.	P.
Tilting lances, when first used -	ii	277
Tortoisés, machines used in ancient sieges - - - -	ii	4
Training and exercise of the militia	i	47
Train of artillery under Charles I.	i	292
Treasurer, or high treasurer of the army, the duties of his office -	i	212
Trebuchet - - - -	i	382
Trench-master, his command -	i	223
Trophy-money - - - -	i	31

U. V.

Umbo of the shield - - - -	ii	261
Valets, what - - - -	i	273
Vambasium, or Wambasium, what	ii	247
Vambraces - - - -	ii	252
—— or braffarts - - - -	i	105
Vamplat, or avant-plat - - - -	ii	277
Venetians, a kind of long breeches (similar to the present pantaloons) worn by Q. Elizabeth's soldiers in Ireland - - - -	i	328
Verftegan attributes the introduction of the cross-bow to Hengist and Horfa - - - -	ii	304
Vingtners - - - -	i	182
Vifors - - - -	i	102
Volunteer companies - - - -	i	45
Volunteers and yeomanry cavalry, account of their institution -	ii	233
—— from the militia, to enlist in the regulars - - - -	i	56

W.

Waggon-master, particulars of his office, as described by Sir James Turner - - - -	i	224
Waggon-train, establishment of them - - - -	ii	200
Wambasium - - - -	ii	247
War-carts, a species of artillery, each carrying two peteraros -	i	407

	VOL.	P.
War carts, first used in Scotland -	i	407
War-saddle - - - -	i	102
War-wolf, a military machine -	i	382
Weapons to be kept by persons of different estates - - - -	ii	316
Welsh glaive, or bill - - - -	ii	285
Whipping, almost the only corporal punishment now in use -	ii	107
Whirligig, an instrument of punishment for disorderly persons -	ii	111
Whores, to be turned out of the army, their money taken from them, and their left arms to be broken - - - -	ii	70
Widows' pensions - - - -	ii	156
William the Conqueror, the arms offensive and defensive worn in his time - - - -	ii	299
—— had cross-bows in his army at the battle of Hastings -	ii	304
Wolfe, general, his recommendation on charging bayonets -	ii	10
Women, who follow an army on horseback, sometimes put into companies, and commanded by females, called in Germany Hurweibles, or marshals of the whores - - - -	i	226
—— who followed an army, how they were to be ordered -	i	226
Wooden-horse, a punishment formerly much in use - - - -	ii	106
Wyfflers - - - -	i	208

Y.

Yeomen of the guard, raised by Henry VII. - - - -	i	175
—— their establishment to the present time - - - -	i	176
—— their origin - - - -	i	19
Yeomanry cavalry, and volunteer infantry - - - -	ii	233



## DIRECTIONS FOR PLACING THE CUTS IN THE SECOND VOLUME.

The entrance of a street, defended by a chain, as a Frontispiece.

<p><b>A</b>NTIENT fortifications.—Pl. 1. . . . .</p> <p>Machines used in antient sieges . . . . .</p> <p>Battering machines . . . . .</p> <p>An antient machine for defending a pass . . . . .</p> <p>The lyonnois, a machine for defending a breach . . . . .</p> <p>Front of a fortified place attacked according to the antient manner . . . . .</p> <p>Ancient manner of besieging towns . . . . .</p> <p>Fortification . . . . .</p> <p>Royal tents, 2 plates . . . . .</p> <p>Antient tents and huts . . . . .</p> <p>A trebucket, with the ruyters' manner of lodging . . . . .</p> <p>Castrametation, 4 plates . . . . .</p> <p>Plan of the encampment of a regiment of dragoons . . . . .</p> <p>Plan of the encampment of a battalion of foot, of 9 companies, each consisting of 70 private men . . . . .</p> <p>Plan of the encampment of a battalion of foot, of 9 companies, each consisting of 100 private men . . . . .</p> <p>Modern tents, plates 1 and 2 . . . . .</p> <p>Bell-tents, colours, stand, and camp kitchen . . . . .</p> <p>Instruments of military musick . . . . .</p> <p>Chelsea College, as originally intended . . . . .</p> <p>Military punishments . . . . .</p> <p>Scipio receiving the keys of Carthage, and the title of the Treatise on Antient Armour, to face each other . . . . .</p> <p>Antient Armour, Pl. 1. to 61 . . . . .</p>	<p>to face page 2</p> <p>} 4</p> <p>} 6</p> <p>8</p> <p>12</p> <p>16</p> <p>18</p> <p>30</p> <p>32</p> <p>40</p> <p>37</p> <p>} <i>ibid.</i></p> <p>42</p> <p>89</p> <p>111</p> <p>between pages *236 and 237</p> <p>to follow page 371</p>
--	---















